



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

T 919.15. 675



Harvard College Library
THE GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY



3 2044 097 074 710

4



Morris and Morgan's Latin Series

EDITED FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF

EDWARD P. MORRIS, L.H.D.,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN YALE UNIVERSITY

AND

MORRIS H. MORGAN, PH.D.,

PROFESSOR OF CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY

VOLUMES OF THE SERIES

Essentials of Latin for Beginners. Henry C. Pearson, Teachers College, New York.

A School Latin Grammar. Morris H. Morgan, Harvard University.

A First Latin Writer. M. A. Abbott, Groton School.

Connected Passages for Latin Prose Writing. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University, and Arthur L. Wheeler; Bryn Mawr College.

Caesar. Episodes from the Gallic and Civil Wars. Maurice W. Mather, formerly of Harvard University.

Cicero. Ten Orations and Selected Letters. J. Remsen Bishop, Eastern High School, Detroit, Frederick A. King, Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Wilbur Helm, Evanston Academy of Northwestern University.

Six Orations.

Selections from Latin Prose Authors for Sight Reading. Susan Braley Franklin and Ella Catherine Greene, Miss Baldwin's School, Bryn

Cicero. Cato Maior. Frank G. Moore, Columbia University.

Cicero. Laelius de Amicitia. Clifton Price, University of California.

Selections from Livy. Harry E. Burton, Dartmouth College.

Horace. Odes and Epodes. Clifford H. Moore, Harvard University.

Horace. Satires. Edward P. Morris, Yale University.

Horace. Satires and Epistles. Edward P. Morris, Yale University.

Horace. Odes, Epodes, and Carmen Saeculare, Moore. Satires and Epistles, Morris. In one volume.

Tibullus. Kirby F. Smith, Johns Hopkins University.

Lucretius. William A. Merrill, University of California.

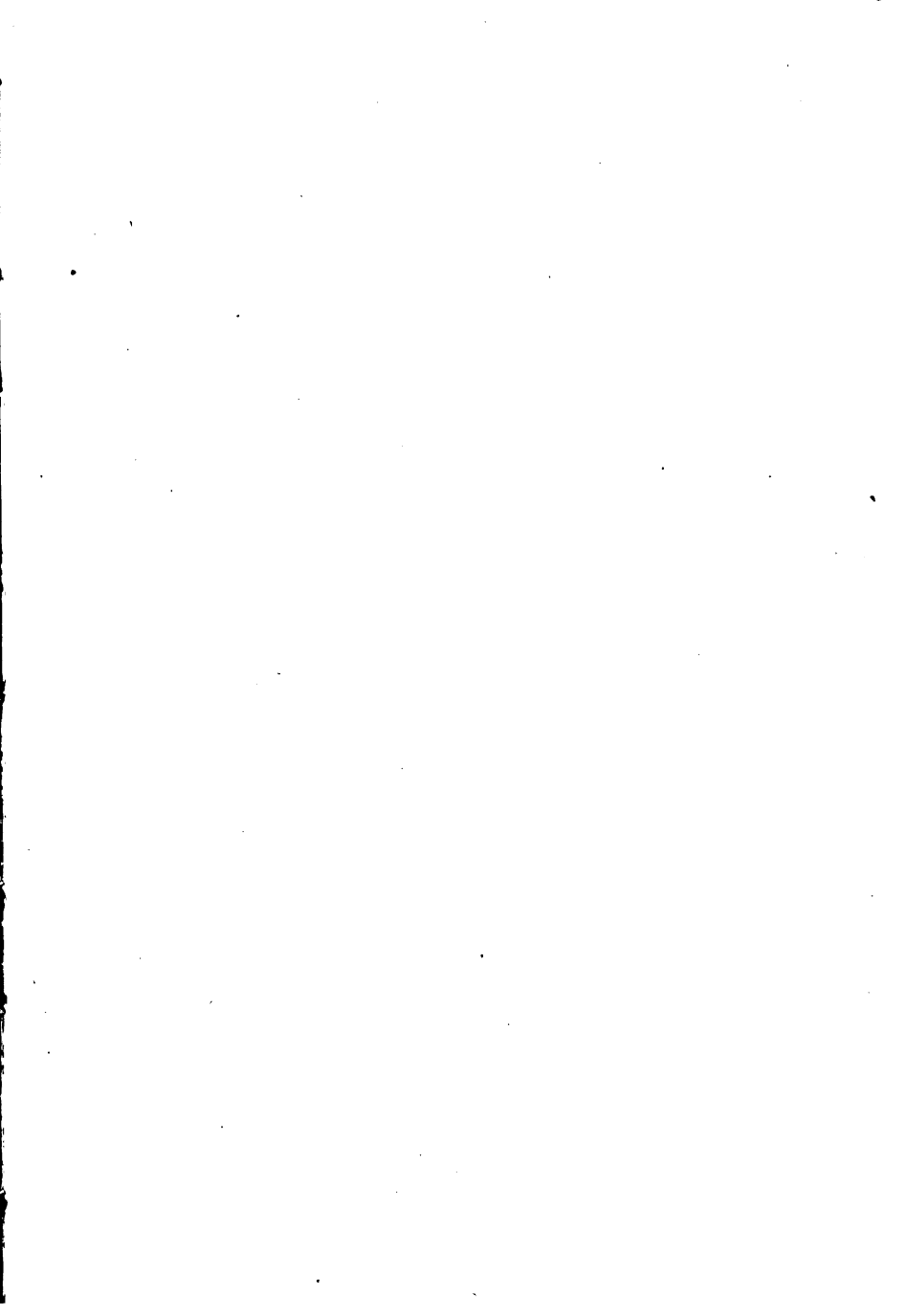
Latin Literature of the Empire. Alfred Gudeman, formerly of the University of Pennsylvania.

Vol. I. Prose: Velleius to Boethius

Vol. II. Poetry: Pseudo-Vergiliana to Claudianus.

Selections from the Public and Private Law of the Romans. James J. Robinson, Hotchkiss School.

Others to be announced later.





VIEW OF THE COLISEUM, AS ONE LOOKS FROM THE FORUM NORTHEAST-
WARD THROUGH THE ARCH OF TITUS

(From a water-color drawing made in Rome)

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON

PRINCIPAL OF THE HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE,
COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

REVISED



AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

BOSTON

CINCINNATI

ATLANTA

CHICAGO

Edw T 919.15.675
v

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN & COMPANY
MARCH 17, 1927

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
EDWARD P. MORRIS AND MORRIS H. MORGAN.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

COPYRIGHT, 1911, 1912, 1915, BY
HENRY CARR PEARSON.

PEARSON. ESSENTIALS OF LATIN.

W. P. 2

PREFACE

THIS book is designed primarily to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's *Gallic War*. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that some teachers may not wish to present to their pupils during the first year's work. They are independent of one another and of the rest of the book, and may, therefore, be taken up in any order that the teacher wishes, or any number of them may be omitted.

It is hoped that the following features will commend themselves to teachers of first year Latin :

1. Carefully selected vocabularies, containing with a very few exceptions only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's *Gallic War*. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons.

2. The constant comparison of English and Latin usage. Not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

3. A more logical and consecutive treatment of topics. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to a topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony.

4. A brief preparatory course. Allowing ample time for reviews, the first seventy lessons should be thoroughly mastered in about twenty-five weeks.

5. The Review Exercises under each lesson. These employ the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and afford additional practice for those who wish it. They may be omitted, however, if desired, as the regular Exercises also review preceding constructions.

6. Carefully graded material for reading. There are stories for rapid reading, based on the vocabulary and constructions already studied, and selections from *Viri Romae* and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's *Gallie War*, Book II, in simplified form. This material should prepare a pupil to begin to read the regular text of Caesar at the beginning of the second year.

I wish to express my grateful acknowledgments to the following well-known teachers of Latin who have read the manuscript of this book, and have rendered valuable assistance by their suggestions and criticisms: Mr. H. F. Towle, Curtis High School, New York City; Mr. A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City; Mr. A. J. Inglis, Horace Mann High School, New York City; Mr. Herbert T. Rich, Boston Latin School. This book has had the benefit of the criticism of Professor M. H. Morgan of Harvard University, one of the editors of the series, who has carefully read both the manuscript and the proof.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

NEW YORK CITY, January, 1905.

PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

THE present revision embodies some of the suggestions received from time to time from teachers who have used the Essentials. It has been undertaken, not to change the character or plan of the work, but solely to introduce such simplifications and amplifications as will make it still more helpful to the beginner. The statement of rules has in a number of instances been modified; a different

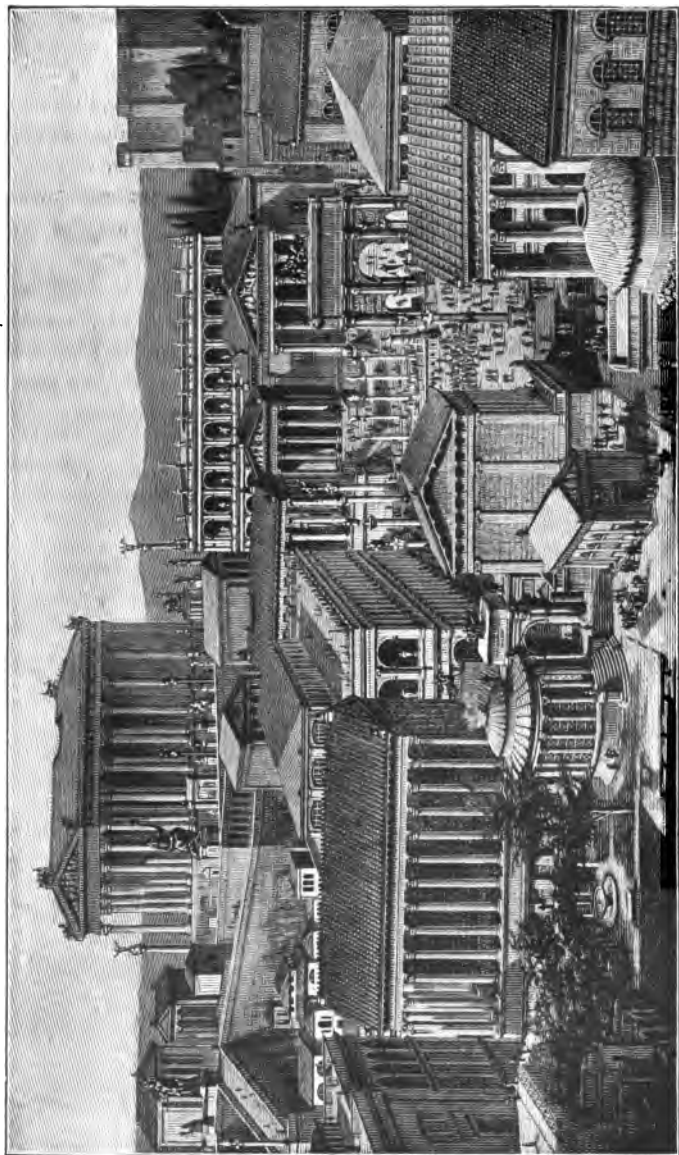
arrangement has been given to the conjugations in the appendix ; the introduction has been made somewhat fuller ; and the order of Lessons 38 and 39 has been changed. In other respects the changes are internal and do not affect the method or scope of the work.

Many full-page illustrations have been added, together with several new cuts of smaller size and a double-page map of the western portion of the Roman empire at the time of Caesar.

All the changes made in this edition have been scrutinized and approved by Professor Charles Knapp of Columbia University, to whose keen scholarship and valuable aid the author is deeply indebted.

March, 1915.

H. C. P.



The Roman Forum and its Surroundings (300 A.D.) (Restoration)

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	11
1. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> . Feminine Nouns	16
2. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Feminine Adjectives	18
3. First Declension or Stems in <i>-ā-</i> (continued). Limiting Genitive. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i>	20
4. First Conjugation. Present Indicative. Direct Object	22
5. Second Declension or Stems in <i>-o</i> . Masculine Nouns in <i>-us</i> . Mas- culine of Adjectives	25
6. Second Declension (continued). Neuters in <i>-um</i> . Appositive. In- direct Object	28
7. Declension of Adjectives in <i>-us</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> . Agreement	30
8. Second Declension (continued). Masculines in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i>	33
9. Second Declension (continued). Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Ad- jectives in <i>-er</i> , <i>-(e)ra</i> , <i>-(e)rum</i>	36
10. Imperfect and Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> . Order of Words. Review	40
11. First Conjugation. Principal Parts. Formation and Conjugation of the Imperfect and Future Indicative Active	42
12. First Conjugation (continued). Perfect Indicative Active. Ablative of Means	45
13. First Conjugation (continued). Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active. Review	48
14. Second Conjugation. Characteristics. Formation and Conjugation of the Indicative Active	51
15. Third Declension. Consonant Stems	54
16. Third Declension (continued). Consonant Stems. Ablative of Cause	57
17. Third Declension (continued). Stems in <i>-i-</i>	60
18. Review of Third Declension. Rules of Gender. Ablative of Time When	63
19. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter I, Book I, Gallic War. Hints for Translation	65
20. Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Agent	68

LESSON	PAGE
21. Imperfect and Future Passive of the First and Second Conjugations. Ablative of Manner	72
22. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	75
23. Adjectives of the Third Declension. Three Terminations. Ablative of Specification	78
24. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued). Two and One Terminations. Dative with Adjectives	81
25. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter II	84
26. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of <i>Sum</i> . Review of the First and Second Conjugations	85
27. Third Conjugation. Present, Imperfect, and Future, Active and Passive	87
28. Third Conjugation (completed). Verbs in <i>iō</i>	89
29. Present Infinitive, Active and Passive. The Infinitive used as in English	92
30. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter III	94
31. <i>Is, Idem</i>	95
32. The Relative Pronoun	98
33. <i>Hic</i> and <i>Ille</i> . Adjectives used as Substantives	101
34. <i>Ipse, Iste</i> . Irregular Adjectives. Ablative of Separation	104
35. Fourth Conjugation. The Interrogative <i>Quis</i>	107
36. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IV	110
37. Fourth Declension	111
38. Review of the Four Conjugations. Dative of Possession	114
39. Irregular Verb <i>Eō</i> . Place Where, Whence, Whither	116
40. Numerals. Accusative of Extent of Time and Space	120
41. Fifth Declension. Partitive Genitive	122
42. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter V	125
43. Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative of Comparison	125
44. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). Ablative of the Measure of Difference	128
45. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. <i>Possum</i>	131
46. Review of Comparison of Adjectives. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	134
47. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VI	137
48. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns	137
49. Possessive Adjectives. Dative of Service	141
50. Indefinite Pronouns. Descriptive Ablative and Genitive	144
51. Participles. Forms, Declension, and Meanings	147
52. Participles (continued). Ablative Absolute	151

CONTENTS

9

LESSON	PAGE
53. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VII	154
54. Infinitives. Formation and Meanings	155
55. Indirect Discourse. Simple Statements	157
56. Deponent Verbs. Ablative with <i>Ūtor, Fruor</i> , etc.	161
57. <i>Ferō</i> and <i>Fiō</i> . Dative with Intransitives	163
58. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter VIII	165
59. The Subjunctive Mood. Present Tense. Clauses of Purpose	166
60. The Subjunctive (continued). Imperfect Tense. Result Clauses	169
61. <i>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</i> . Relative Clause of Purpose	172
62. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses	174
63. Substantive Clauses	179
64. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter IX	181
65. Object Clauses with Verbs of Fearing. <i>Cum</i> Temporal, Causal, and Concessive	182
66. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . Dative with Compound Verbs	185
67. The Imperative. Commands and Exhortations	187
68. Gerund and Gerundive	190
69. Complete Review of Verb Forms	193
70. Reading Lesson. Adaptation of Chapter X	194

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

71. Conditional Sentences. Present and Past Time	196
72. Conditional Sentences (continued). Future Time	198
73. Wishes	200
74. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences	202
75. Impersonal Use of Verbs. Supine. Different Ways of expressing Purpose	204
76. Periphrastic Conjugations	206
SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING	209

SELECTIONS FOR READING :

Selections from Roman History	227
Caesar. Gallic War, Book II, Chapters 1-20	236

APPENDIX. Tables of Declension, Conjugation, etc., Summary of Rules of Syntax	248
--	-----

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
View of the Coliseum, as one looks from the Forum northeastward through the Arch of Titus. From a water-color drawing made in Rome	<i>Frontispiece</i>
The Roman Forum and its Surroundings (300 A.D.) (Restoration)	6
Map of Italy, Gaul, and Other Parts of the Roman Empire at the Time of Caesar (double page)	22-23
<i>Hortus</i>	27
Roman Soldiers in Camp. Roman Soldiers on the March	<i>facing</i> 31
A Roman School	35
Roman Books	38
English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers in 'tortoise'-formation. English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers discharging the Catapult	<i>facing</i> 46
<i>Pilum</i>	47
<i>Gladius</i>	53
<i>Equites Rōmāni</i>	56
Coin of Caesar, struck by M. Mettius	59
Julius Caesar. From the marble bust in the British Museum	<i>facing</i> 65
Silver Coins of Caesar, showing Gallic Trophies	66
Recent Views in the Roman Forum	<i>facing</i> 74
<i>Civēs Rōmāni</i>	77
Sarcophagus of one of the Scipios	80
Graffito, or Drawing, from the Palatine Walls, Rome	91
<i>Rōmāni cum Germānis pugnant</i>	<i>facing</i> 97
Interior of a Roman House (Restoration). Plan of the House of Pansa at Pompeii	<i>facing</i> 111
Roman Theater (Restoration)	112
Streets of Pompeii	<i>facing</i> 123
Gallic Swords, Signal Horn, and Shields	136
Ruined Arches of the Claudian Aqueduct, near Rome. Roman Baths at Bath, England	<i>facing</i> 143
A Siege	150
Porta Maggiore, Rome: Gate, and Part of Frieze on Bread Contractor's Tomb	<i>facing</i> 164
<i>Pontem in flumine faciunt</i>	178
Arch of Constantine, Rome. The Forum at Pompeii	<i>facing</i> 183
The Romans attacked by the Gauls at the Siege of Alesia	" 192
Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)	195
<i>Mūcius Scaevola dextram manum in igni pōnit</i>	<i>facing</i> 223
<i>Rōmāni in Britanniam egrediuntur</i>	" 224
A Roman Camp	" 240

INTRODUCTION

1. These introductory sections should be read by the pupils and used for reference. Pupils learn pronunciation quickly by imitation. It is suggested that the teacher pronounce slowly the words in sections 9 and 21, and that the pupils repeat them after the teacher. Reference may be made to the rules as mistakes are made.

ALPHABET

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. It is a consonant when it stands before a vowel in the same syllable, as in *iūnior*.

3. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*. The other letters are consonants.

4. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels that are pronounced as one syllable. They are

ae oe au eu ui

PRONUNCIATION

5. The long vowels are pronounced as follows :

ā like *a* in *father*. *ī* like *i* in *machine*.

ē like *e* in *prey*. *ō* like *o* in *note*.

ū like *oo* in *root*.

6. The short vowels are pronounced as follows :

a like the first *a* in *ahd*. *i* like *i* in *pit*.

e like *e* in *step*. *o* like *o* in *or*.

u like *u* in *pull*.

7. Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English. But note the following points:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *come* and *go*. **s** is a hissing sound, as in *sin*; never like *z* as in *ease*.
i consonant is like *y* in *yes*. **ch** is like *ch* in *chorus*.
t is always hard, as in *tin*. **ph** is like *ph* in *alphabet*.
v is like *w* in *wine*. **qu** is almost like *kw*.

8. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*. **au** like *ou* in *house*.
oe like *oi* in *toil*. **eu** (rare) like *éh-oo*.
ui is almost like *we*. **ef** (rare) like *ei* in *eight*.

9. Pronounce carefully the following words:

hi	iam	tot	mē	genus	-que	cui
ad	vīs	sic	quia	coepit	vir	aeger
ita	quis	haec	causa	rēgnō	mēnsae	

SYLLABLES

10. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong alone or with one or more consonants, preceding or following. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs: **ae-dí-fi-cō**, *I build*.

11. Except in compound words (see 13), a single consonant between vowels or diphthongs should be joined with the second vowel: **a-mí-cus**, *friend*, **dí-xit**, *he said*.

12. If two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is before the last consonant, except that **l** or **r** with the consonant immediately preceding is joined to the second vowel: **hós-pes**, *guest*, **díc-tus**, *said*, **sānc-tus**, *holy*, **cás-tra**, *camp*, **dē-móns-trō**, *I point out*, **cōg-nōs-cō**, *I recognize*, **púb-li-cus**, *public*.

13. Compound words are divided into their component parts: **ád-est** (*ad, near; est, he is*), *he is present*.

14. Doubled consonants are separated : *pu-él-la, girl.*
15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

QUANTITY

16. Vowels are long (—) or short (˘). The long vowels are marked in this book; unmarked vowels must be considered short. Diphthongs are long.

17. The following are a few general rules for determining the quantity of vowels :

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or *h* : *có-pi-a, abundance.*
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long : *có-gō (cōāgō), I collect.*
3. Vowels are long before *nf, ns, nct, ncs* : *inferō, I bring in; insānus, mad.*
4. Diphthongs are long : *cāusa, cause.*

18. A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long by nature : *lē-gēs, laws; ae-dēs, temple.*

19. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by *x* or *z*, is long by position. The short vowel, however, is still pronounced short : *vocant, they call; dux, leader.*

ACCENT

20. The following principles determine what syllable of a word receives the stress of the voice (accent):

1. The ultima, or last syllable, is never accented.
2. Words of two syllables accent the first, or penult : *témplum, temple.*

3. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when it is long, by nature or position, otherwise the antepenult: **amāre**, *to love*; **mittere**, *to send*.
4. Certain words like **-ne**, the sign of a question, and **-que**, *and*, called enclitics, are so closely joined to the preceding word that they are pronounced with it; the last syllable of the first word has an accent: **amátne**, *does he love?* **hóminésque**, *and the men*.

EXERCISE

21. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

inīquus	vincam	aedificium	gladiō
grātiaē	filius	cóepērunt	cuius
huic	idem	filiusque	quae
monēre	vērō	mēnsārum	faciēbam
facere	aegritūdō	pugnābō	laudābimus

INFLECTION

22. **Parts of Speech.**—These are the same in Latin as in English, except that there is no article in Latin: namely, noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, and the particles.

23. **Inflection.**—This is the change that words undergo to show their grammatical relations to the rest of the sentence. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

24. **Declension.**—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases, which are shown by means of case endings:

1. *Nominative*, which is the case of the subject.
2. *Genitive*. It may generally be rendered by the English possessive, or by the objective with *of*.

3. *Dative*. This corresponds sometimes to the English objective with the prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. *Accusative*, the case of the direct object.
5. *Vocative*, the case of direct address.¹
6. *Ablative*. This expresses various adverbial relations corresponding to the English objective with the prepositions *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, and *on*.

Nouns in Latin are divided into five declensions, or classes, which are best distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular.

25. Stem and Base. — The stem is the form which gives in a general way the meaning of the word. The final letter of the stem, called the stem characteristic, often disappears or is changed before case endings. It is always found in the genitive plural, except that *o* of *-o*-stems is lengthened. The base (that part of the noun which remains unchanged in inflection, and to which the case endings are added directly) is formed by dropping the stem characteristic or by omitting the ending of the genitive singular.

26. Conjugation. — Verbs in Latin have

1. Three finite moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Supines, Gerunds, and Gerundives.
2. Six tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.
3. Two voices, as in English, Active and Passive.
4. Three persons, as in English, First, Second, Third.
5. Two numbers, as in English, Singular and Plural.

¹ Except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, the vocative case is like the nominative. It is therefore not given in the paradigms except in the second declension.

GENDER

27. There are three genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

In names of persons only, the gender is based, as in English, on sex (Natural Gender). In all other classes of words the gender is determined by the signification of the noun or by the ending of the nominative (Grammatical Gender).

28. General Rules of Gender.

1. Nouns denoting males, and names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *nauta, sailor*; *Tiberis, the Tiber*; *Caesar, Caesar*; *aquilō, north wind*; *Iānuārius, January*.
2. Nouns denoting females, and names of countries, towns, and trees are feminine: *filia, daughter*; *Ītalia, Italy*; *Athēnae, Athens*; *pirus, pear tree*.
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil, nothing*.

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -a-

FEMININE AND MASCULINE NOUNS

29. Nouns of the First Declension are *feminine*, unless they denote males, and are declined like the following example:

Stem¹ *stellā*. Base¹ *stell-*.

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	<i>stella, a star</i> (as subject) ²	-a
GEN.	<i>stellae, of a star, or star's</i>	-ae
DAT.	<i>stellae, to or for a star</i>	-ae
ACC.	<i>stellam, star, or a star</i> (as object)	-am
ABL.	<i>stellā, from, with, by a star</i>	-ā

¹ See 25. ² There is no article in Latin. Consequently *stella* may mean *star, the star, or a star*.

	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stellae, <i>stars</i> (as subject)	-ae
GEN.	stellārum, <i>of stars, or stars'</i>	-ārum
DAT.	stellis, <i>to or for stars</i>	-is
ACC.	stellās, <i>stars</i> (as object)	-ās
ABL.	stellis, <i>from, with, by stars</i>	-is

Note carefully

1. That the genitive and dative singular and nominative plural are alike.
2. That the dative and ablative plural are alike.
3. That the -a of the ablative singular is long.

VOCABULARY

30. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words, and decline each noun like *stella* :

NOUNS

<i>puella</i> , ae, f., <i>girl</i> .	<i>rosa</i> , ae, f., <i>rose</i> .
<i>rēgina</i> , ae, f., <i>queen</i> .	<i>via</i> , ae, f., <i>road, way, street</i> .
<i>stella</i> , ae, f., <i>star</i> .	<i>silva</i> , ae, f., <i>forest</i> .
<i>porta</i> , ae, f., <i>gate</i> .	<i>lūna</i> , ae, f., <i>moon</i> .

31.

EXERCISES

(Pronounce, give case and number, and translate)

I. 1. Puellārum. 2. Portis. 3. Viā. 4. Rosis.
5. Silvam. 6. Stellis. 7. Rēginae. 8. Viis. 9. Portae.
10. Stellās. 11. Viārum. 12. Rosa rēginae. 13. Viās
silvārum.

II. 1. To the queen. 2. By a rose. 3. The forests.
4. The rose of the queen. 5. By the streets. 6. Of
the stars. 7. For the girls. 8. By the gates. 9. Of the
girls.

LESSON 2

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED)

FEMININE ADJECTIVES

32. Feminine adjectives of the First Declension are declined like the nouns.

rosa pulchra, pretty rose

Stem *rosā-pulchrā-*

Base *ros-pulchr-*

SINGULAR

NOM.	<i>rosa pulchra, a pretty rose</i>
GEN.	<i>rosae pulchrae, of a pretty rose</i>
DAT.	<i>rosae pulchrae, to or for a pretty rose</i>
ACC.	<i>rosam pulchram, a pretty rose</i>
ABL.	<i>rosā pulchrā, from, with, by a pretty rose</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>rosae pulchrae, pretty roses</i>
GEN.	<i>rosarum pulchrarum, of pretty roses</i>
DAT.	<i>rosis pulchris, to or for pretty roses</i>
ACC.	<i>rosās pulchrās, pretty roses</i>
ABL.	<i>rosis pulchris, from, with, by pretty roses</i>

Observe that the adjective and the noun are in the same case. Notice the position of the Latin adjective with reference to its noun. It does not always precede the noun, as in English. See the remarks on the order of words (82).

Decline together : **via lāta**, *the wide road* ; **puella parva**, *the little girl*.

33. Examine the following :

1. **Rosa pulchra est**, *the rose is pretty*.
2. **Rosae pulchrae sunt**, *the roses are pretty*.

Note in these sentences

- a. That the subjects (**rosa**, **rosae**) are in the nominative case.
- b. That the verb is singular, when the subject is singular, and plural, when the subject is plural.
- c. That the predicate adjectives **pulchra** and **pulchrae** agree with the subject in number, gender, and case.

34. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Subject.** — *The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case.*

2. **Predicate Agreement.** — *A predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the word to which it refers. — A predicate noun agrees in case (only) with the word to which it refers ; in connection with a finite verb it is called a predicate nominative.*

35.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

fābula, ae, f., *story*.
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow*.
insula, ae, f., *island*.
terra, ae, f., *land, country*.

ADJECTIVES

bona, *good*.
lāta, *broad, wide*.
longa, *long*.
magna, *large, great*.
pulchra, *beautiful, pretty*.

VERBS

est, (*he, she, it*) *is, there is*.
sunt, (*they*) *are, there are*.

ADVERBS

ubi, *where, when*.
nōn, *not*.

CONJUNCTION : **et**, *and*.

36.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Fābulae longae sunt.* 2. *Terra est lāta et pulchra.*
 3. *Ubi est pulchra īnsula?* 4. *Lūna est pulchra.* 5. *Bonae sagittae sunt longae.* 6. *Nōn est pulchra.* 7. *Magnae sunt īnsulae.* 8. *Lātis terrīs.* 9. *Lūna et stellae sunt pulchrae.* 10. *Via est lāta.* 11. *Ubi sunt īnsulae magnae?* 12. *Sagittārum longārum.*

II. 1. The good queen is beautiful. 2. It¹ is a large island. 3. Where are the long arrows? 4. They are beautiful girls. 5. The land is not wide. 6. It is a good story.

LESSON 3

FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā- (CONTINUED). GENITIVE CASE. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**

37. Examine the following:

1. *Rosa puellae alba est, the rose of the girl is white, or the girl's rose is white.*
2. *Rosae puellārum albae sunt, the roses of the girls are white, or the girls' roses are white.*

Observe that **puellae** limits **rosa**: not every rose is white, but only the girl's rose is white. In the same way **puellārum** limits **rosae**, because it defines whose roses are meant.

38. RULE. — **The Genitive.** — *The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun.*²

39. PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD, OF THE VERB **sum**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER. sum , <i>I am</i>	sumus , <i>we are</i>
2D PER. es , <i>you are (thou art)</i>	estis , <i>you are</i>
3D PER. est , <i>(he, she, it) is, there is</i>	sunt , <i>they are, there are</i>

¹ *It is, est.*

² This genitive is called the genitive of possessor when it denotes the owner or possessor.

40. Examine the following :

STATEMENT

Fēmina est pulchra, the woman is beautiful.

QUESTIONS

1. **Estne fēmina pulchra?** *is the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes or No.)
2. **Nōne fēmina pulchra est?** *is not the woman beautiful?* (Answer expected, Yes.)
3. **Ubi est fēmina?** *where is the woman?*

Observe

1. That in simple questions that may be answered by either yes or no, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the emphatic word, which usually stands first.
2. That questions expecting the answer yes, are introduced by **nōne**.
3. That **-ne** is not used if the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb (**quī, who, ubi, where, cūr, why, etc.**).

41.

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

pecūnia, ae, f., money.
vita, ae, f., life.
cōpia, ae, f., abundance (pl., troops, forces).
fēmina, ae, f., woman.
patria, ae, f., native land, country.
Graecia, ae, f., Greece.
Eurōpa, ae, f., Europe.
Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.
filia, ae, f., daughter.

ADJECTIVES

nova, new.
parva, small.
mea, my, mine.
tua, your, yours (referring to one person only).

ADVERB

semper, always, ever.

-ne, enclitic, sign of a question, but not separately translated.

42.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallia est terra Eurōpae. 2. Estne Gallia tua patria? 3. Nōne sunt parvae filiae? 4. Estne cōpia pecūniae? 5. Nōn longa est vita fēminae. 6. Est pulchra. 7. Cōpiaē rēginae nōn sunt magnae. 8. Suntne parvae puellae? 9. Rēgina tuae patriae pulchra est. 10. Cōpiaē patriae meae nōn semper sunt parvae. 11. Rēginārum rosae sunt pulchrae. 12. Semperne novae lūnae pulchrae sunt? 13. Ubi sunt rēginārum cōpiaē? 14. Fēminae Graeciae sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. We are; you (sing.) are; you (plur.) are. 2. Where are we? 3. Of the beautiful women. 4. My country's forces are small. 5. There is not always an abundance of money. 6. Are queens' daughters always beautiful? 7. Is it not a pretty country?

(READING SELECTION 441)

LESSON 4

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE, DIRECT
OBJECT

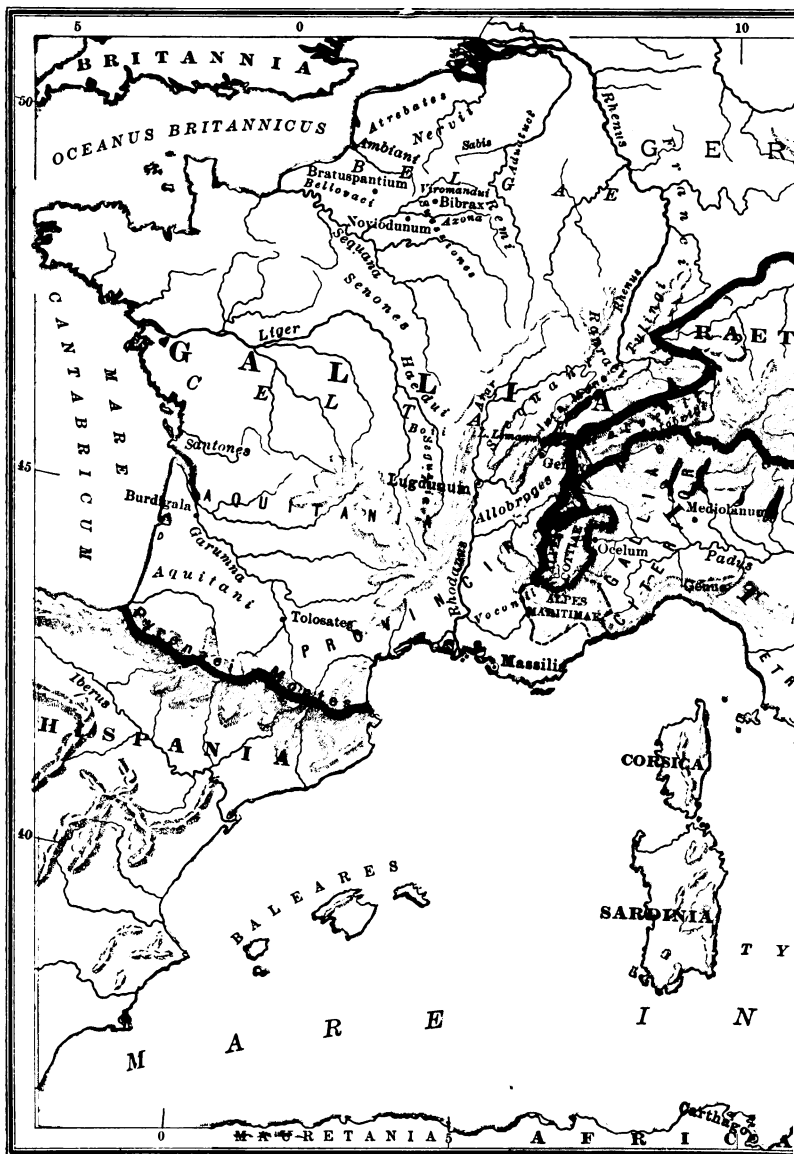
43.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *amō*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS ¹
1ST PER. <i>amō, I love, am loving, do love</i>	-ō (or -m), <i>I</i>
2D PER. <i>amās, you love, are loving, do love</i>	-s, <i>you (or thou)</i>
3D PER. <i>amat, he loves, is loving, does love</i>	-t, <i>he, she, it</i>

PLURAL	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1ST PER. <i>amāmus, we love, are loving, do love</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
2D PER. <i>amātis, you love, are loving, do love</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
3D PER. <i>amant, they love, are loving, do love</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

¹ These are the personal endings of all tenses, except the perfect indicative.







Observe

1. That the personal endings are added to the stem *amā-*, the final vowel of which is lost before *-ō* in the first person singular, and is shortened before *-t*, *-nt*.
2. That the person and number of a Latin verb are indicated clearly by the *ending*, without the use of a pronoun.

44. Like *amō*, conjugate the present indicative of

pugnō, *I fight*

culpō, *I blame*

vocō, *I call*

laudō, *I praise*

45. Carefully examine the following :

1. *Rēgina nautam laudat*, *the queen praises the sailor.*
2. *Rēginae nautam laudant*, *the queens praise the sailor.*
3. *Nautam laudant*, *they praise the sailor.*
4. *Nautam laudāmus*, *we praise the sailor.*

From these sentences you will see

1. That the direct object of the verb, *i.e.* that which the action of the verb affects, is in the accusative case.
2. That, when a noun is the subject, the verb is third person.
3. That, when a noun is not the subject, the subject need not be expressed by a separate word. In English, however, we must use a pronoun.
4. That the verb is in the same *number* and *person* as the subject.

46. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Agreement of Verb.** — *A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

2. **Direct Object.** — *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

47.

VOCABULARY

<i>agricola</i> , ae, m., ¹ <i>farmer</i> .	<i>amō</i> , <i>I love, I like</i> .
<i>nauta</i> , ae, m., ¹ <i>sailor</i> .	* <i>pugnō</i> , <i>I fight</i> . ²
<i>Italia</i> , ae, f., <i>Italy</i> .	* <i>vocō</i> , <i>I call</i> . ²
<i>Rōma</i> , ae, f., <i>Rome</i> .	<i>culpō</i> , <i>I blame</i> .
<i>inopia</i> , ae, f., <i>lack, want</i> .	<i>laudō</i> , <i>I praise</i> .
<i>fida</i> , <i>faithful</i> .	<i>cūr</i> , adv., <i>why?</i>
<i>superba</i> , <i>proud, haughty</i> .	<i>in</i> , prep. with abl., <i>in, on</i> . ³

48.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Graeciae insulae sunt parvae*. 2. *Pecūniā meā*.
 3. *Suntne* ⁴ *cōpiae patriae tuae magnae?* 4. *Fēminae filiae*
nōn semper bonae sunt. 5. *Est cōpia pecūniae*. 6. *Pul-*
chrae sunt Eurōpae viae. 7. *Estne fābula nova?*

II. 1. Where are you (plur.)? 2. Are the queen's
 daughters beautiful? 3. She is small. 4. (O) queen,
 where is your daughter? 5. We are; you are (sing.).

49.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Pugnātis; pugnat; pugnāmus*. 2. *Vocās; vo-*
cantne? vocātisne? 3. *Cūr agricolās culpāmus?* 4. *In*
Italiā inopia est pecūniae. 5. *Laudantne nautās?* 6. *Su-*
perbās fēminās nōn amāmus. 7. *Rēginae nautās nōn*
laudāmus. 8. *Superbae in Galliā sunt puellae*. 9. *Ubi*
sunt agricolārum filiae? 10. *Cūr nautam culpat?*
 11. *Rosae magnae et pulchrae sunt in meā patriā*. 12.
Agricolae inopiam pecūniae nōn amant.

¹ A masculine noun of the first declension. Why? See 28, 1. ² Words marked with an asterisk are recommended for special study in connection with Word Formation in English. ³ *In* is used with the ablative only when the verb expresses no idea of motion toward a place. *Sunt in Eurōpā, they are in Europe*. *Pugnant in silvis, they are fighting in the forest*. ⁴ In Latin sentences the verb normally comes last. In questions, however, the verb often comes first.

II. 1. We blame; she praises; you (plur.) are calling.
 2. They are fighting; you (sing.) call; we fight. 3. There¹
 are pretty roses in Italy. 4. Why do you blame the sailor?
 5. The woman is calling the sailor's daughters. 6. Italy is
 a country of Europe.

LESSON 5

SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-. MASCULINE NOUNS IN -us. MASCULINE ADJECTIVES

50. dominus, m., *master, lord*

Stem **domino-**²

Base **domin-**

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	dominus, <i>master</i>	-us
GEN.	dominī, <i>of the master</i>	-ī
DAT.	dominō, <i>to or for the master</i>	-ō
ACC.	dominum, <i>master</i>	-um
VOC. ³	domine, (<i>O</i>) <i>master</i>	-e
ABL.	dominō, <i>from, with, by the master</i>	-ō

	PLURAL	
NOM.	dominī, <i>masters</i>	-ī
GEN.	dominōrum, <i>of the masters</i>	-ōrum
DAT.	dominīs, <i>to or for the masters</i>	-īs
ACC.	dominōs, <i>masters</i>	-ōs
VOC.	dominī, (<i>O</i>) <i>masters</i>	-ī
ABL.	dominīs, <i>from, with, by the masters</i>	-īs

51. The masculine of adjectives ending in -us is declined like the nouns of this declension ending in -us.

¹ *There are, sunt*; also *it is, est*. There are no special words in Latin for *there* and *it* used in this way. ² See 25. ³ See 24, 5, footnote.

dominus bonus, good master

SINGULAR

NOM. dominus bonus	<i>good master</i>
GEN. domini boni	<i>of the good master</i>
DAT. domino bono	<i>to or for the good master</i>
ACC. dominum bonum	<i>good master</i>
VOC. domine bone	<i>(O) good master</i>
ABL. domino bono	<i>from, with, by the good master</i>

PLURAL

NOM. domini boni	<i>good masters</i>
GEN. dominorum bonorum	<i>of the good masters</i>
DAT. dominis bonis	<i>to or for the good masters</i>
ACC. dominos bonos	<i>good masters</i>
VOC. domini boni	<i>(O) good masters</i>
ABL. dominis bonis	<i>from, with, by the good masters</i>

52. 1. What case endings of this declension are alike?
Which are the same as the first declension endings?

2. The base is obtained by dropping the -i of the genitive singular: genitive, **domini**, base **domin-**.

3. Conjugate the present indicative of the verbs given in the vocabulary below.

53.

VOCABULARY

amicus , i, m., <i>friend.</i>	bonus , <i>good.</i>
cibus , i, m., <i>food.</i>	malus , <i>bad, evil.</i>
dominus , i, m., <i>master, lord.</i>	parvus , <i>small.</i>
equus , i, m., <i>horse.</i>	superbus , <i>proud, haughty.</i>
hortus , i, m., <i>garden.</i>	fidus , <i>faithful.</i>
servus , i, m., <i>slave.</i>	dēlectō , <i>I delight, I please.</i>
sed , conj., <i>but.</i>	* servō , <i>I keep, I preserve, I save.</i>
magnus , <i>great, large.</i>	

54.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rēgīnae nautās laudās. 2. Amātisne Rōmam?
3. Ubi nautae pugnāt? 4. Nautae in viā pugnāt.
5. Fīliam rēgīnae nōn amant. 6. Agricolās nōn semper laudant.

II. 1. Is there a lack of money in your native country?
2. The queen's daughter blames the woman. 3. Where is the sailor's money?

55.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominō; amicōrum; equī. 2. Amīcīs; domini superbī; equīs magnīs. 3. Servus est amīcus agricolae.
4. Equī sunt bonī sed nōn magnī. 5. Rēgīna fidum servum laudat. 6. Superbum dominum nōn amant. 7. Rēgīnae filia malum servum culpat. 8. Cibus dominō servant.
9. Culpāsne, amīce,¹ dominum servōrum? 10. Agricolae parvōs equōs nōn laudant. 11. Cibus est in hortō. 12. Cūr fidī equī dominōs dēlectant?

II. 1. To the masters; of the horse; for the slaves.
2. The food of the slaves is not good. 3. The master is in the garden. 4. He blames his² faithful horse. 5. The garden is large, but not good. 6. Good food pleases the slaves. 7. Slave, where is the sailor's friend?

¹ The vocative in Latin seldom comes first in the sentence.

² Omit. The possessives 'his' and 'her,' and 'their,' referring back to the subject of the clause or sentence, are frequently omitted in Latin if they are not emphatic or are not needed for the sake of clearness.



Hortus

LESSON 6

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NEUTERS IN **-um**.
 APPOSITIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT

56. **dōnum**, *gift***dōnum grātum**, *acceptable gift*Stem **dōno-**Base **dōn-**Stem **dōno-** **grāto-**Base **dōn-** **grāt-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **dōnum**, *gift*GEN. **dōnī**, *of the gift*DAT. **dōnō**, *to or for the gift*ACC. **dōnum**, *gift* [*gift*]ABL. **dōnō**, *from, with, by the*

SINGULAR

NOM. **dōnum grātum**GEN. **dōnī grātī**DAT. **dōnō grātō**ACC. **dōnum grātum**ABL. **dōnō grātō**

PLURAL

NOM. **dōna**, *gifts*GEN. **dōnōrum**, *of the gifts*DAT. **dōnīs**, *to or for the gifts*ACC. **dōna**, *gifts* [*gifts*]ABL. **dōnīs**, *from, with, by the*

PLURAL

NOM. **dōna grāta**GEN. **dōnōrum grātōrum**DAT. **dōnīs grātīs**ACC. **dōna grāta**ABL. **dōnīs grātīs**

Observe that the nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**. This is true of all neuter nouns of all declensions.

57. Examine the following :

1. **Mārcus agricola filiae equum dat**, *Marcus, the farmer, gives (his) daughter a horse, OR gives a horse to (his) daughter.*
2. **Mārcō amīcō cibum dō**, *I give Marcus (my) friend food, OR I give food to Marcus, my friend.*

Observe in these sentences

1. That **agricola** denotes the same person as **Mārcus**, and that it tells something about him, and is in the same case. Such a word is called an appositive. **Amicō** has the same relation to **Mārcō**. Compare with 33, c, and note the difference.
2. That **equum** and **cibum**, being directly affected by the action of their respective verbs, are in the accusative, but that **filiae** and **Mārcō** are in the dative case, because they are *indirectly* affected by the verb.

58. RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. **Apposition.** — *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains.*

2. **Indirect Object.** — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*¹

59.

VOCABULARY

bellum, i, n., *war*.

dōnum, i, n., *gift*.

oppidum, i, n., *town*.

frūmentum, i, n., *grain*.

vinum, i, n., *wine*.

in, prep. with acc.,² *into, to, against*; with abl., *in, on, over*.

Mārcus, i, m., *Marcus*.

incola, ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

Rōmānus, i, m., *Roman*.

grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing* (followed by dat.).

* **dō**, *I give*.

portō, *I carry*.

60.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Malum servum culpāmus.** 2. **Laudantne domini superbī servōs fidōs?** 3. **Equi domini sunt in magnō hortō.**

¹ The indirect object is used especially with verbs of giving, doing, and saying.

² See 47, footnote 2. The accusative is used with **in** when the verb expresses motion into, toward, or against (some place, person, etc.). **Vinum in oppidum portat**, *he is carrying wine into the town*.

4. Ubi servī cibum dominōrum servant? 5. Agricolae fidōs equōs nōn semper laudant. 6. Est cibus in domini hortō. 7. Fēmina amici filiam vocat.

II. 1. She praises my friend's garden. 2. A good horse pleases your daughter. 3. The master praises the friend, but blames the slaves. 4. The sailors' friends are in Greece. 5. Why does the garden please the farmer?

61.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Oppidis; bella; vīnō. 2. Mārcus nauta est fidus. 3. Incolīs vīnum damus.¹ 4. Bellum Rōmānis grātum est. 5. Cibus in oppidum portāmus. 6. Mārcus, agricolārum amicus, Rōmānus est. 7. Incolae in oppidum frūmentum portant. 8. Fīliae rēgīnae in hortō sunt. 9. Vīnum Mārcō nautae dant. 10. Dōnā incolīs oppidī sunt grāta. 11. Cūr vīnum servīs datis? 12. Portantne nautae cibum in Galliam?

II. 1. To Marcus, the farmer; for the good master. 2. Are you giving the horses good grain? 3. Wars delight the haughty Romans. 4. The farmer gives the horse food. 5. The queen gives wine to Marcus, the sailor. 6. They carry grain into the town. 7. There is good grain in the town.

(READING SELECTION 442)

LESSON 7

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. AGREEMENT

62. Adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like nouns of those declensions. As has been seen in 51 and 56, the endings of the masculine and neuter of adjectives are the same as the endings of the nouns of the second declension, and the feminine endings are the same as those of nouns of the first declension (32). The complete declension of **bonus**, *good*, is as follows:

¹ In the verb **dō**, **a** is by exception short throughout, save in the forms **dās** (2nd person singular present indicative), **dāns** (the nominative singular of present participle), and **dā** (imperative singular).



Roman Soldiers in Camp



Roman Soldiers on the March

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	boni	bonae	boni
DAT.	bono	bonae	bono
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
VOC.	bone	bona	bonum
ABL.	bono	bona	bono
	PLURAL		
NOM.	boni	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
DAT.	bonis	bonis	bonis
ACC.	bonos	bonas	bona
VOC.	boni	bonae	bona
ABL.	bonis	bonis	bonis

Decline together **amicus fidus**, *faithful friend*; **puella parva**, *little girl*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

63. Examine the following:

1. **Amicus est fidus**, *the friend is faithful*.
2. **Agricolae sunt validi**, *the farmers are sturdy*.
3. **Puellae sunt parvae**, *the girls are small*.
4. **Nautas superbos non amamus**, *we do not like proud sailors*.

Compare carefully the endings of the nouns and adjectives in these sentences, and notice

- a. That the adjectives are in the same *number*, *gender*, and *case* as the nouns they modify.
- b. That the endings of the nouns and adjectives are not always the same, for adjectives modifying masculine nouns of the first declension must have the masculine endings, which are second declension endings. Which of the above sentences illustrate this?

64. Decline together *nauta bonus, the good sailor; pōculum magnum, the large cup; agricola validus, the strong farmer.*

65. RULE. — Agreement of Adjectives. — *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66.

VOCABULARY

<i>malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked.</i>	<i>lātus, a, um, wide, broad.</i>
<i>magnus, a, um, great, large.</i>	<i>novus, a, um, new.</i>
<i>parvus, a, um, small.</i>	<i>fidus, a, um, faithful, loyal.</i>
<i>meus, a, um, my, mine.</i>	<i>superbus, a, um, proud,</i>
<i>tuus, a, um, your, yours.</i>	<i>haughty.</i>
<i>grātus, a, um, acceptable,</i>	<i>validus, a, um, strong, sturdy.</i>
<i>pleasing.</i>	<i>convocō, I call together, I</i>
<i>albus, a, um, white.</i>	<i>summon.</i>
<i>cārus, a, um, dear.</i>	<i>hodiē, adv., to-day.</i>
<i>perītus, a, um, skillful.</i>	<i>nunc, adv., now.</i>
<i>longus, a, um, long.</i>	

67.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Filiae equīs cibum dant.* 2. *Inopia pecūniae Mārcō agricolae nōn est grāta.* 3. *Vocātisne incolās Galliae?* 4. *Ubi Rōmānī pugnant?* 5. *Nautae rēgīnae dōna grāta dant.* 6. *Nauta Mārcō agricolae bonum vīnum dat.*

II. 1. The sailor gives acceptable gifts to his daughter. 2. The daughter of Marcus, the farmer, is in the town. 3. They give the women money. 4. He is carrying grain into the town.

68.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Equī albī frūmentum in oppidum portant.* 2. *Ubi est hodiē nauta perītus?* 3. *In oppidō nunc est nauta.* 4. *Dōna meis amicīs sunt semper grāta.* 5. *Equum*

agricolae validō fēminae dant. 6. Rēgīna superba in magnum oppidum servōs convocat. 7. Dominus servōs fidōs vocat. 8. Mea filia nōn est in hortō. 9. Hodie peritōs agricolās nōn culpāmus. 10. Dōna rēgīnae incolās fidōs dēlectant. 11. Est nova lūna. 12. Cūr in hortum agricolās validōs convocat?

II. 1. A sailor is not always faithful. 2. They are now praising the skillful farmers. 3. The queen summons the wicked inhabitants into the towns. 4. We are praising your faithful friend to-day. 5. There are loyal inhabitants in the towns. 6. The queen is giving Marcus, the farmer, a slave.

LESSON 8

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

49.

Paradigms

 puer, *boy*

 ager, *field*

 vir, *man*

 Stem **puero-**

 Stem **agro-**

 Stem **viro-**

 Base **puer-**

 Base **agr-**

 Base **vir-**

SINGULAR

NOM. puer

ager

vir

GEN. pueri

agri

viri

DAT. puerō

agrō

virō

ACC. puerum

agrum

virum

ABL. puerō

agrō

virō

PLURAL

NOM. pueri

agri

viri

GEN. puerōrum

agrōrum

virōrum

DAT. pueris

agris

viris

ACC. puerōs

agrōs

virōs

ABL. pueris

agris

viris

1. Are the case endings the same as in 50?
2. Is the base obtained in the same way as in previous nouns?
3. The vocative is like the nominative. See 24, 5, footnote.
4. Compare carefully **puer** and **ager**, and note that the base of **ager** has no *e* before *r*.

70. Only a very few nouns are declined like **puer**. Most nouns of this declension in *-er* are declined like **ager**.

Like **ager** decline **liber**, *book*.

Like the plural of **puer** decline **liberī**, *children*.

71.

VOCABULARY

liber, **librī**, m., *book*.

Gallus, 1, m., *a Gaul*.

liberī, **liberōrum**, m. (plur.),
children.

vir, **virī**, m., *man*.

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy*.

magister, **magistrī**, m.,
teacher.

discipulus, 1, m., *pupil*.

multus, a, um, *much*; plur.,

ager, **agrī**, m., *field*.

many.

72.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Inopia frūmenti est in Galliā. 2. Incolīs oppidī magnī equōs dant. 3. Servus dōna agricolae in oppidum portat. 4. Estne nunc pecūniae cōpia? 5. Agricolārum vīta Gallōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Cūr in pulchram insulam frūmentum portāmus?

II. 1. The inhabitants like a good story. 2. There are many¹ sturdy farmers in my country. 3. The Romans

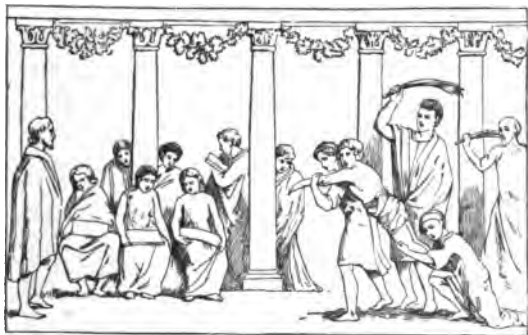
¹ *Many sturdy = many and sturdy.*

are summoning large forces into the towns. 4. There are farmers in the forest, and many sailors on the island.

73.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Multi librī sunt in oppidō. 2. Virī puellās et puerōs laudant. 3. Cibus in oppidum portāmus. 4. Liber meō discipulō est grātus. 5. Rēgīna liberōs in oppidum convocat. 6. Discipulī magistrī amīcum laudant. 7. Multi agricolae nunc in agrō sunt. 8. Filia mea liberōs magistrī laudat. 9. Incolārum agrī sunt lātī. 10. Magister discipulōs nōn semper culpāt. 11. Ubi nunc sunt filiae meae librī? 12. Equī multōs virōs in silvam portant.



A Roman School

II. 1. The boys are my children's friends. 2. My daughter loves her teacher. 3. The sturdy farmers are calling the slaves into the fields. 4. The teacher gives the man a book. 5. There are not many sailors in the town. 6. The teacher praises his faithful pupils.

LESSON 9

SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED). NOUNS IN **-ius** AND **-ium**. ADJECTIVES IN **-er**, **(-e)ra**, **(-e)rum**

74.

filius, sonStem **fili-**Base **fili-****proelium, battle**Stem **proelio-**Base **proeli-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **filius**GEN. **fili (fili)**DAT. **filiō**ACC. **filiū**VOC. **fili**ABL. **filiō****proelium****proeli (proeli)****proeliō****proelium****proelium****proeliō**

PLURAL

NOM. **fili**GEN. **filiōrum**DAT. **filiis**ACC. **filiōs**VOC. **fili**ABL. **filiis****proelia****proeliōrum****proeliis****proelia****proelia****proeliis**

1. The genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** generally ends in **-i** (not **-ii**). The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: **cōnsilium, plan**; (gen.) **cōnsili**.¹
2. In proper names in **-ius** and **filius**, the vocative singular ends in **-i**: **fili, (O) son**; **Mercurius, (voc.) Mercūri**,¹ **(O) Mercury**. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative.
3. Do these nouns differ in any other way from those in Lesson 5?

¹ In such forms the penult is accented, even though short. Contrast 20, 3.

75.

liber, free

Stem **libero-**

Base **liber-**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	liber	libera	liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō
		etc.	

pulcher, beautiful

Stem **pulchro-**

Base **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
		etc.	

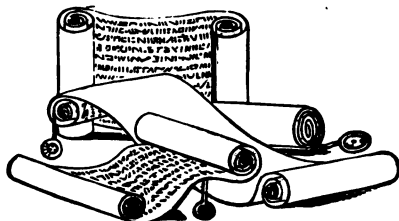
1. Complete the declension of these adjectives.
2. It has been noticed that adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um** are declined in the masculine like **dominus** (50). Likewise adjectives in **-er**, **-era**, **-erum** are declined in the masculine like **puer** (69), and those in **-er**, **-ra**, **-rum** like **ager** (69). The feminine and neuter of these adjectives follow **stella** (29) and **dōnum** (56).
3. Learn the adjectives in the vocabulary that have **e** before the final **r** of the base. Most other adjectives of the first and second declension are declined like **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**. See 70.

76. Distinguish carefully

liber, libera, liberum, free.

liberī, liberōrum, m. (plur.), children.

liber, libri, m., book.



Roman Books

77. SUMMARY OF NOUNS OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. Sing. Endings

-a

Gender

Feminine

(Except names of males, 27, 28)

SECOND DECLENSION

-us

-ius

-er

-ir

-um

-ium

Masculine

Neuter

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. How is the base of a noun obtained?
2. In what nouns is the vocative singular not like the nominative?
3. In what nouns is there an irregularity in the formation of the genitive singular? in that of the dative and ablative plural?

4. Enumerate the nouns and adjectives in *-er* that have *e* before the *r* of the base.

78.

VOCABULARY

<i>filius, fili, m., son.</i>	<i>proellum, proeli, n., battle.</i>
<i>nūntius, i, m., messenger.</i>	<i>miser, misera, miserum,</i>
<i>gladius, i, m., sword.</i>	<i>wretched, poor.</i>
<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,</i>	<i>asper, aspera, asperum, rough,</i>
<i>beautiful, pretty.</i>	<i>fierce.</i>
<i>tener, tenera, tenerum, ten-</i>	<i>niger, nigra, nigrum, black.</i>
<i>der, delicate, dainty.</i>	<i>piger, pigra, pigrum, slow,</i>
<i>aedificium, i, n., building.</i>	<i>lazy.</i>

79.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. In agrō Mārcī amīcī sunt multi equī. 2. Liber, dōnum pulchrum magistri, puerum dēlectat. 3. Multi agricolae magnōs equōs amant. 4. Lātaene sunt viae Itāliae? 5. Puerōs fidōs vocātis. 6. Cūr nūntiī liberōs in oppidum convocant?

II. 1. They praise the sons of free men. 2. Many are the inhabitants in the towns of Greece. 3. The Romans are carrying much grain into the towns. 4. I am giving my friend Marcus a large book.

80.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Aedificia in Graeciā pulchra sunt. 2. Ubi tuī, fili, librī sunt? 3. Nūntiōrum sagittae nōn sunt longae. 4. Virī multōs gladiōs in aedificium portant. 5. Rosae multae et tenerae in asperā silvā sunt. 6. Agricolae miserī pigrōs equōs nōn amant. 7. Proelia nautās asperōs dēlectant. 8. Dōna mei amīcī multa filiīs grāta sunt. 9. Cūr dominus superbus servōs pigrōs culpāt?

10. Nūntī filiō multōs librōs dō. 11. Viae pulchrae Galliae liberōs dēlectant. 12. In magnō aedificiō sunt multae sagittae et multi gladii.

II. 1. The messenger's daughter is pretty. 2. The great buildings please the fierce inhabitants. 3. Marcus,¹ are you carrying my sword? 4. Fierce battles are pleasing to the Romans. 5. You are giving my son a black horse. 6. There are many women and men in the beautiful building.

(READING SELECTION 443)

LESSON 10

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF **sum**. REVIEW

81. Review 39. The imperfect and future tenses of **sum** are conjugated as follows:

IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
		SINGULAR	
1. <i>eram, I was</i>		1. <i>erō, I shall be</i>	
2. <i>erās, you were</i>		2. <i>eris, you will be</i>	
3. <i>erat, he was, there was</i>		3. <i>erit, he will be, there will be</i>	
		PLURAL	
1. <i>erāmus, we were</i>		1. <i>erimus, we shall be.</i>	
2. <i>erātis, you were</i>		2. <i>eritis, you will be</i>	
3. <i>erant, they were, there were</i>		3. <i>erunt, they will be, there will be</i>	

1. Are the personal endings of these tenses regular?
See 43. Are these endings the same as those of the present of **sum**?

82. **Order of Words.** — In an English sentence the order of the words is very important, because of the comparatively few inflectional endings. A change in the order

¹ Be careful as to the position of this word. See page 27, footnote 1.

may change entirely the meaning of a sentence. For example:

Caesar praises the loyal farmers.

The loyal farmers praise Caesar.

In Latin, a change in the order of the words does not usually change the meaning of the sentence, but merely shows the *emphasis* which the writer wishes to give to a particular word or phrase. For example:

1. **Caesar agricolās fidōs laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
2. **Caesar fidōs agricolās laudat**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*
3. **Agricolās fidōs laudat Caesar**, *Caesar praises the loyal farmers.*

The first sentence shows the normal¹ order, and implies no special emphasis on any word, but this order is often changed to express the emphasis the writer wishes to show. In the second sentence **fidōs** is more emphatic than in the first. In the third **agricolās fidōs** and **Caesar** are emphatic.

83.

REVIEW LIST OF NOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Review carefully the meaning, gender, and declension of each noun.
2. Recall any English equivalents that the Latin words suggest, viz., **vīta**, *vital*; **nauta**, *nautical*. Also watch for relationship between Latin words, viz., **ager**, *field*; **agricola**, *farmer*. *Do this for new words of succeeding vocabularies.*

¹ The normal order of a Latin sentence is (1) subject with modifiers, (2) indirect object with modifiers, (3) direct object with modifiers, (4) adverb, (5) verb. But this normal order very often gives way to considerations of emphasis or clearness.

incola	gladius	agricola	lūna	aedificium
discipulus	vir	patria	porta	frūmentum
vīnum	ager	cōpia	fābula	oppidum
sagitta	fēmina	vīta	īnsula	dōnum
proelium	nūntius	pecūnia	amicus	bellum
puer	hortus	terra	dominus	magister
via	silva	rēgīna	servus	liber
rosa	inopia	stella	filia	
cibus	nauta	equus	filius	

84.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Erimus; erāmus; sumus. 2. Erātis; eritis; estis.
 3. Erant; es; eris. 4. Erās; erunt; eris. 5. Fīlīi agricolae
 erant parvī. 6. Fīlīa nūntī erat in īnsulā pulchrā.
 7. Rēgīnae cōpiaē erunt in tuā patriā. 8. Nautae nōn
 erant pigri. 9. Ubi gladius meī amīcī erat? 10. In
 magnō aedificiō erat.

II. 1. We were; we are; we shall be. 2. They will
 be; you (plur.) will be; she was. 3. You (sing.) were;
 he will be; you (sing.) will be. 4. My friend's horse was
 not lazy. 5. The sailor's sons were small. 6. The fierce
 inhabitants will be slaves of the queen.

LESSON 11

FIRST CONJUGATION. PRINCIPAL PARTS. FORMATION
 AND CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE

85. Review 26 and 43. Latin verbs are divided into four
 classes or conjugations. These conjugations are distin-
 guished by the vowel before the -re of the present infinitive
 active. Thus:

CONJUGATION	PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE	DISTINGUISHING VOWEL
I.	amāre , <i>to love</i>	a
II.	monēre , <i>to advise</i>	e
III.	regere , <i>to rule</i>	e
IV.	audire , <i>to hear</i>	i

86. The principal parts of the verb are (1) the present indicative active, (2) the present infinitive active, (3) the perfect indicative active, (4) the perfect passive participle. These four forms of a verb must be known, because from them are obtained the stems necessary to the formation of all forms of the verb. These stems are called (1) present stem, (2) perfect stem, (3) participial stem, and are obtained from the principal parts as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
amō <i>I love</i>	amā re <i>to love</i>	amāv i <i>I have loved</i>	amāt us <i>loved</i>
	present stem	perfect stem	participial stem

87.

Paradigm

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābam**, *I was loving, I loved, I did love*
2. **amābās**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābat**, *he was loving, loved, did love*

PLURAL

1. **amābāmus**, *we were loving, loved, did love*
2. **amābātis**, *you were loving, loved, did love*
3. **amābant**, *they were loving, loved, did love*

FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. **amābō**, *I shall love*
2. **amābis**, *you will love*
3. **amābit**, *he will love*

PLURAL

1. **amābimus**, *we shall love*
2. **amābitis**, *you will love*
3. **amābunt**, *they will love*

Observe

1. That the first person of the imperfect is found by adding **-bam** to the present stem, and the first person of the future by adding **-bō** to the present stem. Thus:

amō pres. stem **amā-** imperf., **amā-bam**

amō pres. stem **amā-** fut., **amā-bō**

2. That the personal endings are the same as those used in the present tense. See 43.

88. Learn the principal parts, and form and conjugate the imperfect and future active of the following verbs:

parō, *prepare*, **parāre**, **parāvī**, **parātus**

laudō, *praise*, **laudāre**, **laudāvī**, **laudātus**

culpō, *blame*, **culpāre**, **culpāvī**, **culpātus**

convocō, *summon*, **convocāre**, **convocāvī**, **convocātus**

89.

VOCABULARY

locus, 1, m., plur., **locī**, m., **idōneus**, a, um, *fit, suitable*.

and **loca**, n., *place*.

* **parō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *prepare*.

praemium, 1, n., *reward*.

comparō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *pro-*

pīlum, 1, n., *javelin*.

vide, get (bring) together.

saxum, 1, n., *rock*.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.

tēlum, 1, n., *weapon*.

hasta, ae, f., *spear*.

castra, ōrum, n. (plur.), *camp*.

90.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli filiis agricolārum cibum nōn dant. 2. Cūr fidum nautam culpātis? 3. Erant in Graeciā aedificia pulchra. 4. In silvam nūntiōs convocāt. 5. Inopia cibī et vinī virōs nōn dēlectat. 6. Multi gladii semper in oppidō sunt.

II. 1. Son, where is my sword? 2. They are carrying the grain into the large building. 3. You give my daughter many roses. 4. Why does the island please the boys?

91.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Culpābat; laudābant; convocābis. 2. Pugnābāmus; comparābās; dabunt. 3. Portābimus; culpābitis; laudābit. 4. Bellum contrā Gallōs parābant. 5. Praemia idōnea virōs dēlectābunt. 6. Gallī in castra cibum et tēla portant. 7. Idōneane praemia comparābitis? 8. Ubi est locus castrīs idōneus? 9. Fili praemium erit pulchrum pilum. 10. Idōneās hastās viris dabimus. 11. Multae sagittae et pila sunt in castrīs. 12. Gallī bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābunt.

II. 1. You (plur.) will give; they gave; she was giving. 2. We praised; he will blame; we are summoning. 3. They will carry; we shall give; you (sing.) were praising. 4. We were preparing a place suitable for a camp. 5. He will give his daughter a reward. 6. The Romans prepared war against the Gauls. 7. The weapons of the Gauls were rocks and arrows.

LESSON 12

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PERFECT. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

92.

Paradigm

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō*, *I love*

SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS WITH CONNECTING VOWEL
1. <i>amāvī</i> , <i>I have loved, I loved, I did love</i>	-ī
2. <i>amāvisti</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-isti
3. <i>amāvit</i> , <i>he has loved, etc.</i>	-it
PLURAL	
1. <i>amāvimus</i> , <i>we have loved, etc.</i>	-imus
2. <i>amāvistis</i> , <i>you have loved, etc.</i>	-istis
3. <i>amāverunt</i> , <i>they have loved, etc.</i>	-erunt

1. *The personal endings of the perfect tense are the same in all the conjugations.* Notice that these endings differ from those of the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
2. Compare the second and third translations of the perfect with those of the imperfect (87). There is this difference in the use of the two tenses: the perfect denotes an act or state (condition) *completed* by or at the present time, the imperfect an act or state *going on, repeated, or continued* in past time.
3. Conjugate the perfect of the verbs in 88.

93. Examine the following:

1. **Hastis et sagittis pugnābant**, *they fought with spears and arrows.*
2. **Equis frumentum portābimus**, *we shall bring grain by means-of horses.*

Notice that the ablatives **hastis**, **sagittis**, **equis** express the *means* or *instrument*, the things with or by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished.

94. RULE. — Ablative of Means or Instrument. — *The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

95.

VOCABULARY

légātus , i, m., <i>ambassador</i> , <i>lieutenant.</i>	dō , dare, dedi, ¹ <i>datus</i> , give.
Graecus , i, m., <i>a Greek.</i>	oppugnō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>attack</i> , <i>besiege.</i>
pauci , ae, a, <i>a few, a few.</i>	arma , ōrum, n. (plur.), <i>arms</i> , <i>weapons.</i>
superō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>sur-</i> <i>pass, conquer, overcome.</i>	hiberna , ōrum, n. (plur.), <i>win-</i> <i>ter quarters.</i>
armō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>arm</i> , <i>equip.</i>	Helvētius , i, m., <i>a Helvetian.</i>

¹ Note the irregular perfect.



English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers, in 'tortoise'-formation



English Guardsmen as Roman Soldiers discharging the Catapult

96.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dominus meus dōna filiis dabit. 2. Nautae fidi contrā Rōmānōs pugnābant. 3. Tēla idōnea in castra portābunt. 4. Cōpia magna tēlōrum est in locō. 5. Servi pigri multum frūmentum in aedificia nōn portābant. 6. Locus magnō proeliō nōn erit idōneus.

II. 1. The camp of the Romans was large. 2. Why did he give the inhabitants weapons? 3. We shall carry many spears and arrows into the town. 4. He was praising the queen's forces.

97.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Pugnāvistī; dedistīne? laudāvimus. 2. Incolae oppidī multa arma comparāvērunt. 3. Helvētiī oppidum saxīs et armīs oppugnābant. 4. Equīs in aedificium cibum portāvit. 5. Pauca arma virīs dedimus. 6. Cūr Rōmānī Graecōs superāvērunt? 7. Servi multum frūmentum in hiberna portāvērunt. 8. Rōmānī Helvētiōrum oppida sagittīs et pilīs oppugnābant. 9. Incolās insulae tēlīs armābimus. 10. In hibernīs sunt pauca tēla et multus cibus. 11. Gallōs hastīs et sagittīs superāvit. 12. Locus hibernīs idōneus est.

II. 1. You (plur.) have given; did he blame? 2. We have equipped; they were conquering; she gave. 3. The Gauls fought with spears and arrows. 4. The Romans have attacked the camp of the Greeks. 5. By-means-of rewards he summoned the Helvetians.

(READING SELECTION 444)



Pilum

LESSON 13

FIRST CONJUGATION (CONTINUED). PLUPERFECT AND
FUTURE PERFECT. REVIEW

98. Review 81.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *amō, I love*

SINGULAR

1. *amāveram, I had loved*
2. *amāverās, you had loved*
3. *amāverat, he had loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverāmus, we had loved*
2. *amāverātis, you had loved*
3. *amāverant, they had loved*

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SINGULAR

1. *amāverō, I shall have loved*
2. *amāveris, you will have loved*
3. *amāverit, he will have loved*

PLURAL

1. *amāverimus, we shall have loved*
2. *amāveritis, you will have loved*
3. *amāverint, they will have loved*

1. The pluperfect is formed by the combination of the perfect stem *amāv-* and *-eram*; the future perfect by the combination of the same stem and *-erō*. There is an exception in one form of the future perfect. Which?

99. Review carefully 43, 85, 86, 87, 92. Observe that the *present stem* is used in the formation of the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and the *perfect stem* in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

TABLE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Present Tense,	First one of the principal parts.
Imperfect Tense,	Present stem + bam .
Future Tense,	Present stem + bō .
Perfect Tense,	Third one of the principal parts.
Pluperfect Tense,	Perfect stem + eram .
Future Perfect Tense,	Perfect stem + erō .

100. Give the principal parts, and form the first person singular of all tenses of the indicative, adding the English meanings, of the following verbs that have occurred in the previous vocabularies:

laudō	vocō	parō	oppugnō	servō
culpō	convocō	dō	portō	superō

1. Give the complete conjugation of all tenses of the indicative of at least three verbs in this list.

101. VOCABULARY

mātūrō, āre, āvi, ātum, ¹ hasten (usually with an infinitive; never followed by ad and the acc.).	ferus, a, um, wild, barba- rous. impedimentum, i, n., hin- drance; (plur.), baggage.
expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus, cap- ture, take by storm.	vicus, i, m., village.
mox, adv., soon.	ad, prep. with acc., to, towards, near.

¹ The masculine form of the perfect participle is usually found only with transitive verbs. With other verbs the form in -um, or the future active participle in -ūrus, if they occur, are used.

102.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Gladiis et sagittis incolās oppidī superāvērunt. 2. Contrā Rōmānōs bellum Gallī parābunt. 3. In oppidō Helvētiōrum erit cibī inopia. 4. Lēgātus agricolās pilīs armāvit. 5. Gladium pulchrum Mārcō nautae peritō dēdērunt. 6. In oppidum puellās et puerōs convocābant.

II. 1. There was an abundance of grain in my friend's fields. 2. The arrows, a gift of the queen, pleased the messenger. 3. He will not fight with weapons. 4. They have given the woman a beautiful horse. 5. Has he armed many slaves?

103.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Mātūrāverās; laudāveris; expugnāverant. 2. Portāveritis; dēlectāverātis; dederāmus. 3. Arma comparāre mātūrāvit. 4. Parvum Helvētiōrum oppidum expugnāverant. 5. Multa impedimenta in vicum portāverimus. 6. Dōna ad rēginam portābant. 7. Rēginae cōpiae ferae erant. 8. Ad¹ oppidum frūmentī cōpia erat. 9. Multōs vicōs Gallōrum mox oppugnāverit. 10. Gladiis ad¹ impedimenta pugnāverant. 11. Magnam² pecūniam incolīs nōn dedimus. 12. Mox in agrīs lātīs Gallōrum erit frūmentum.

II. 1. He will hasten; he will have hastened. 2. They had given; we have given; you will have praised. 3. He had carried much baggage into the town. 4. They will soon have taken-by-storm many towns. 5. Why did he not hasten to provide grain? 6. Near the beautiful village were broad fields.

¹ near.² = much.

LESSON 14

SECOND CONJUGATION. CHARACTERISTICS. FORMATION AND CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

104. All verbs whose present stem ends in *ē* are classed under the Second Conjugation. The various tenses of these verbs are formed from the principal parts precisely like those of the First Conjugation. Review 86, 87, 98, 99.

PRIN. PARTS: *moneō, I advise, warn, monēre, monui, monitus*
videō, I see, vidēre, vidi, visus

PRES.	<i>moneō, I warn</i>	<i>videō, I see</i>
IMPF.	<i>monēbam, I warned</i>	<i>vidēbam, I saw</i>
FUT.	<i>monēbō, I shall warn</i>	<i>vidēbō, I shall see</i>
PERF.	<i>monui, I have warned</i>	<i>vidi, I have seen</i>
PLUP.	<i>monueram, I had warned</i>	<i>videram, I had seen</i>
FUT. PF.	<i>monuerō, I shall have warned</i>	<i>viderō, I shall have seen</i>

105. CONJUGATION OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *moneō*

SING. 1. *moneō, I advise, am advising, do advise*

2. *monēs, you advise, etc.*

3. *monet, he advises, etc.*

PLUR. 1. *monēmus, we advise, etc.*

2. *monētis, you advise, etc.*

3. *monent, they advise, etc.*

1. Observe that the *-ē-* of the present stem, unlike the *-ā-* of *amō*, is retained before the personal ending *-o* of the first person singular.
2. What is the characteristic vowel before the personal endings of *moneō*? of *amō*?

106.

CONJUGATION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF **moneō**

SINGULAR

1. **mónuī**, *I have advised, I advised, I did advise*
2. **monuísti**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **mónuit**, *he has advised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. **monúimus**, *we have advised, etc.*
2. **monuístis**, *you have advised, etc.*
3. **monuérunt**, *they have advised, etc.*

1. Note carefully the accent of the above forms, and observe that the personal endings are like those of the perfect of **amō**. Note that the perfect stem **monu-** does not end in **v**, as in **amō**, perfect stem **amāv-**.

107. The various tenses of verbs of the Second Conjugation are conjugated like those of the First Conjugation, with the exception noted in 105, 1 and 2. Form and conjugate the tenses of the indicative active of the following verbs:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *I have, hold*
videō, vidēre, vidī, visus, *I see*

108.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|--|
| * moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus , <i>advise, warn.</i> | <i>move; castra movēre, break up camp.</i> |
| * habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus , <i>have, hold.</i> | dīmicō, āre, āvi, ātum , <i>fight, contend.</i> |
| * videō, vidēre, vidī, visus , <i>see.</i> | praeda , <i>ae, f., booty, spoil.</i> |
| * terreō, terrēre, terruī, territ-
us , <i>frighten, scare.</i> | periculum , <i>i, n., danger.</i> |
| * moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus , | cum , <i>prep. with abl., with.</i> |

109.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Saxīs tēlis¹ Galli cum Rōmānīs pugnābant.
2. Magnum bellum contrā Rōmānōs parāverant. 3. Ad
portam liberōs portāvērunt. 4. Paucōs librōs amicō meō
dedi. 5. Rōmānī multa arma in hiberna portābunt.
6. Cūr oppidum expugnāre mātūrāvērunt?

II. 1. They armed the fierce inhabitants with javelins.
2. Near the camp were a few buildings. 3. We do not
always take the towns by storm. 4. Have you given my
friend a book?

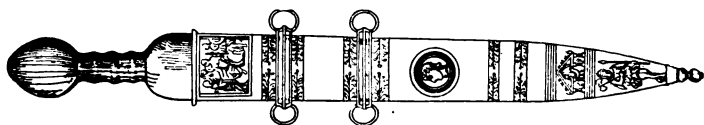
110.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Movēbat; vidit; terruerat. 2. Viderimus; mōvistī;
habēbis. 3. Mōverant; terruērunt; mōverint. 4. Rōmānī
cum Helvētiīs dimicābant. 5. Periculum magnum oppidī
incolās terruerat. 6. Praedam in vicīs multam vidērunt.
7. Galli cōpiās ad oppidum mōverant. 8. Vidistine tuum
periculum? 9. Puerī multa praemia habēbunt. 10. Rō-
mānī gladiis et pilīs agricolās terruērunt. 11. Mox cōpiam
frūmentī habuerit. 12. Praeda nautās pigrōs dēlectābit.

II. 1. She had seen; he has frightened; he will have
had. 2. We had moved; you (plur.) have seen; they have
fought. 3. The Gauls broke up camp. 4. They had con-
tended with the inhabitants. 5. The messenger frightened
the lieutenant by the story. 6. There is great danger in
wine.

¹ In apposition with *saxīs* (see 58).



Gladius

LESSON 15

THIRD DECLENSION. CONSONANT STEMS

III. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a consonant or in -i-.

II.2. CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

Stem and Base }	<i>dux, m., leader, general</i>	<i>miles, m., soldier</i>	<i>virtūs, f., virtue</i>	<i>caput, n., head</i>		
	duc-	milit-	virtūt-	capit-		
					CASE ENDINGS OF CONSONANT STEMS	
					<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
					SINGULAR	
NOM.	<i>dux</i>	<i>miles</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>caput</i>	(-s)	
GEN.	<i>ducis</i>	<i>militis</i>	<i>virtutis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	-is	-is
DAT.	<i>duci</i>	<i>militi</i>	<i>virtuti</i>	<i>capiti</i>	-i	-i
ACC.	<i>ducem</i>	<i>militem</i>	<i>virtutem</i>	<i>caput</i>	-em	
ABL.	<i>duce</i>	<i>militē</i>	<i>virtute</i>	<i>capite</i>	-e	-e
					PLURAL	
NOM.	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	-ēs	-a
GEN.	<i>ducum</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>virtutum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	-um	-um
DAT.	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	<i>ducēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>capita</i>	-ēs	-a
ABL.	<i>ducibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>virtutibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus

- I. Note that the stem and base are alike in nouns with consonant stems (but see 122, 2 and contrast 25)
Both are obtained by dropping the ending -is of the genitive singular.

2. To decline a noun, therefore, one must know the gender, the nominative, and the genitive. *Be sure to learn these facts about all the nouns given in the vocabularies.*
3. Observe that the nominative singular is not always like the stem. Various changes are made in its formation from the stem. No rule can be given.
4. Learn thoroughly the case endings, observing which are alike. See 56.
5. Decline **rēx bonus**, *the good king*.

113.

VOCABULARY

dux, **ducis**, m., *leader, general*. **rēx**, **rēgis**, m., *king*.
miles, **militis**, m., *soldier*. **fuga**, ae, f., *flight*.
eques, **equitis**, m., *horseman*; **in fugam dō**, **dare**, **dedi**, **datus**,
 (plur.) *cavalry, cavalrymen*. *put to flight*.
virtūs, **virtūtis**, f., *manliness*; **augeō**, **augēre**, **auxi**, **auctus**,
bravery, virtue. *increase, enlarge*.
caput, **capitis**, n., *head*.

114.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Ad portam nūntium vīdit. 2. Cūr cum incolīs feris dīmīcābant? 3. Perīculum fili videt. 4. Perīculum agricolās peritōs nōn terrēbit. 5. Multam praedam in castris viderant. 6. Dabitne pecūniam mox filiae?

II. 1. We have not seen much grain in winter quarters. 2. The fierce inhabitants have overcome the farmers. 3. The war had not frightened the queen. 4. They will hasten to besiege the town.

115.

EXERCISES

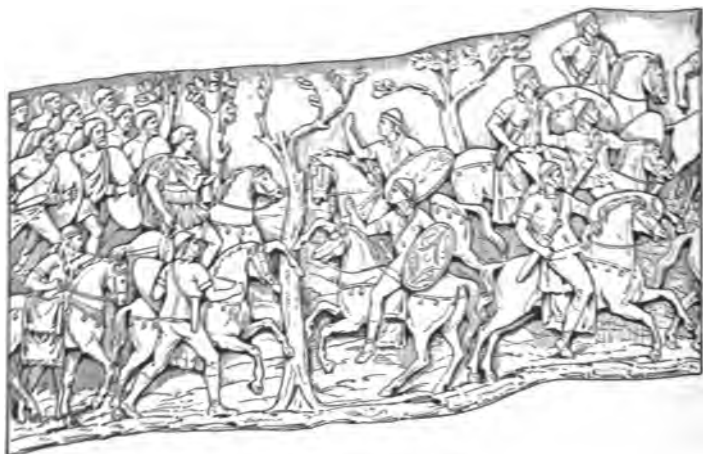
I. 1. **Capitibus**; **virtūtī**; **capita**. 2. **Eques equum laudābat**. 3. **Militēs impedimenta in castra portāverant**.

4. Equitēs Gallōrum in fugam dant. 5. Proelium militum virtūtem augēbit. 6. Capita multōrum equitum vidimus. 7. Virtūs militum ducem dēlectāvit. 8. Rēx nōn semper est militum dux. 9. Cōpiās dux nōn auxerat. 10. Gladiū equitēs in fugam dedērunt. 11. Militibus incolās ferōs dux terrēbat. 12. Multum frūmentum equitēs in oppida portābunt.

II. 1. For the soldier; the heads of the horses. 2. The leader summoned his soldiers into camp. 3. The Gauls will put the horsemen to flight. 4. The king gave the leader a beautiful sword. 5. The general increased the supply¹ of grain. 6. There were many soldiers in winter quarters.

¹cōpia.

(READING SELECTION 445)



Equitēs Rōmānī

LESSON 16

 THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). CONSONANT STEMS.
 ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

116.

CONSONANT STEMS

Paradigms

	cōnsul, m., <i>consul</i> ¹	homō, m., <i>man</i>	pater, m., <i>father</i>	corpus, n., <i>body</i>
Stem and Base }	cōnsul-	homin-	patr-	corpor-

SINGULAR

NOM.	cōnsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōnsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōnsuli	hominī	patri	corpori
ACC.	cōnsule m	homin e m	patr e m	corp u s
ABL.	cōnsule	homine	patre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōnsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus

1. Are the case endings of these nouns like those of the previous lesson?
2. Decline together **pater bonus, corpus magnum**.

¹ The title of the two presiding magistrates of the Roman commonwealth.

117. Examine the following :

1. **Dux victōriā laetus est**, *the general is glad because of the victory.*
2. **Hominēs cībī inopiā labōrābant**, *the men suffered from (on account of) lack of food.*

Observe (a) that the ablatives **victōriā**, **inopiā**, express the *cause* or *reason*; (b) the various ways of translating these ablatives, *because of*, *on account of*, *from*.

Review 93, 94.

118. **RULE. — Ablative of Cause. — Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.**¹

119.

VOCABULARY

cōsul , cōsulis , m., <i>consul.</i>	tempus , temporis , n., <i>time,</i>
homō , hominis , m., <i>man.</i>	<i>season.</i>
pater , patris , m., <i>father.</i>	vulnus , vulneris , n., <i>wound.</i>
corpus , corporis , n., <i>body.</i>	vulnerō , āre , āvī , ātus , <i>wound.</i>
flūmen , flūminis , n., <i>river.</i>	labōrō , āre , āvī , āturus , <i>work,</i>
pēs , pedis , m., <i>foot.</i>	<i>suffer.</i>
pedes , peditis , m., <i>foot-soldier;</i>	trāns , prep. with acc., <i>across,</i>
plur. , <i>infantry.</i>	<i>over.</i>

120.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Virtūs equitum Gallōs superābat.** 2. **Virtūte militēs in fugam dedimus.** 3. **Militēs peritī in castra arma portāvērunt.** 4. **Ducī fidō magnam pecūniam Rōmānī dederant.** 5. **Magna cōpia frūmenti mox in vicō erit.** 6. **Cūr ad portās oppidī tēla portāvit?**

¹ This use of the ablative is found chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing emotion or feeling (joy, sorrow, fear, etc.)

II. 1. Near the village we saw many soldiers. 2. The king increased the men's courage by the story. 3. They had had much grain in winter quarters. 4. My son's stories were good. 5. He gave the horseman a black horse.

121.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Peditem gladiō meō vulnerābam. 2. Multa vulnera sunt in corporibus militum. 3. Tempus proeliō idōneum est. 4. Hominēs pecūniae inopiā labōrābunt. 5. Ad pedēs rēgis erant miserī incolae oppidi. 6. Miles vulnere labōrāverat. 7. Peditēs cōsul trāns flūmen convocāvit. 8. Peditēs multōs incolās pilis vulnerāvērunt. 9. Militēs dux culpābat. 10. Meō vulnere miser sum. 11. Homō filiōs in hortum convocābit. 12. Pedes multōs militēs trāns flūmen vīdit.

II. 1. They put the foot-soldiers to flight across the river. 2. We are suffering from many wounds. 3. The inhabitants were wretched because of lack of food. 4. The soldier wounded the sailor with an arrow. 5. The consul will not blame my father. 6. The consul gave the foot-soldier a beautiful sword.



Coin of Caesar, struck by M. Mettius

LESSON 17

THIRD DECLENSION (CONTINUED). VOWEL STEMS, IN *-i-*

122.

STEMS IN *-i-*

Paradigms

	<i>collis</i> , m., <i>hill</i>	<i>caedēs</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i>	<i>mōns</i> , m., <i>mountain</i>	<i>animal</i> , n., <i>animal</i>
Stem	<i>colli-</i>	<i>caedi-</i>	<i>monti-</i>	<i>animāli-</i>
Base	<i>coll-</i>	<i>caed-</i>	<i>mont-</i>	<i>animāl-</i>

	SINGULAR			CASE ENDINGS OF <i>-i-</i> STEMS <i>M. and F. N.</i>	
NOM.	<i>collis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>mōns</i>	<i>animal</i>	(-s)
GEN.	<i>collis</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>montis</i>	<i>animālis</i>	-is -is
DAT.	<i>colli</i>	<i>caedi</i>	<i>monti</i>	<i>animāli</i>	-i -i
ACC.	<i>collem</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>montem</i>	<i>animal</i>	-em
ABL.	<i>colle</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>monte</i>	<i>animāli</i>	-e -i

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>collēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>montēs</i>	<i>animālia</i>	-ēs	-ia
GEN.	<i>collium</i>	<i>caedium</i>	<i>montium</i>	<i>animālium</i>	-ium	-ium
DAT.	<i>collibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>montibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	<i>collis, ēs</i>	<i>caedis, ēs</i>	<i>montis, ēs</i>	<i>animālia</i>	-is, -ēs	-ia
ABL.	<i>collibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>montibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	-ibus	-ibus

1. Compare very carefully these case endings with those of 112. In what two cases of masculine and feminine nouns is there a difference? In what four cases of neuters?
2. Observe that the base and stem differ. Contrast 112, 1.

3. The following sometimes have the ablative singular both in *-i* and in *-e*, though usually in *-i*: *nāvis*, *ship*; *ignis*, *fire*; *civis*, *citizen*; *turris*, *tower*; *finis*, *end*; *avis*, *bird*. All neuter *-i-* stems have the ablative singular in *-i*. A few nouns sometimes have the accusative singular in *-im*: *turris*, *turrim*, *tower*.
4. Decline together: *urbs pulchra*, *beautiful city*; *animal magnum*, *large animal*.

123. Since nouns with *-i-* stems are declined differently from those with consonant stems, one must know what nouns of the third declension have *-i-* stems. The following classes have *-i-* stems, and they must be thoroughly learned:

1. *Nouns in -is and -ēs, having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.*
2. *Neuters in -e, -al, -ar.*
3. *Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x following a consonant.*
4. *Nouns in -ns and -rs.*

124. Decline the following:

<i>mare</i> , <i>maris</i> , n., <i>sea</i> .	<i>nōmen</i> , <i>nōminis</i> , n., <i>name</i> .
<i>urbs</i> , <i>urbis</i> , f., <i>city</i> .	<i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> , f., <i>part</i> .
<i>miles</i> , <i>militis</i> , m., <i>soldier</i> .	<i>pōns</i> , <i>pontis</i> , m., <i>bridge</i> .
<i>hostis</i> , <i>hostia</i> , m. and f., <i>enemy</i> (usually plural).	<i>nāvis</i> , <i>nāvis</i> , f., <i>ship</i> .

125.

VOCABULARY

(Make a list of the nouns with *-i-* stems.)

<i>collis</i> , <i>collis</i> , m., <i>hill</i> .	<i>animal</i> , <i>animālis</i> , n., <i>animal</i> .
<i>caedēs</i> , <i>caedis</i> , f., <i>slaughter</i> .	<i>sedile</i> , <i>sedilis</i> , n., <i>seat</i> .
<i>mōns</i> , <i>montis</i> , m., <i>mountain</i> .	<i>per</i> , prep. with acc., <i>through</i> , <i>across</i> , <i>by-means-of</i> .
<i>laetus</i> , a, um, <i>glad</i> .	
<i>occupō</i> , <i>āre</i> , <i>āvī</i> , <i>ātus</i> , <i>take</i> - <i>possession-of</i> , <i>seize</i> , <i>occupy</i> .	<i>dē</i> , prep. with abl., <i>down</i> <i>from</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>concerning</i> .

126.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mei patris amicus vulnere labōrāvit. 2. Longa via pigrum peditem nōn dēlectābit. 3. Gallī equitum peritōrum inopiā labōrābant. 4. Multa vulnera in corporibus militum vidisti. 5. Peditēs per flūmen lātum in fugam dedērunt. 6. Tempus equitum virtūtem augēbit.

II. 1. At the king's feet there are many slaves. 2. The general is summoning the men across the river into camp. 3. The soldiers have suffered from the lack of skillful leaders. 4. They had wounded my son with a javelin.

127.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Militēs dē monte in vicum impedimenta portābant. 2. In nāvibus erant nautae multi et validi. 3. Nōne militēs magnam partem urbis expugnābunt? 4. Miser erat cōsul caede militum validōrum. 5. Dux cum peditibus collem occupāvit. 6. In marī sunt nāvēs pulchrae. 7. Virtūs hostium equitēs terrēbat. 8. In monte erant multa et fera animālia. 9. Cōsul militibus et nāvibus hostēs superāverat. 10. Dux dē collibus Gallōs in urbem convocābat.

II. 1. A large part of the city is beautiful. 2. There were many¹ lazy sailors on the ships. 3. The horsemen took-possession-of the bridge. 4. The Romans are glad on account of the slaughter of the enemy. 5. They hastened to go² from the hill across the broad fields.

¹ *Many lazy = many and lazy.* See 127, I, 2, 8.

² *ire.*

LESSON 18

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION. GENDER. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN

128. Gender. — For the general rules for gender see 28. The complete rules for gender for the third declension are herewith given, though there are many exceptions :

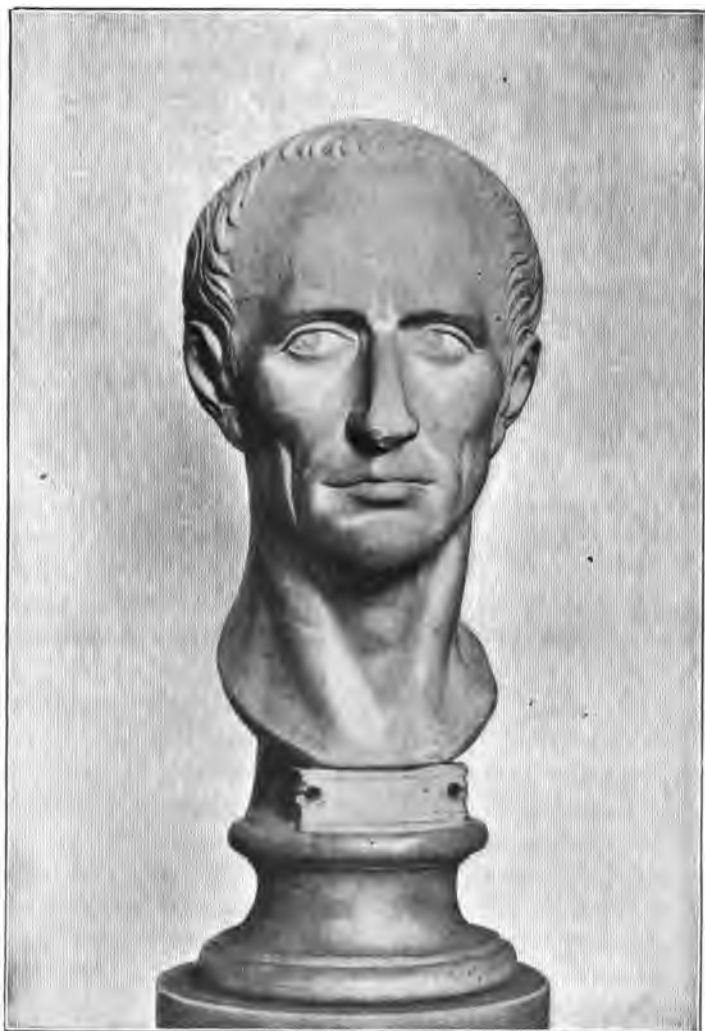
1. **Masculine.** — Masculine are nouns in **-ō** (genitive **-ōnis**), **-or** (genitive **-ōris**), **-tor** (genitive **-tōris**), **-er** (genitive **-ris**; cf. **pater, patris**), **-es** (genitive **-itis**), **-eps** (genitive **-ipis**), **-ex** (genitive **-icis**).
2. **Feminine.** — Feminine are nouns in **-tās, -tūs, -rs** (genitive **-rtis**; cf. **ars, artis**), **-is** and **-ēs** (if genitive is in **-is**), **-dō** or **-gō** (genitive **-dinis, -ginis**), and **-iō** (genitive **-iōnis**).
3. **Neuter.** — Neuter are nouns in **-al** (genitive **-ālis**), **-en**, **-ar** (genitive **-āris**), **-ur** (genitive **-oris**), **-us** (genitive **-eris** or **-oris**), **-t, -e** (genitive **-is**).

What are the rules of gender for the first and second declensions?

129. REVIEW TABLE OF NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION

Give for each noun (1) gender, (2) meaning, (3) genitive singular, (4) stem, (5) ablative singular, (6) nominative plural, (7) genitive plural. Review carefully 122, 123.

animal	dux	mare	pater	rēx
caedēs	eques	mōns	pēs	tempus
caput	flūmen	mīles	pedes	urbs
cōsul	homō	nāvis	pōns	vulnus
collis	hostis	nōmen	pars	virtūs



Julius Caesar

(From the bust in the British Museum)

camp. 3. Within four years you will see many beautiful things.¹ 4. Night frightens the poor children. 5. At day-break we carried our weapons into the camp. 6. In winter the nights are long.

(READING SELECTION 446)

LESSON 19

READING LESSON

134.

JULIUS CAESAR

Julius Caesar is the greatest character in Roman history. He was great, not merely as a general, but also as an orator and statesman. He was born on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. He belonged to an old, aristocratic family, but at an early age allied himself with the party of the people.

After filling many minor political offices, at the age of forty-one he became consul, and formed a political alliance with Pompey and Crassus, known as the "First Triumvirate." The next year the government of Gaul was assigned to him, and it is the subjugation of this country that he describes in his Commentaries. These Gallic Commentaries have been read in schools for hundreds of years, and they establish conclusively his ability as a writer.

After spending eight years in Gaul, he was ordered by the Senate through the jealousy of Pompey to disband his army. Caesar refused, and, crossing the Rubicon, set out with his army to make himself the master of Rome. In the civil war that followed, Pompey at the head of the senatorial forces was defeated. This left Caesar the master of the government at Rome. As Dictator and Imperator for life he instituted many reforms that show his insight as

¹ The neuter plural *pulchra* means *beautiful things*.

a statesman. There were many Romans, however, who disliked Caesar's power. A conspiracy was formed, and Caesar was assassinated on March 15, 44 B.C.



Silver Coins of Caesar, showing Gallic Trophies

135.

THE HELVETIAN WAR

The Helvetii were people of Celtic origin who inhabited almost all that region now known as Switzerland.

In the year 58 B.C., incited by ambitious leaders, they decided to leave their homes and seize the more fertile lands to the southwest, lying nearer the Roman province in Gaul. It is to this uprising of the Helvetii that Caesar devotes the first thirty chapters of his first book of Gallic Commentaries. After two battles the Helvetii, being completely subdued by Caesar, were forced to return to their former territories.

The reading lessons that follow are adapted from the first ten chapters of Caesar's account of this Helvetian war.

136.

HINTS FOR TRANSLATION

1. Read the passage through several times in Latin, and gather as much of its meaning as possible.

2. Try to associate unfamiliar words with some related word that you already know.

3. Do not look up the meaning of a new word in the vocabulary until you have used every other means to get its meaning. After you have looked up its meaning, take time to fix it in your memory.

4. In trying to get the thought of a passage, follow strictly the Latin order, noticing particularly the endings of the words.

5. Translate into clear and idiomatic English.

CHAPTER I

READING LESSON

DESCRIPTION OF GAUL

(The student should consult the general vocabulary for words that have not been given in the special vocabularies, *but not till he has followed the hints given above, 136, 1-4.*)

137. Belgae¹ et Aquitānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt.² Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs appellant. Belgae sunt fortissimī (*the bravest*) et cum Germānīs saepe pugnant. Helvētīi sunt Celtārum fortissimī, quod (*because*) cum Germānīs continenter pugnant. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam (*that*) partem Ōceanī quae (*which*) est ad Hispāniam pertinet.

NOTE. — Learn the principal parts of all the verbs of the first and second conjugations thus far given in this book. Decline all nouns and adjectives.

¹ For this name and other proper names, see the map, page 22.

² Third person plural, present indicative, of *incolō*. Can you not infer its meaning from *incola*?

LESSON 20

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. AGENCY WITH THE PASSIVE

138. Review 26, 3. A verb is in the Active Voice when it represents the subject as acting or being: *the farmer plows the field, the farmer lives happily*; in the Passive Voice when it represents the subject as acted upon: *the field is plowed by the farmer*.

139.

Paradigms

ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. amō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		-ō
2. amās, <i>you love, etc.</i>		-s
3. amat, <i>he loves, etc.</i>		-t
	PLURAL	
1. amāmus, <i>we love, etc.</i>		-mus
2. amātis, <i>you love, etc.</i>		-tis
3. amant, <i>they love, etc.</i>		-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

1. amor, <i>I am loved, am being loved</i>	-r
2. amāris, amāre, <i>you are loved, etc.</i>	-ris, -re
3. amātur, <i>he is loved, etc.</i>	-tur

PLURAL

1. amāmur, <i>we are loved, etc.</i>	-mur
2. amāmini, <i>you are loved, etc.</i>	-mini
3. amantur, <i>they are loved, etc.</i>	-ntur

ACTIVE VOICE
SECOND CONJUGATION

	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. moneō, <i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>		-ō
2. monēs, <i>you advise, etc.</i>		-s
3. monet, <i>he advises, etc.</i>		-t

	PLURAL	
1. monēmus, <i>we advise, etc.</i>		-mus
2. monētis, <i>you advise, etc.</i>		-tis
3. monent, <i>they advise, etc.</i>		-nt

PASSIVE VOICE

	SINGULAR	
1. moneor, <i>I am advised, am being advised</i>		-r
2. monēris, monēre, <i>you are advised, etc.</i>		-ris, -re
3. monētur, <i>he is advised, etc.</i>		-tur

	PLURAL	
1. monēmur, <i>we are advised, etc.</i>		-mur
2. monēmini, <i>you are advised, etc.</i>		-mini
3. monentur, <i>they are advised, etc.</i>		-ntur

1. Compare very carefully the English translations of the active and passive forms.
2. Review the active personal endings, and learn thoroughly the passive endings. They are the same for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.
3. Observe that these passive endings are added directly to the present stems **amā-** and **monē-**, except in the first person singular.

140. Conjugate the present active and passive, giving English translations, of the following:

laudō, *I praise*

videō, *I see*

vocō, *I call*

terreō, *I frighten*

141. Examine the following :

1. *Coniūrātī Caesarem necant, the conspirators kill Caesar.*
2. *Caesar ā coniūrātis necātur, Caesar is being killed by the conspirators.*
3. *Caesar gladiō necātur, Caesar is being killed by (with) a sword.*

1. Observe the changes in turning active into passive :

- a. The object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive ;
- b. The subject, *i.e.* the *agent* or *doer*, of the active verb is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *ā*.

2. Review 93, 94. Compare carefully the examples 2 and 3 above, and note that a preposition is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a person, while none is used when that by which the action of the verb is done is a thing, not a voluntary agent, *i.e.* not a person.

142. RULE. — **Agency with the Passive Voice.** — *The personal agent with a passive verb (i.e. the person by whom something is done) is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

143.

VOCABULARY

(Review the meanings of verbs in 100, 108.)

Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar*.
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion* (about 5000 soldiers).

necō, āre, āvi, ātus, *kill*.
ā, ab,¹ prep. with abl., *from, by*.

ob, prep. with acc., *on-account-of, for*.

celeritās, ātis, f., *speed, quickness*.

incitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *incite, encourage, arouse, rouse*.

ē, ex,¹ prep. with abl., *out of, from*.

propter, prep. with acc., *on-account-of, for*.

¹ Before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* use *ab* or *ex*; use *ā* or *ē* before a consonant.

144.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pugnābant. 2. Tēlis Rōmānī hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 3. Quattuor annīs multās nāvis in marī viderant. 4. Cōpiās in castra multā nocte cōsul convocāvit. 5. Pōns in¹ flūmine erat. 6. Caede liberōrum miserōrum miserī sumus.

II. 1. In winter the Romans did not fight. 2. Caesar's cavalry took-possession-of the hill at daybreak. 3. There are many ships on the sea. 4. The Romans did not suffer from a lack of leaders.

145.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudat, laudātur; vidētis, vidēmini. 2. Incitant, incitantur; vocāmus, vocāmur. 3. Caesar militēs convocat. 4. Militēs ā Caesare convocantur. 5. Dux legiōnem ob² virtūtem laudat. 6. Legiō ā duce propter² virtūtem laudātur. 7. Hostēs celeritāte equitum terrentur. 8. Magna cibī cōpia ā militibus in castra portātur. 9. Virtūte militum incolae oppidī incitantur. 10. Ex agrīs frūmentum ā militibus in hiberna portātur. 11. Multā nocte ā pedite gladiō vulnerātur.

II. 1. We are summoned; he is calling; he is called. 2. You (plur.) blame; you (plur.) are blamed. 3. The quickness of the Romans frightens the Gauls. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the quickness of the Romans. 5. Caesar encourages his soldiers. 6. The soldiers are encouraged by Caesar. 7. They are summoned from the mountains through the fields to the city.

¹ over.

² In expressions not covered by 118, footnote, **ob** or **propter** with the accusative is the normal way of expressing cause. **Ob** is used especially in connection with **rem** or **causam**.

LESSON 21

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND
SECOND CONJUGATIONS. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

146.

Paradigms

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābar, *I was loved, was
being loved*
2. amābāris, amābāre, *you
were loved, etc.*
3. amābātur, *he was loved,
etc.*

SINGULAR

1. monēbar, *I was advised,
was being advised*
2. monēbāris, monēbāre, *you
were advised, etc.*
3. monēbātur, *he was ad-
vised, etc.*

PLURAL

1. amābāmur, *we were loved,
etc.*
2. amābāmini, *you were
loved, etc.*
3. amābantur, *they were
loved, etc.*

PLURAL

1. monēbāmur, *we were ad-
vised, etc.*
2. monēbāmini, *you were ad-
vised, etc.*
3. monēbantur, *they were
advised, etc.*

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR

1. amābor, *I shall be loved*
2. amāberis, amābere, *you
will be loved*
3. amābitur, *he will be loved*

SINGULAR

1. monēbor, *I shall be ad-
vised*
2. monēberis, monēbere, *you
will be advised*
3. monēbitur, *he will be ad-
vised*

PLURAL

1. amābimur, *we shall be loved*
2. amābimini, *you will be loved*
3. amābuntur, *they will be loved*

PLURAL

1. monēbimur, *we shall be advised*
2. monēbimini, *you will be advised*
3. monēbuntur, *they will be advised*

Observe

1. That the personal endings are the same as those of the present passive (139).
2. That the vowel before these endings is *a* in the imperfect, and that the vowel changes in the future. What is the characteristic vowel of the future?
3. That the imperfect and future passive are formed on the present stems **amā-** and **monē-** by adding **-bar** and **-bor** respectively. Review 86, 87.

147. Examine the following:

1. Agricola cum cūrā arat, *the farmer plows with care (carefully).*
 2. Agricola magnā cum¹ cūrā arat
 3. Agricola magnā cūrā arat
- } *the farmer plows with great care (very carefully).*

Observe

1. That the Latin expressions **cum cūrā**, **magnā cum cūrā**, **magnā cūrā**, express the manner of the action of the verb (*i.e.* how the action of the verb is done).
2. That **magnā cum cūrā** and **magnā cūrā** are translated in the same way.
3. That these Latin expressions may be translated by adverbs in English.

¹ Notice that the *monosyllabic* preposition is placed between the adjective and the noun.

148. RULE. — Ablative of Manner. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition cum, but cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative.*

149.

VOCABULARY

studium , i, n., <i>zeal, eagerness.</i>	imperātor , ōris, m., <i>general,</i>
cūra , ae, f., <i>care.</i>	<i>commander in chief.</i>
obses , obsidis , m. and f., <i>host-</i>	conlocō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>place,</i>
<i>age, pledge.</i>	<i>station.</i>
multitūdō , multitudinis , f.,	compleō , complēre , complēvi ,
<i>multitude, crowd.</i>	complētus , <i>fill up, complete.</i>
imperium , i, n., <i>command,</i>	diū , adv., <i>long, for a long</i>
<i>power.</i>	<i>time.</i>

150.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitum celeritāte Rōmānī terrentur. 2. Caesar lēgātō equum pulchrum dat. 3. Lēgātō ā Caesare equus pulcher datur. 4. Hieme frūmentī inopiā hostēs labōrābant. 5. Magna urbis pars ā Gallis occupātur. 6. Militēs ā rēge in hiberna convocantur.

II. 1. We suffered from many wounds. 2. At night the consul took possession of the mountain. 3. The lazy boys are not praised by my father. 4. The Gauls are frightened by the speed and bravery of the soldiers.

151.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Laudābat, laudābātur; vidēbunt, vidēbuntur. 2. Portābāmus, portābāmur; superābis, superāberis. 3. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 4. In castrīs cum cūrā legiō conlocābitur. 5. In colle diū cum hostibus dīmīcābant. 6. Oppidum ab imperātore magnō studiō oppugnābātur. 7. Caesarī imperium dabitur. 8. Urbem equitum multitūdine complēvit. 9. Liberōs multōs obsidēs Caesarī Gallī dederant. 10. Equitēsne ā duce laudābuntur?



Temple of Saturn and the Rostra



*Basilica Julia in foreground, Temple of Castor and Pollux in center
Recent Views in the Roman Forum*



FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1.			
	amātus,		amāti,
2.	a, um		ae, a
3.			
	{		{
	erō, <i>I shall have</i>		erimus
	been loved		
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

1. In the same way, form and conjugate these same tenses of *moneō*, *videō*, *portō*, giving English meanings.
2. Note carefully that the participle is declined like *bonus*, and that its endings conform to the gender and number of the subject; for example,
 - I (a girl) have been loved, amāta sum*
 - we (girls) have been loved, amātae sumus*
 - the town had been seen, oppidum visum erat*
 - the girl has been loved, puella amāta est*
3. For the difference in meaning between the perfect and the imperfect passive see 92, 2.

153.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, ae, f., <i>friendship,</i> <i>alliance.</i>	civis, civis, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i>
pāx, pācis, f., <i>peace.</i>	civitās, ātis, f., <i>state, citizen-</i> <i>ship.</i>
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., <i>month.</i>	cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>strengthen, establish.</i>
iter, itineris, n., <i>march, road,</i> <i>journey (501).</i>	contineō, continēre, continui, <i>hold together,</i>
ex itinere, <i>on the march.</i>	contentus, <i>hold together,</i> <i>restrain, hem in, bound.</i>

154.

EXERCISES

- I 1. Vulnerātī erātis; vidēbāmus; incitātae sunt.
2. Laudātane est? laudātī erant; culpātae erunt. 3. Pāx

cum multis civitatibus est confirmata. 4. Cives ob amicitiam laudavimus. 5. Galli montibus et fluminibus continentur. 6. Multa oppida decem mensibus occupata erant. 7. Magna Helvetiorum urbs ex itinere est expugnata. 8. Multum frumentum ex agris in hiberna portatum erat. 9. Caesar milites in castris habebat. 10. Multi homines a Romanis erant necati. 11. Multos civis in Italia vidimus. 12. Urbs ab imperatore magno cum studio oppugnata est.

II. 1. She was restrained; you (plur.) had been blamed. 2. We (fem. plur.) shall have been pleased; they have been summoned. 3. Peace and friendship have been established with the Gauls. 4. The citizens had been aroused by their leaders. 5. The girl was carefully carried into the city. 6. The soldiers were praised by the general for their bravery. 7. Caesar attacked a town of the Helvetians on the march. 8. The cavalry had been wounded by the weapons of the enemy.



Cives Romani

LESSON 23

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THREE
TERMINATIONS. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

155. Adjectives of the third declension are divided into three classes according as they have in the nominative singular either one, two, or three terminations.

acer, *sharp, keen, eager*

Stem **ācri-**

Base **ācr-**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācre m	ācre m	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācris, ēs	ācris, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

1. Note that adjectives of this declension have -i- stems, and that the ablative singular ends in -ī. Review 122.

156. Examine the following :

1. **Helvētīī Gallōs virtūte superant**, *the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in valor.*

2. *Vir nōmine, nōn factis, amicus erat, the man was a friend in name, (but) not in deeds.*

Observe that the ablatives *virtūte, nōmine, factis*, tell in what respect the meaning of the verb or noun is true; the first sentence tells that the Helvetii surpass the Gauls in respect to *valor*, not in size, speed, or in any other respect.

157. RULE. — Ablative of Specification. — *The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective, applies. No preposition is used.*

158.

VOCABULARY

<i>altus, a, um, high, deep.</i>	<i>finis, finis, m., end; (plur.)</i>
<i>angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted.</i>	<i>boundary, territory.</i>
<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours.</i>	<i>finitimus, a, um, neighboring, adjoining; finitimi, ōrum, m., neighbors.</i>
<i>acer, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp, eager, fierce.</i>	<i>quod, conj., because.</i>
<i>equester, equestris, equestre, of the cavalry; cavalry (adj.).</i>	<i>-que, and, an enclitic, always attached to the second of two words connected.</i>
	<i>magnitūdō, inis, f., greatness, size.</i>

159.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Dux filium propter virtutem laudāverat.* 2. *Pāx quattuor mēnsibus ā Caesare cum multis civitātibus erat cōfirmāta.* 3. *Multā nocte cōpiae ex agris in castra convocābantur.* 4. *Militēs hieme in hiberna convocāti sunt.* 5. *Multi incolae gladiis equitum vulnerāti erant.*

II. 1. Why were the Helvetii aroused? 2. The town was captured on the march. 3. At daybreak the general gave his soldiers food. 4. The consul suffered from lack of cavalry.

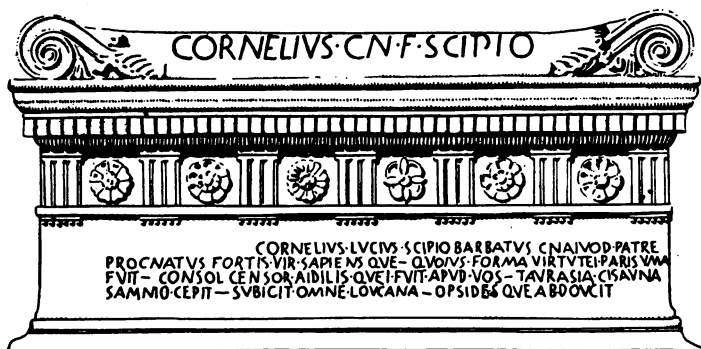
160.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Castra Caesaris in Helvētiōrum finibus erant. 2. Iter per finēs nostrōs angustum erat. 3. Rōmāni virtūte, nōn magnitudīne corporis, Gallōs superābant. 4. Equestrēs cōpiae hostium magnā cum virtūte pugnāverant. 5. Flūmina Galliae angusta et alta erant. 6. Equitēs ā Caesare laudātī sunt, quod hostēs celeritāte superāvērunt. 7. Ācrēs peritaeque¹ erant cōpiae cōsulis. 8. Peditēs Caesaris proeliō ācrēs erant. 9. Cūr Helvētii ā ducibus incitātī sunt? Quod altis montibus et flūminibus lātis continēbantur. 10. Hostēs equestri proeliō superātī erant.

II. 1. The battle with our cavalry was keen. 2. Have you seen many deep rivers? 3. We surpass our neighbors in cavalry forces. 4. There is a narrow road through our neighbors' territory. 5. The general was wounded in his foot. 6. The Helvetii seized many towns because they fought with great bravery.

¹ Notice to which word *-que* is added. Translate *-que* before the word to which it is attached.



Sarcophagus of one of the Scipios, showing Latin Inscription

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. TWO TERMINATIONS AND ONE TERMINATION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

161. Many adjectives of the third declension have only two separate forms in the nominative, the masculine and feminine being alike in all cases. Except comparatives (see 257), they are all declined like the following :

facilis, easy

Stem **facili-**

Base **facil-**

SINGULAR

Masculine and Feminine

NOM.	facilis
GEN.	facilis
DAT.	facili
ACC.	facilem
ABL.	facili

Neuter

facile
facilis
facili
facile
facili

PLURAL

NOM.	facilēs
GEN.	facilium
DAT.	facilibus
ACC.	facilis (ēs)
ABL.	facilibus

facilia
facilium
facilibus
facilia
facilibus

Other adjectives of this declension have one form for the nominative in all genders. They are declined like the following :

audāx, boldStem **audāci-**Base **audāc-**

SINGULAR

*Masculine and Feminine**Neuter*

NOM.	audāx	audāx
GEN.	audācis	audācis
DAT.	audācī	audācī
ACC.	audācem	audāx
ABL.	audācī (e)	audācī (e)

PLURAL

NOM.	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācium	audācium
DAT.	audācibus	audācibus
ACC.	audācis (ēs)	audācia
ABL.	audācibus	audācibus

Observe

1. That all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders in all cases except the nominative and accusative.
2. That adjectives of the third declension ending in **-er** have three terminations, those in **-is** two, and all others, except comparatives, one.
3. That they have **-i-** stems, and that those of two and three terminations have only **-ī** in the ablative singular.

162. Examine the following :

1. **Fillius patrī similis erat, the son was like his father.**
2. **Locus castris idōneus erat, the place was suitable for a camp.**

Observe that the datives **patri** and **castris** are related to the adjectives **similis** and **idōneus**.

163. RULE. — **Dative with Adjectives.** — *The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites.*

164.

VOCABULARY

fortis , e, <i>brave, strong.</i>	omnis , e, <i>all, every, the whole.</i>
similis , e, <i>like, similar.</i>	brevis , e, <i>brief, short.</i>
dissimilis , e, <i>dissimilar, unlike.</i>	pār , gen. paris , <i>equal (to).</i>
facilis , e, <i>easy.</i>	vetus , ¹ gen. veteris , <i>old, ancient.</i>
difficilis , e, <i>difficult.</i>	gēns , gentis , f., <i>race, nation.</i>
	populus , i, m., <i>people.</i>

165.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Helvētīi flūminibus altīs continēbantur.** 2. **Ad flūmen iter angustum erat.** 3. **Cūr finitimī nostrī terren-tur?** **Quod cum Rōmānis pācem et amicitiam cōfirmā-vimus.** 4. **Caesar equestribus proeliis Gallōs superāvit.** 5. **Peditēs nostrī altīs flūminibus terrēbantur.** 6. **Gallōs magnā cum celeritāte in fugam dedērunt.**

II. 1. **There are many beautiful ships on the sea.** 2. **Our cavalry were fierce in battle.** 3. **Why were they fright-ened?** **Because they saw many deep rivers and high mountains.** 4. **The bridges have been taken-possession-of by the enemy.**

166.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Multae et fortēs erant in Galliā gentēs.** 2. **Caesar veterēs militēs amābat, quod bellō fortēs erant.** 3. **Militēs**

¹ This is not an -i- stem; its ablative singular is formed in -e.

fortēs oppidum occupāverant. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Brevi tempore magnam hostium partem necāverant. 6. Helvētīi multitudīne hominū populō Rōmānō nōn erant parēs. 7. Puer fortis ā milite vulnerātus est. 8. Omnēs incolae ex oppidō ad collem convocantur. 9. Caesar multis imperātōribus dissimilis erat. 10. Finitimī nostrī omnēs gentēs virtūte superant.

II. 1. In every town we shall see many children. 2. The boy was like the girl in size. 3. We carried the grain into the town by an easy road. 4. All the tribes were brave and¹ faithful. 5. In winter the field near the river will not be fit for a camp. 6. The Roman people² was not conquered by the brave Helvetii.

(READING SELECTION 448)

LESSON 25

READING LESSON

CHAPTER II

THE AMBITIOUS DESIGNS OF THE HELVETII UNDER THE LEADERSHIP OF ORGETORIX

167. Orgetorix, quī³ princeps erat Helvētiōrum, coniūrātiōnem nobilitātis fēcit (*formed*) et cum finitimīs civitatibus pācem amicitiamque cōfirmāvit. Helvētīi undique nātūrā locī continentur, ūnā ex parte⁴ flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit,⁵ alterā ex parte monte Iūrā, tertiā ex parte flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit. Quā dē causā⁶ finēs Helvētīi angustōs habēbant prō⁷ multitudīne hominū, et emigrāre⁸ cupiēbant.⁹

¹ Use -que. ² *populus Rōmānus*. ³ The relative pronoun *who, which, that*. ⁴ *ūnā ex parte, on one side*. ⁵ Third person singular of *dividō*. ⁶ *Quā dē causā, for this reason*. ⁷ *in proportion to*. ⁸ *to emigrate*. ⁹ Third person plural imperfect of *cupiō*.

LESSON 26

 PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF **sum**.
 REVIEW OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

168. Review 81.

 PRIN. PARTS : **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**

PERFECT	PLUPERFECT SINGULAR	FUTURE PERFECT
1. fui , <i>I have been,</i> <i>I was</i>	fueram , <i>I had been</i>	fuerō , <i>I shall have</i> <i>been</i>
2. fuisti	fuerās	fueris
3. fuit	fuerat	fuerit
	PLURAL	
1. fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus
2. fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
3. fuērunt	fuerant	fuerint

1. Observe that the perfect stem is **fu-**, and that the pluperfect and future perfect are formed regularly from this stem by adding **-eram** and **-erō**.
2. Are the personal endings regular ?

169. The following verbs of the first and second conjugations have been introduced in the preceding lessons. Review carefully their meanings and principal parts. Why must one know the principal parts of a verb ?

pugnō	conlocō	videō	laudō	superō	mātūrō
expugnō	cōfirmō	contineō	culpō	armō	incitō
oppugnō	comparō	compleō	servō	occupō	labōrō
vocō	augeō	moveō	dēlectō	vulnerō	necō
convocō	habeō	moneō	dō	dīmicō	terreō
			portō		

1. What is the force of **con** (**com**) in a compound verb ?

170. Review carefully 99, 104, 105, 106. With the outline given below as a suggestion, complete the synopsis of **incitō**. In a similar way, write out a synopsis of **habeō** in the second person and **augeō** in the third person.

SYNOPSIS OF THE INDICATIVE, THIRD PERSON

PRIN. PARTS: **incitō, āre, āvi, ātus, arouse, urge on**

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	
Present Stem incitā-	PRES. {	<i>Sing.</i> incitat	incitātur
		<i>Plur.</i> incitant	incitantur
	IMP. {	<i>Sing.</i> incitābat	incitābātur
		<i>Plur.</i> incitābant	incitābantur
Perfect Stem incitāv-	FUT. {	<i>Sing.</i>	
		<i>Plur.</i>	
	PERF. {	<i>Sing.</i>	
		<i>Plur.</i>	
	PLUP. {	<i>Sing.</i>	
		<i>Plur.</i>	
	FUT. {	<i>Sing.</i>	
		<i>Plur.</i>	
			Participial Stem incitāt-

171.

VOCABULARY

vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus, lay reliquus, a, um, *the-rest-of, waste, ravage.* remaining.

libertās, ātis, f., liberty, free- potēns, potentis, *able, power-* dom. ful.

prō, prep. with abl., before, in behalf of, for.

172.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Fuerātis; fuerimus; fuistis. 2. Gallōrum finēs ab equitibus vāstātī erant. 3. Reliquī hostēs prō libertāte diū pugnāverant. 4. Belgae nāvibus erant potentēs.

5. Paucis annis bellum finitimis Helvetii superaverant. 6. Pro feminis liberisque magnam cum studio pugnabant. 7. Reliquae Galliae gentes a nostris finitimis incitatae sunt. 8. Caesar cum quattuor legionibus fines Helvetiorum vastare maturabit. 9. Legiones populi Romani magnitudine corporis Gallorum terrebantur. 10. Servus domino virtute erat similis. 11. Altis montibus et latis fluminibus oppidum continetur.

II. 1. They saw a few horsemen near the bridge. 2. Because of the war, the fields of the Gauls have been laid waste. 3. The legions of the Roman people were brave and skillful. 4. The foot-soldiers were equal to the cavalry in speed. 5. The citizens will fight for the general. 6. They put the rest of the enemy to flight. 7. There were many powerful tribes in Gaul.

LESSON 27

THIRD CONJUGATION. PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

THIRD CONJUGATION

173.

ducō, I lead

PRIN. PARTS: **ducō, ducere, duxi, ductus**

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of **ducō** (518).

1. Observe that the personal endings are the same as those used in the first and second conjugations (43, 139).
2. Compare the present of **ducō** with the present of **monēō** and **amō** in respect to the vowel that precedes the personal ending.

3. Are the imperfect tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations formed and conjugated in the same way?
4. Compare the future of **dūcō** with the future of **moneō**, and notice the difference in formation.
5. Observe that the characteristic vowel of this conjugation is *short -e-*, that of the second conjugation *long -ē-*.
6. Like **dūcō** conjugate the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active and passive, of **mittō**, *send*, and **vincō**, *conquer*.

174.

VOCABULARY

* dūcō , ere, dūxi , ductus, <i>lead</i> .	gerō , gerere, gessi , gestus,
* mittō , ere, miſi , missus, <i>send</i> .	<i>carry on, wage</i> .
* vincō , ere, vici , victus, <i>conquer</i> .	incolō , ere, incolui , —, <i>inhabit</i> .
relinquō , ere, reliqui , relictus, <i>leave behind, leave</i> .	neque . . . neque , <i>neither . . . nor</i> .
contendō , ere, contendi , contentum , <i>struggle, strive, hasten, hurry, march</i> .	saepe , adv., <i>often, frequently</i> .

175.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Dux castra movēbit, quod inopia frūmenti in agris est. 2. Equitēs nostrī fābulis Gallōrum sunt incitātī. 3. Belgae virtūte Helvētiīs similēs erant. 4. Multae Gallōrum gentēs multitudine hominum erant potentēs. 5. Paucī vicī ab hostibus vāstātī erant. 6. Omnēs prō libertate magnō studiō pugnābimus.

II. 1. The rest of the Gauls were powerful in arms. 2. Is a son always like his father? 3. In a short time the village will be like a camp. 4. The general praised the old soldiers for their bravery.

176.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Dūcunt; dūcent; dūcēbat. 2. Mittimus; mittēbantur; mittēbar. 3. Vincēmur; vincēs; dūcēbātis. 4. Belgae bellum longum cum populō Rōmānō gerēbant. 5. Helvētīi saepe cum finitimīs contendēbant. 6. Hostium cōpiae trāns flūmen relinquuntur. 7. In castrīs erant neque tēla neque cibus. 8. Helvētīi magnō proeliō ā Caesare vincuntur. 9. Imperātor per finēs Gallōrum contrā Belgās multās legiōnēs mittit. 10. Caesar cum quattuor legiōnibus in Galliam contendēbat. 11. Nāvēs contrā īnsulae incolās mittentur. 12. Gallī equestribus cōpiīs Rōmānōs superābant.

II. 1. We shall conquer; they are sending; you (plur.) are being led. 2. We are left behind; they will be sent; you (sing.) will be led. 3. He will neither send nor carry food into the city. 4. The Helvetii inhabit the mountains of Gaul. 5. Many children were left in camp. 6. The Roman people was waging war with the Helvetii. 7. Four legions will be sent by the consul into Gaul.

(READING SELECTION 449)

LESSON 28

VERBS IN -iō. THIRD CONJUGATION COMPLETED

177. Many verbs of the third conjugation end in iō in the first person singular of the present indicative active.

*capīō, take*PRIN. PARTS: *capīō, capere, cēpi, captus*

Learn the present, imperfect, and future, active and passive, of *capīō* (520).

1. Observe that the conjugation of *capīō* differs from that of *dūcō* in the present tense only in two forms. What is the difference?

2. In what respect do the imperfect and future of *capiō* differ from the imperfect and future of *dūcō*?
3. Like *capiō* conjugate these tenses of *fugiō*, *flee*, and *iaciō*, *hurl*.

178. Review 92, 98, 106, 152. *The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of all Latin verbs are formed and conjugated in the same way.*

1. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, active and passive, of *dūcō* and *capiō* (518, 520).
2. Write a synopsis (170) of *iaciō*, *hurl*, in the third person of the indicative.

179.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|---|
| * <i>iaciō</i> , <i>iacere</i> , <i>iēcī</i> , <i>iactus</i> ,
<i>throw, hurl.</i> | <i>interficiō</i> , <i>interficere</i> , <i>interfēcī</i> ,
<i>interfectus, kill.</i> |
| * <i>capiō</i> , <i>capere</i> , <i>cēpī</i> , <i>captus</i> ,
<i>take, seize, capture, form.</i> | <i>trādūcō</i> (<i>trāns</i> + <i>dūcō</i>), <i>ere</i> ,
<i>trādūxī</i> , <i>trāductus</i> , <i>lead</i>
<i>over, transport.</i> |
| <i>fugiō</i> , <i>fugere</i> , <i>fūgī</i> , —, <i>flee</i> ,
<i>run away.</i> | <i>cōnsilium</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>advice, pru-</i>
<i>dence, plan.</i> |
| * <i>faciō</i> , <i>facere</i> , <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factus</i> , <i>do</i> ,
<i>make; iter facere, march;</i> | <i>moenia</i> , <i>moenium</i> , <i>n.</i> (<i>plur.</i>),
<i>walls, fortifications.</i> |
| <i>proelium facere, fight a</i>
<i>battle.</i> | |

180.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Equitēs peditēs nōn relinquent.* 2. *Neque pedibus neque equitibus sed nāvibus contendunt.* 3. *Estne iter ad oppidum facile?* 4. *Rōmānī in hostium finēs multās legiōnēs mittēbant.* 5. *Decem mēnsibus multae gentēs ā cōnsule vincentur.*

II. 1. The Helvetii often carried on war with their

neighbors. 2. At daybreak the soldiers had been led into the city. 3. The Gauls were conquered by Caesar. 4. Did you send the messenger to the general?

181.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Capiuntur; interficiēris; fugiēmus. 2. Trādūcīmur; capimur; fugiēbātis. 3. Caesar in Helvētiōrum finēs iter¹ faciet. 4. Rōmānī ab hostibus cōpiam frūmentī capiēbant. 5. Equitēs magnā cum celeritāte in montēs fugiēbant. 6. Multā nocte paucī peditēs interfectī erant. 7. Hostēs tēla in moenia nostra iēcērunt. 8. Imperātor propter cōsiliū proelī lēgātum laudāvit. 9. Gallī lēgātōs ad Caesārem dē pāce misērunt. 10. Cōsul ad flūmen lātum proelium fēcīt. 11. Multi equitēs ā cōpiis nostris interficiēntur.

II. 1. We shall flee; they were killed; it had been taken. 2. You (plur.) were throwing; she has been seized. 3. All the inhabitants fled from the city into the forests. 4. The general's plan was a good one.² 5. The Helvetii will march³ out of their⁴ territory. 6. In the winter Caesar used⁵ to form his plans.

¹ iter faciō, march. ² was a good one = was good. ³ march = make a march. ⁴ Omit. ⁵ used to form: use the imperfect of capiō.



*Graffito, or Drawing, from the
Palatine Walls, Rome*

(Possibly written by a slave who had been made to do a turn at the mill as a punishment. The translation is: "Toil away, little donkey, as I have toiled, and it will do you good.")

LABORASSE ILLI QUOMODO EGOLABORAVI
FIPRODERITTI&I

LESSON 29

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE. THE
INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

182.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
FIRST CONJ.	<i>amāre, to love</i>	<i>amārī, to be loved</i>
SECOND CONJ.	<i>monēre, to advise</i>	<i>monērī, to be advised</i>
THIRD CONJ.	<i>dūcere, to lead</i>	<i>dūcī, to be led</i>
	<i>capere, to take</i>	<i>capī, to be taken</i>
FOURTH CONJ.	<i>audire, to hear</i>	<i>audirī, to be heard</i>

1. The present infinitive active of all verbs has appeared as the second principal part of each verb given (86).
2. Observe that the present passive is formed from the present active by changing final *-e* to *-i*, except in the third conjugation, which changes final *-ere* to *-i*.

183. Examine the following :

1. *Mātūrat militēs convocāre, he hastens to summon the soldiers.*
 2. *Laudārī est grātum, to be praised is pleasant.*
 3. *Incolās armārī iubet, he orders the inhabitants to be armed.*
 4. *Omnēs primī esse cupimus, we all wish to be first.*
 5. *Dēbet interfici, he ought to be killed.*
 6. *Fortis esse dīcitur, he is said to be brave.*
 7. *Filiōs bonōs esse cupimus, we wish our sons to be good.*
- a. These examples show that the infinitive in Latin is often used as it is in English.
- b. In 2, the infinitive is subject of *est*. In 1, 4, 5, 6, the infinitive completes the meaning of the main verb, and is called the *complementary infinitive*.

- c. In 3, observe that **incolās**, the subject of the infinitive, is accusative. So **filiōs** in 7. In 4, note that the predicate adjective **primī** agrees with the subject of the main verb, **cupimus**, and is therefore nominative. In 7, the predicate adjective agrees with the subject of the infinitive and is therefore accusative.

184. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. **Subject of Infinitive.** — *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

2. **Complementary Infinitive.** — *Verbs signifying to be willing, determine, be able, dare, begin, cease, be accustomed, etc., are used with an infinitive (complementary infinitive) without subject accusative, to indicate another action of the subject of the verb of willing, determining, etc.*

3. **Predicate Adjective with Infinitive.** — *A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb.*

185.

VOCABULARY

*dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus,	cōstituō, cōstituere, cōn-
say, speak, tell.	stitui, cōstitutus, place,
iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus,	station, determine, appoint.
order, bid.	parātus, a, um (parō), pre-
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus,	pared, ready. [name.
owe, ought.	appellō, āre, āvi, ātus, call,
cupiō, cupere. cupivi (ii), cu-	auxilium, i, n., aid, help.
pitus, wish, desire.	numerus, i, m., number.

186.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Vir peritus esse dēbet. 2. Pater filium fortem esse cupit. 3. Helvētiū lēgātōs dē pāce ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt. 4. Difficile est gentēs potentēs superāre.

5. Helvētīi, inopiā cibi permōti (*influenced*), pācem facere cupiēbant. 6. Magnum nāvium numerum parāre Galli cōstituērunt. 7. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit. 8. Tuus amicus appellārī dīcitur. 9. Imperātor oppidum ex itinere oppugnāre cōstituerat. 10. Caesar cōstituit cum Helvētiis, incolis Galliae, bellum gerere. 11. Cōpiae hostium magnae esse dīcēbantur. 12. Cōsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit.

II. 1. It was easy to capture the town. 2. The enemy did not wish to leave their baggage in camp. 3. The girl ought to be skillful. 4. Do you wish to give your father a book? 5. Caesar ordered the legion to storm the town. 6. The fortifications are said to be high. 7. We ought to be brave and good. 8. The soldiers desire to be praised.

LESSON 30

READING LESSON

CHAPTER III

PREPARATIONS OF ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETII

187. Helvētīi auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti¹ iūmentōrum et carrōrum magnum numerum cōpiamque frūmenti comparāre cōstituērunt. In² tertium annum profectiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam lēge cōfirmāvērunt, et ad finitīmās civitatēs Orgetorigem lēgātum mīsērunt. Casticus Sēquanus, cuius (*whose*) pater ā populō Rōmānō amicus appellātus erat, et Dumnorīx Haeduus, prīncipēs in suis (*their*) civitatibus, auxilium dedērunt. Dumnorīgī Orgetorīx filiā in mātīmōnium dedit. Itaque hī (*these*) trēs prīncipēs potentium civitātum inter sē³ iūsiūrandum dedērunt, et Galliae imperium obtinēre cupiēbant.

¹ See 186 I, 5. ² *for*. ³ *inter sē, one another* (literally, *among themselves*).

LESSON 31

 THE DEMONSTRATIVE *is*. *idem*

 188. *Is, ea, id*

 As adjective, *this, that* ; plur., *these, those*.

 As pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it* ; plur., *these, those, they*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, ii</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
GEN.	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
ACC.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
ABL.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

1. In what cases do the endings differ from those of *bonus* (62)? The stem is *-e-* or *-i-*.

 189. *idem (is + dem), the same*

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
GEN.	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
DAT.	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>
ACC.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
ABL.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
	PLURAL		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	<i>eīdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
GEN.	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
DAT.	<i>eīsdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (isdem)</i>
ACC.	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
ABL.	<i>eīsdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (isdem)</i>	<i>eīsdem (isdem)</i>

1. Observe that, in **idem**, **dem** is uninflected, but **is** is declined regularly except for a few consonant changes before **dem**.

190. Examine the following :

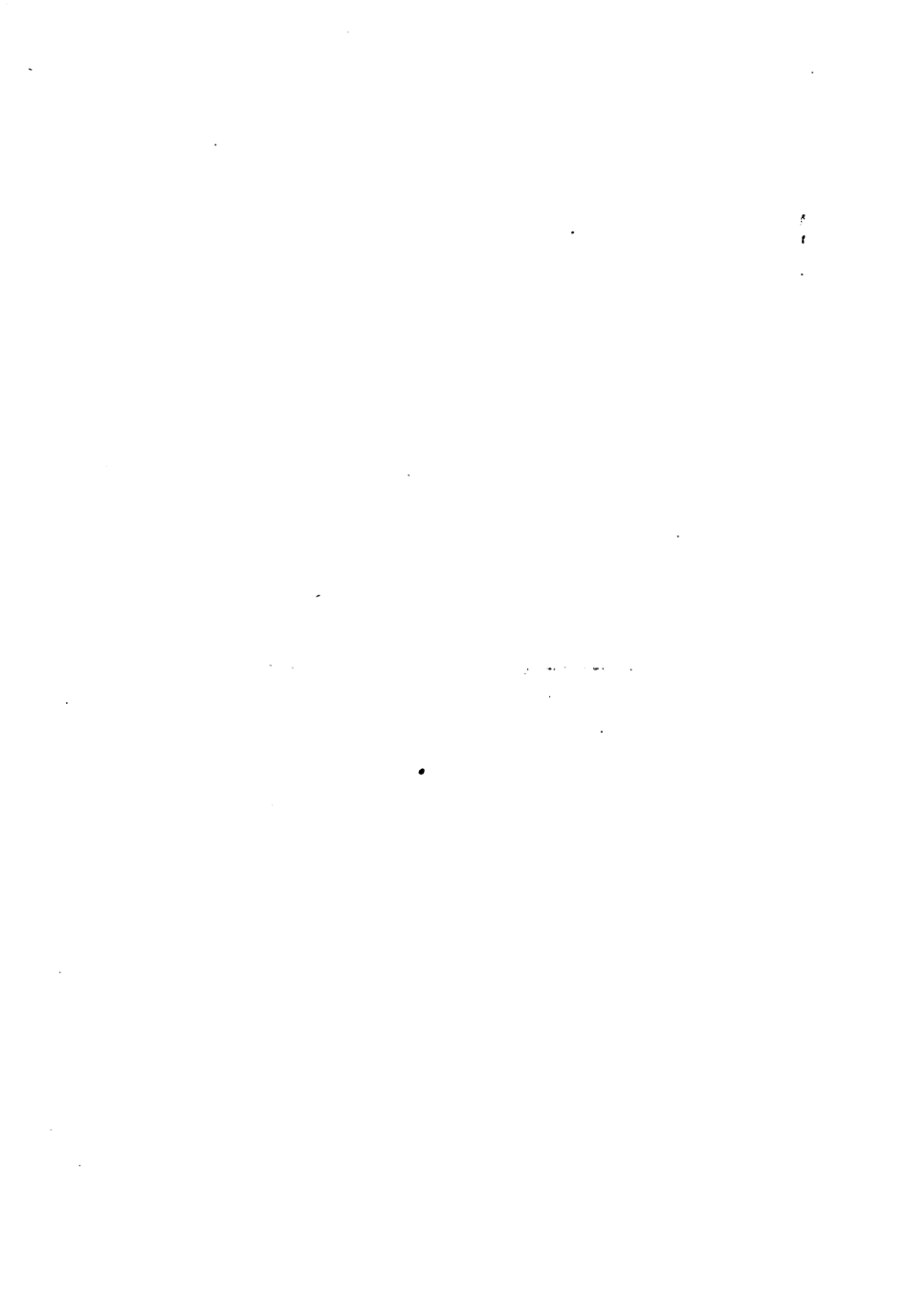
1. **Is miles laudātur**, *that soldier is praised.*
2. **Eum laudant**, *they praise that (man), i.e. him.*
3. **Amicum eius laudāmus**, *we praise his friend (i.e. the friend of him).*
4. **Amicum eorum laudāmus**, *we praise their friend (i.e. the friend of them).*
- a. In 1, **is** is used in agreement with a noun, and is a demonstrative *adjective*. It tells in an unemphatic manner *what* man is praised. **Is** commonly refers to some one or something just mentioned, and thus often equals *the aforesaid*.
- b. In 2, 3, and 4, **is** is used without a noun, and is a demonstrative *pronoun*.
- c. **Eius** means *his, hers, its*; **eorum** means *their*, referring to masculine and neuter nouns; **eārum** means *their*, referring to feminine nouns. See table below for the various meanings of **is**.
- d. Decline together: **ea fēmina, id nōmen, is miles**.
- e. When the pronoun of the third person is expressed, it is regularly **is**. See also 196, c.

191. TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

is, ea, id

SINGULAR

- NOM.** this, that; he, she, it.
GEN. of this, of that; of him, his; of her, her; of it, its.
DAT. to *or* for this *or* that; to *or* for him, her, it.
ACC. this, that; him, her, it.
ABL. from, with, by this *or* that; from, with, by him, her, it.





Rômâni cum Germânis pugnant

PLURAL

NOM. these, those; they.

GEN. of these, of those; of them, their.

DAT. to *or* for these *or* those; to *or* for them.

ACC. these, those; them.

ABL. from, with, by these *or* those; from, with, by them.

192.

VOCABULARY

Labiēnus, i, m., *Labiennus* (one of Caesar's lieutenants).

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (one of the subdivisions of the legion).

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi,

dēfēnsus, defend, protect.

et . . . et, both . . . and.

fortūna, ae, f., *fortune, good fortune.*

mūrus, i, m., *wall.*

permovēō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus, *influence, arouse.*

***pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus,** *place, pitch (a camp).*

princeps, principis, m., *leader, chief.*

pugna, ae, f., *battle.*

post, prep. with acc., *after, behind.*

193.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. *Auxilium parāre dēbēmus.* 2. *Militēs fortēs esse cupiunt.* 3. *Caesarī obsidēs dare cōstituērunt.* 4. *Militēs cum virtūte pugnāre iubēbit.* 5. *Numerus nāvium magnus esse dicitur.* 6. *Rōmānī eōs Gallōs appellāre cupiēbant.*

II. 1. Caesar orders the states to send hostages. 2. The commander did not wish to fight. 3. A number of soldiers are said to be in the city. 4. The Romans ought to conquer the Gauls.

194.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Eius; eārum; eī agricolae.* 2. *Eiusdem virī; eadem cohortēs; in eādē urbe.* 3. *Caesar, princeps Rōmānus, eam urbem expugnāverat.* 4. *Eius militēs post*

eam pugnam eum ob fortunam laudāverunt. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar incolis libertātem dedit, quod mūrōs magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 6. Fortūna belli nōn semper eadem est. 7. Labiēnus eādem cohortēs in Helvētiōs dūxit et mox eōs vicit. 8. In eōrum vicō Labiēnus castra posuit, et paucis mēnsibus multa proelia fēcit. 9. Helvētīi mūrōs eius oppidi magnā cum virtūte semper dēfendent. 10. Eōsdem militēs ad oppida eius gentis mittit.

II. 1. His; their (fem.); to them. 2. In the same winter; of the same chiefs; by the same man. 3. He orders them to pitch the camp in the same place. 4. He was influenced by their advice. 5. They had given both money and food. 6. These soldiers will defend the walls.

LESSON 32

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

195.

quī, who, which, that, what

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

TABLE OF MEANINGS FOR REFERENCE

NOM.	who, which, that, what.
GEN.	of whom, whose, of which, of what.
DAT.	to <i>or</i> for whom, which, <i>or</i> what.
ACC.	whom, which, that, what.
ABL.	from, with, by whom, which, <i>or</i> what.

196. Examine the following:

1. *Fēminae quās vidēmus pulchrae sunt, the women whom we see are beautiful.*
2. *Virōs quī in castris sunt laudat, he praises the men that are in the camp.*
3. *Vir cuius equum habēbat agricola fuit, the man whose horse he had was a farmer.*
4. *Puella cui librum dedit fida est, the girl to whom he gave the book is faithful.*
5. *Pilum quō vulnerātus sum longum fuit, the javelin by which I was wounded was a long one.*
6. *Is qui est fortis laudatur, he (one, a man) who is brave is praised.*

- a. The relative pronoun refers to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *antecedent*; thus the antecedent of *quās* in 1 is *fēminae*. Point out the antecedents in the other sentences.
- b. Observe that the relative has the same *gender* and *number* as its antecedent, but that *its case is not necessarily the same*. The case of the relative is determined by its relation to the words of its own clause: for example, in 1, *quās* is accusative because it is the direct object of *vidēmus*; in 5, *quō* is ablative to express the instrument of the verb *vulnerātus sum*. Explain the cases of the other relatives.
- c. In 6, *is* does not refer to any particular person, but means *a man, one*. *Is* is thus commonly used as the antecedent of the relative. This is, in fact, the commonest use of *is*.

197. RULE.— **Agreement of Relative Pronoun.** — *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent.*

198.

VOCABULARY

causa, ae, f., *cause, case.*

causam dicō, ere, dixi, dictus,

plead (one's) case.

vinculum, i, n., *chain.*

ex vinculis, in *chains.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment.*

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, *an-*
nounce, report.

coepl, coepisse, coepturus sum
(only in the perfect, plu-
perfect, and future perfect
tense), *began.*

Orgetorix, igis, m., *Orgetorix.*

199.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōrum militēs in eōdem locō pugnābant. 2. Eīdem
prīncipī praemia dat. 3. Eae cohortēs moenia cum virtūte
dēfendent. 4. Et Helvētīi et Rōmānī fortēs erant. 5. Eius
castra in eādē urbe pōnuntur. 6. Post proelium militēs
in hiberna contendunt.

II. 1. Those brave soldiers were praised for their good
fortune. 2. Both the cohorts and their leaders had fought
bravely in that battle. 3. Caesar at the same time defends
the walls of that city. 4. After that war they pitched the
camp near the mountains.

200.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Rōmānī causam coniūrātiōnis nūntiant quam
Helvētīi fēcērunt. 2. Militēs quōs in Galliā habent in
eam gentem mittuntur. 3. Orgetorix, quī eam coniūrā-
tīōnem fēcērat, ex vinculis causam dicere coepit. 4. Eius
coniūrātiō ab eis quī missi erant Caesarī nūntiāta est.
5. Ob eam coniūrātiōnem Helvētīi, quōrum lēgātī ā Caesare
convocāti erant, permōti sunt. 6. Causam ex vinculis
dicere poena est eius quī coniūrātiōnem fēcīt. 7. Causa
belli caedēs Rōmānōrum fuit quī in eā urbe fuērunt.
8. Cum eis quōrum prīncipēs id fēcērant pugnāre coepē-

runt. 9. Is cui bellum grātum est asper est. 10. Gladius quō pugnābat longus est.

II. 1. The boy that is faithful is praised. 2. The soldier whom the general sees is brave. 3. Those are the weapons with which he fought. 4. He who fights bravely is not often conquered. 5. Orgetorix, whose punishment has been announced, will be killed. 6. The man to whom I gave this is my friend. 7. They began to fight with the Romans.

LESSON 33

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *hic* AND *ille*. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

201. *hic, haec, hoc, this, plur. these*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
GEN.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
ACC.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
ABL.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

202. *ille, illa, illud, that, plur. those*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
GEN.	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
ACC.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
ABL.	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

1. Compare the endings of *ille* with those of *is* (188).

203. Examine the following:

1. **Hic** puer omnia, illa puella pauca vidit, *this boy saw everything, that girl few things.*
 2. **Caesar et Pompēius** erant Rōmānōrum principēs; ille in Galliā pugnābat, hic in Italiā remanēbat, *Caesar and Pompey were the leading men of the Romans; the former fought in Gaul, the latter remained in Italy.*
 3. **Nostri** in castris erant, *our men were in camp.*
- a. **Hic** and **ille** are more emphatic than **is** (190, a). When a contrast is expressed, as in 2, **hic** means *the latter*, **ille** means *the former*. **Ille** also sometimes means *that well-known, that famous*; with this meaning, it is commonly placed after its noun. See also 208, 1.
 - b. Decline together **haec urbs**, **hoc flūmen**.
 - c. In 1 and 3, observe that the adjectives **omnia**, **pauca**, **nostri**, are used alone, as if they were nouns. The noun to be supplied in English is generally indicated by the gender of the adjective. The neuter implies the noun *thing* in English; i.e. **multa** (neuter plural) means *many things*.

204.

VOCABULARY

frāter , frātris , m., <i>brother.</i>	cōgō , ere , cōēgi , cōactus , <i>col-</i>
mors , mortis , f., <i>death.</i>	<i>lect, compel, force.</i>
cliēns , clientis , m., <i>vassal,</i>	ēripiō , ere , ēripiū , ēreptus ,
<i>dependent.</i>	<i>snatch away, save.</i>
nātiō , ōnis , f., <i>nation.</i>	sub , prep. with acc., <i>to the</i>
ōrātiō , ōnis , f., <i>speech.</i>	<i>foot of</i> ; with abl., <i>under,</i>
* cōgnōscō , ere , cōgnōvi , cōgni-	<i>at the foot of.</i>
tus , <i>learn of, recognize.</i>	

205.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi quī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 2. Lēgātī quibus Caesar ea dixit permōtī sunt. 3. Orgetorix, cuius cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt, interficiētur. 4. Coniūrātiō quam fēcērat eius poenae causa est. 5. Magnā cum virtūte pugnābant, quod hostēs ad castra erant. 6. Proelium quod cum Gallīs fēcērant longum erat.

II. 1. The chief that you see is Orgetorix. 2. The mountain on which they fought is in Gaul. 3. Those to whom he gives money are his friends. 4. The man whose conspiracy was reported began to speak.

206.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Huius ōrātiōnis; illōrum clientium; huic amīcō. 2. Hic cliēns ex vinculis causam dicet. 3. Nostri hāc ōrātiōne permōtī (*aroused*) hostēs in fugam dedērunt. 4. Hae civitatēs quās diximus¹ lēgātōs ad illū ducem mittent. 5. Et peditēs et equitēs, illi ex urbe, hī ex agrīs, ad Caesarem contendunt. 6. Orgetorix, princeps ille Helvētiōrum, necātus est. 7. Mors huius prīncipis Helvētiīs nōn grāta est. 8. Illi quōs convocāvistī clientēs mei frātris sunt. 9. Omnēs cōgnōscere amīcōs cupiunt. 10. Sub illō colle Caesar hostēs castra pōnere coēgit.

II. 1. For this man; of those towns; that famous commander. 2. At the foot of this mountain the enemy will force Caesar to fight. 3. All these tribes Caesar conquered within that winter. 4. It is difficult to compel him to do these things. 5. Our men collected the baggage in that place.² 6. The Romans fought with the Helvetians; the latter were brave, but they were conquered by the former.

¹ mention.² Accusative.

LESSON 34

Ipsē. Istē. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

207.

ipse, self

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
DAT.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
ABL.	ipso	ipsa	ipso	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

1. Observe that **ipse** is declined like **bonus**, except in the genitive and dative singular, where we have the endings **-ius** and **-i**. What other words have had these genitive and dative endings?
2. **Ipsē** is a pronoun that gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its translations vary: for example, **vir ipse**, *the man himself*; **fēmina ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **proelium ipsum**, *the battle itself*; **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves*; etc. It sometimes is best translated in English by *even* or *very*. It agrees like an adjective with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

208. Like **ille** (202) decline **iste**, *that, that of yours*.

1. **Hic** is the demonstrative of the first person and signifies *this (of mine), this (near me), my, mine*. **Iste** points out an object near a second person directly addressed; it means *that near you, that in which you are interested*, but may be translated fully by *that of yours, your*. It is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the

second person. *Ille* is called the demonstrative of the third person, and its complete meaning is *that* (*of his* or *hers*), *that . . . yonder, yonder*.

2. Mention the pronouns that have *-ius* in the genitive singular and *-i* in the dative singular.

209. The following adjectives end in *-ius* in the genitive and *-i* in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of *alter* ends in *-ius*). In all other cases they are declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

alius, alia, aliud (505), *other, another*.

alter, altera, alterum, *one (of two), the other (of two)*.

uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), both*.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two)*.

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any*.

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *no, none*.

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone, sole, only*.

tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all*.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*.

210. Examine the following:

1. *Nostris finibus eōs prohibēbat*, *he kept them from our territories*.
 2. *Cibō caruerat*, *he had lacked food*.
 3. *Ex eā parte vici discessit*, *he withdrew from that part of the village*.
- a. Observe that the ablatives *finibus*, *cibō*, and *parte* denote the thing from which there is privation or removal, or the thing which is lacking.

211. RULE. — **Ablative of Separation.** — *Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation*

takes place. **Ab** or **ex** with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with **careō** a preposition is never used.

212.

VOCABULARY

careō , ēre, carui, caritūrus,	ripa , ae, f., bank (of river).
lack, be in need of, be without.	alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other (of two).
discēdō , ere, discessi, disces-	alius . . . alius, one . . . an-
sum, depart, withdraw.	other.
liberō , āre, āvi, ātus, free	alii . . . alii, some . . . others.
(from), liberate.	alii aliam in partem , some in
prohibeō , ēre, prohibui, pro-	one direction, some in an-
hibitus, keep away from.	other.
prōvincia , ae, f., province.	

213.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Clientēs hōs militēs pugnāre cōgunt. 2. Helvētīi in illis castris ē periculō sunt ēreptī. 3. Frātrēs Orgetorigis principis illius eum cōgnōscent. 4. Sub illō monte hae nātiōnēs castra posuērunt. 5. Huic militi arma pīlum et sagittās dederant. 6. Rēx hārum nātiōnum, quae illam coniūratiōnem fēcērant, necātus est.

II. 1. That famous chief was forced to plead his case in chains. 2. Those tribes collected the soldiers at the foot of the hill (acc.). 3. That man, whose daughter has been saved, will praise the soldier for his courage. 4. This is the soldier by whom we were saved.

214.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Hic liber est meus; ille gladius est militis; ubi est istud pīlum? 2. Caesar ipse cum militibus ex illā urbe

discēdit. 3. Lēgātī quōs Helvētīī mīsērunt armīs carent. 4. Hostēs utrāque ripā flūminis prohibēbimus. 5. Ipsī oppidum ā militibus¹ liberāvistis. 6. Aliī in rīpīs aliī in flūmine ipsō pugnābant. 7. Caesar sōlus Helvētiōs prōvinciā prohibet. 8. Tōta prōvincia ab hostibus liberāta est. 9. Ex hāc urbe incolae aliī aliam in partem discēdent. 10. Caesar et Orgetorix principēs fuērunt; alter necātus (est), alter ob victōriam laudātus est.

II. 1. Of the queen herself; on the very banks of the river; that daughter of yours. 2. Caesar was the very man who² was keeping the enemy from the province. 3. Some depart from the town in one direction, some in another. 4. Those soldiers of yours lack bravery and will withdraw from the battle. 5. Some like war, others peace. 6. I myself shall free the inhabitants of the whole province from danger.

LESSON 35

FOURTH CONJUGATION. INTERROGATIVE quis

215. **audiō, hear**

PRIN. PARTS: **audiō, audire, audivi, auditus**

Learn all tenses of the indicative, active and passive, of **audiō** (519).

1. Observe that the final vowel of the present stem is *long -i-*; it is shortened, however, before another vowel. What are the corresponding vowels of the first, second, and third conjugations? How can one tell to what conjugation a verb belongs?
2. Compare carefully the present indicative active and passive of **audiō** with the corresponding forms of **capiō** (520). In what forms is there a difference? Note

¹ See 211.

² *Caesar was the very man who = Caesar himself.*

particularly the *quantity* of the vowel *i* in the present tense of **audiō**, and how this affects the place of the accent and so the pronunciation.

3. The other five tenses of **audiō** are formed and conjugated exactly like those of **capiō**.

216. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

quis, who? which? what?

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā	quō
PLURAL			
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

1. Compare these forms with those of the relative (195).

217. Examine the following:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Quis hoc fēcit? <i>who did this?</i> | } Used as an interrogative pronoun. |
| 2. Quid fēcisti? <i>what did you do?</i> | |
| 3. Quī (quis) vir hoc fēcit? <i>what man did this?</i> | |
| 4. Quam urbem vidēs? <i>what city do you see?</i> | } Used as an interrogative adjective. |
| 5. Quod dōnum amat puer? <i>what gift does the boy like?</i> | |

- a. Observe that, when used as an *adjective*, the interrogative has the same forms as the relative. **Quis** is sometimes used for **quī**.
- b. When used as a pronoun, **quis** and **quid** are used in place of **quī** and **quod**. As an interrogative pronoun, **quis** has no feminine forms in the singular.

218.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|--|
| *audiō, ire, audīvī, audītus,
<i>hear.</i> | cōnsuetūdō, inis, f., <i>custom,</i>
<i>habit.</i> |
| *mūniō, ire, mūnīvī, mūnī-
tus, <i>fortify.</i> | clāmor, ōris, m., <i>shout, cry.</i>
labor, ōris, m., <i>work, labor.</i> |
| *veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, ¹
<i>come.</i> | iūdicium, i, n., <i>trial, judg-</i>
<i>ment.</i> |
| pūniō, ire, pūnīvī, pūnītus,
<i>punish.</i> | undique, adv., <i>from all sides.</i> |

219.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ipse urbem periculō liberābit. 2. Iste miles, cuius virtūtem omnēs vidētis, Rōmānus est. 3. In hōc ipsō oppidō coniūrātiō est facta. 4. Helvētīi ē tōtā prōvinciā discessērunt. 5. Hostēs aliī aliam in partem in fugam dabuntur. 6. Alter lēgātus hostēs moenibus prohibēre, alter incolās convocāre coepit.

II. 1. Some will be freed from chains, others will be punished. 2. The enemy will be kept away from the city. 3. They fought for a long time on the very banks of the river. 4. I myself shall depart from the city.

220.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Audiris; audiētur; vēnerātis. 2. Mūniēbātur; pūnivistī; pūnitae erātis. 3. Quī venient in hanc urbem?

¹ See page 49, footnote.

4. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur? Clāmōrēs ipsōrum quōs misimus audiuntur. 5. Cōnsuētūdō est Rōmānōrum castra nocte mūnīre. 6. Quis tēlīs vulnerātus est? Mīles cuius imperātor castra nōn mūnīvit. 7. Quōs clāmōrēs in hāc urbe audīmus? 8. Et clientēs et servōs ad iūdiciū undique coēgit. 9. Clāmōrēs eōrum quī cum impedimentīs veniebant audītī sunt. 10. Quid facere cupitis? Castra pōnere sub monte illō cupimus.

II. 1. We are heard; you (plur.) will hear; we had come. 2. They have been punished; you (sing.) are being heard; the camp has been fortified. 3. What did he do? 4. Who formed a conspiracy of the Helvetians? 5. Orgetorix himself was the one¹ who formed the conspiracy. 6. Whose weapons are these? 7. With great labor they will fortify the city that² we have taken.

LESSON 36

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IV

THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX AFTER BEING SUMMONED TO TRIAL BY THE HELVETIAN OFFICIALS ON A CHARGE OF CONSPIRACY

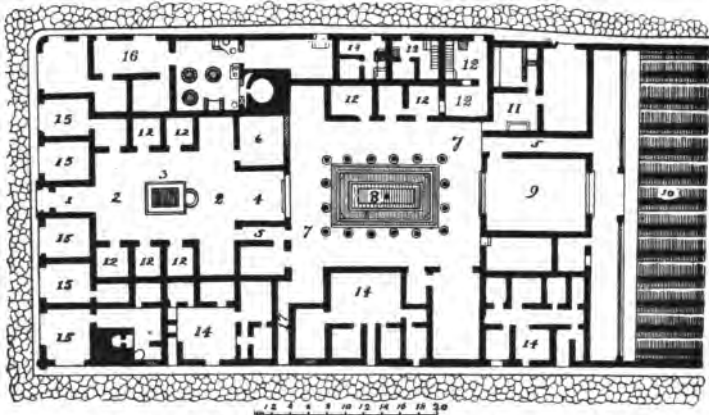
221. Per nūntiōs ea cōnsilia nūntiāta sunt Helvētiis, quī Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Coniūratiōnis accūsātus est et ignī cremārī³ eius poena fuit. Quam⁴ ob rem Orgetorīx ad iūdiciū omnem suam (*his*) familiam et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, undique coēgit. Per eōs sē (*himself*)

¹ See page 107, footnote 2. ² Is this a relative or a demonstrative? ³ See 183, 2. ⁴ *quam ob rem, wherefore, therefore.*





Interior of a Roman House (Restoration)



Plan of the House of Pansa at Pompeii

1. Fauces (Entrance). 2. Atrium (Reception room, with opening in the roof above the impluvium). 3. Impluvium (Basin in floor). 4. Tablinum (a room whose purposes are not certainly known: perhaps a record room and study or at times a summer dining room). 5. Passages. 6. Dining Room (or library?). 7. Peristylum or Peristyle (an open court surrounded by colonnades: the private living quarters of the family). 8. Viridarium (Basin, containing fountain and pool, surrounded by plants and shrubs). 9. Oecus (a large fine hall, a state dining room). 10. Hortus (Garden). 11. Kitchen. 12. Sleeping rooms. 13. Small separate dwelling, of two stories, rented out. 14. Larger separate dwellings, rented out. 15. Tabernae (Shops). 16. Bakery, rented out. 17. Side entrance to main dwelling.

ē periculō ēripuit. Magistrātūs¹ per eius fugam incitāti sunt multitudinemque hominum ex agris cōgere coepērunt. Intereā Orgetorix mortuus² est, et dē eius morte multi rūmōrēs apud Helvētiōs fuērunt.

(READING SELECTION 452)

LESSON 37

FOURTH DECLENSION

222.

THE STEM ENDS IN -u-

cāsus, m.,
chance, misfortune

cornū, n.,
horn, wing

Stem cāsu-

Stem cornu-

Base cās-

Base corn-

		CASE ENDINGS	
		SINGULAR	
		<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
SINGULAR	SINGULAR		
NOM. cāsus	cornū	-us	-ū
GEN. cāsūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
DAT. cāsui (ū)	cornū	-ui (ū)	-ū
ACC. cāsum	cornū	-um	-ū
ABL. cāsū	cornū	-ū	-ū
PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL	
NOM. cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
GEN. cāsuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
DAT. cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC. cāsūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
ABL. cāsibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

1. A few words of this declension have -ubus in the dative and ablative plural.
2. *Domus*, f., *house, home*, is partly of the second and partly of the fourth declension. (See 501.)

¹ *officers, magistrates*, nom. plur. ² *mortuus est*, *died*.

223. RULE. — Gender. — *Nearly all nouns of the fourth declension in -us are masculine ; those in -ū are neuter.*

1. Domus, house, Īdūs (plur.), the Ides, manus, hand, and a few other nouns are *feminine*.

224. Decline together **exercitus fortis, brave army ; tua manus, your hand ; cornū dextrum, right wing.**

225.

VOCABULARY

cāsus, ūs, m., a falling, in (ā) dextrō cornū, on the chance, misfortune. right wing.

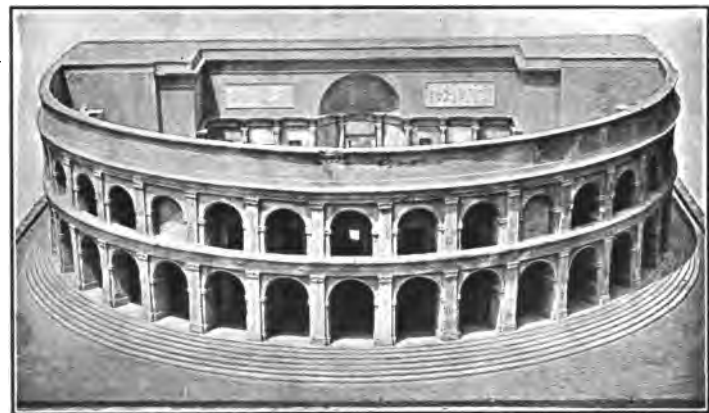
domus, ūs, f., house, home. in (ā) sinistrō cornū, on the left wing.

exercitus, ūs, m., army.

manus, ūs, f., hand, band (of conveniō, ire, convēni, conventum, come together, assemble.

portus, ūs, m., harbor.

cornū, ūs, n., horn, wing (of deus, ī, m., god.



Roman Theater (Restoration)

226.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis clāmōrēs militum audivit? 2. Hostēs alii aliam in partem fugient. 3. Undique equitēs ex silvīs ad flūmen veniēbant. 4. Principis est cōsuētūdō eōs quī coniūrātiōnem faciunt pūnīre. 5. Quam urbem mūnient et quī eam dēfendent? 6. Quōrum clāmōrēs audiuntur atque cūr illī pūnītī sunt?

II. 1. Who will fortify the camp that¹ Caesar has pitched? 2. We shall keep those foot-soldiers from the city. 3. Whose shouts did you hear at daybreak at the foot of the hill? 4. In many countries lazy men are punished.

227.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Portubus; exercituī; manuum. 2. Manūs equitum ad exercitum vēnerant. 3. Ad hunc portum nāvēs hostium missae sunt. 4. Quī militēs in dextrō cornū exercitūs sunt? 5. Rōmānī cōsiliō deōrum magnam Helvētiōrum partem necāvērunt. 6. Nūntiī quī ad Caesarem vēnerant eī cāsum exercitūs nūntiāvērunt. 7. Paucī ad portās urbis conveniēbant. 8. Rōmānī magnā cum caede domōs et agrōs Gallōrum vāstāverant. 9. Nostrī in sinistrō cornū superātī sunt quod nōn cum virtūte dīmicāverant. 10. Domūs Gallōrum ab equitibus vāstābantur. 11. Urbs cuius portās dēfendimus magnum portum habet.

II. 1. For the gods; on the left wing; the doors of the houses. 2. In the harbor are many ships in which² the army of the Romans came from the city to Gaul. 3. The misfortune of the army was reported to Caesar. 4. Orgetorix, whose bands had assembled, was not saved from danger. 5. The houses of the city will be defended by the army.

¹ Is this the relative or the demonstrative pronoun? ² *in which*: express by the ablative of means.

LESSON 38

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. DATIVE OF POSSESSION

228. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

Review the list of verbs in 169, and review thoroughly the meanings and principal parts of the following verbs that have been introduced since Lesson 27:

dūcō	audiō	iaciō	coepī
trādūcō	permovēō	fugiō	nūntiō
veniō	pōnō	faciō	ēripiō
conveniō	careō	interficiō	cōgō
mittō	vincō	dicō	cōgnōscō
dēbeō	relinquō	iubeō	discēdō
cupiō	contendō	appellō	liberō
capīō	gerō	cōstituō	pūniō
prohibeō	incolō	dēfendō	mūniō

1. Notice particularly the significance of the prefixes **trāns** and **con**, as they appear in the compound verbs.
2. How does the formation of the future of the first and second conjugations differ from that of the third and fourth conjugations?
3. How can you tell whether **cupiō** belongs to the fourth or the third conjugation?

229. 1. Following the form suggested in 170, write a synopsis of **iubeō** in the first person, **interficiō** in the second person, **mūniō** in the third person.

2. Review 92, 1. Conjugate the perfect active of **dō**,

iubeō, cōgnōscō, veniō. Observe that the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active and passive of *all conjugations* are formed from the principal parts and conjugated in the same way.

230. Examine the following :

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Miles gladium habet, | } <i>the soldier has a sword.</i> |
| 2. Militi est gladius, | |

Observe the two ways in Latin of expressing the same English idea. The first sentence corresponds word for word with the English translation. The second sentence, translated into bad English, is "for the soldier is a sword," the possessor being dative and the thing possessed being subject of *est*. Never translate literally a Latin sentence thus, as there is in good English no similar construction.

231. RULE. — **Dative of Possession.** — *The dative is used with est, sunt, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

232.

REVIEW EXERCISES

(Give tense, voice, person, and number, and translate.)

I. 1. Facient; convocābāmur; cōgēminī. 2. Audiēbāris; capiēris; caperis. 3. Discesserit; prohibuerant; convēnistis. 4. Missum erat; miserat; coepisti. 5. Pōnētis; capiēs; appellābitis. 6. Vincentur; pūniētur; iubētur. 7. Reliquerātis; relinquent; dictum erat. 8. Liberātae sunt; habuerās; contendebātis. 9. Ēripiēris; trādūcētur; monentur. 10. Augēbat; pugnābunt; dēfēnsa erat; pūnīris; cōgitur.

II. 1. We have said; they wished; you (plur.) have been compelled. 2. We shall take; you will leave; they will blame. 3. It has been said; you (fem. plur.) have been defended. 4. It was heard; we are being defended; you (sing.) are fortifying. 5. We shall conquer; they have conquered; you were conquering. 6. It had been sent; you (plur.) have sent.

233.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Meus amicus domum habet.* 2. *Meō amicō est domus.* 3. *Helvētīi, quōrum castra vidētis, ad moenia oppidi mox venient.* 4. *Exercitus magnus Caesari fuit.* 5. *Caesar magnum exercitum habuit.* 6. *Magnam frūmenti cōpiam habent.* 7. *Magna frūmenti cōpia eīs est.* 8. *Hostēs paucās nāvēs habent.* 9. *Hostibus sunt paucae nāvēs.* 10. *Militi pulchrum gladium dedit.*

II. 1. The farmer has¹ a horse. 2. They have¹ friends. 3. The soldiers will besiege Rome. 4. He had¹ a book. 5. Who has come to the city? 6. The city that the Romans fortified was large and beautiful.

LESSON 39

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*. PLACE WHERE, WHENCE, AND WHITHER

234.

IRREGULAR VERB *eō*, *go*PRIN. PARTS: *eō*, *ire*, *ii*, *itum*²

Learn all tenses of the indicative of *eō* (525).

1. Notice that the *-i-*, the present stem of *eō*, changes to *-e-* before a vowel. In what forms of the present indicative does this change occur?

¹ Express this idea in two ways in Latin.

² See page 49, footnote.

2. Observe that the future indicative *ibō* is formed like the future of verbs of the first and second conjugations, although the present infinitive is *ire*. Are all other tenses of the indicative formed and conjugated regularly?

235. Names of towns and a few other words have a special case called the *Locative*, which expresses the idea of *at* or *in*, and answers the question *where*.

1. The following are the *locative* endings for names of towns:

SINGULAR PLURAL

First Declension	-ae	-is	{ <i>Rōmae</i> , in Rome. <i>Athēnis</i> , in Athens.
Second Declension	-i	-is	{ <i>Corinthi</i> , at or in Corinth. <i>Delphi</i> , at or in Delphi.
Third Declension	-i(e)	-ibus	{ <i>Carthāgini</i> , at or in Carthage. <i>Trallibus</i> , at or in Tralles.

2. *Domī*, at home; *humī*, on the ground; *rūrī*, in the country, are also locative forms.
3. To express the idea of *at* or *in* for other words than the names of towns use the preposition *in* and the ablative; *i.e.*, *in urbe est*, he is in the city; *in Italiā sunt*, they are in Italy.

236. Examine the following:

1. *Venit*, he comes { *ad pontem*, to the bridge.
in Italiā, to or into Italy.
Rōmam, to Rome.
domum, home.
rūs, to or into the country.

2. Exit, he goes
- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| { | (ab) (dē) ex oppidō, from the town. |
| | (ab) (dē) ex Italiā, from Italy. |
| | Athēnis, from Athens. |
| | domō, from home. |
| | rūre, from the country. |

- a. Observe that to answer the questions *whither* or *whence*, no *preposition* is used with names of towns and *domus* and *rūs*, while a preposition (*in*, *ad*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*) is used with other words.

237. RULE. — Expressions of Place.

1. Place *Where*. Ablative with *in*.

But, Locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*.

2. Place *To which*. Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But, Accusative without a preposition with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*.

3. Place *From which*. Ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*.

But, Ablative without a preposition with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*.

238.

VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum (plur.), f., <i>Athens.</i>	eō, ire, ii, itum, go. exeō (ex + eō), ire, exii, ex- itūrus, go forth, leave.
Carthāgō, inis, f., <i>Carthage.</i>	trānseō (trāns + eō), ire, trānsii, trānsitūrus, go over, go across, cross.
Corinthus, i, f. (28, 2), <i>Cor- inth.</i>	impetus, ūs, m., <i>attack.</i> impetum faciō in (with acc.), <i>make an attack upon.</i>
Delphi, ōrum (plur.), m., <i>Del- phi.</i>	
equitātus (eques), ūs, m., <i>cav- alry.</i>	

239.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Domūs incolārum ab equitātū Caesaris dēfendentur.
 2. Legiōnēs populi Rōmāni in hiberna vēnerant. 3. Cāsus
 nāvium militibus, quī in hibernis erant, nūntiātus est. 4. In
 sinistrō cornū exercitūs sunt multae manūs fortium militum.
 5. Propter cāsum nostrōrum hostēs laeti erant.

- II. 1. The Gauls were being conquered on the right
 wing. 2. The bands of the enemy that you see are as-
 sembling from all sides. 3. They were hastening to the
 harbor from which the ships of our (men) were seen.
 4. They were killed by the cavalry with swords.

240.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Ierat; ibunt; eunt. 2. Trānsiērunt; exhibātis;
 imus; iimus. 3. Ex urbe; ex urbe Rōmā¹; Rōmā; domō.
 4. In oppidō; Rōmae; Carthāginī; Athēnis; domi. 5. Cōn-
 sul exercitum Rōmā Athēnās trādūxit. 6. Caesar lēgātōs
 quōs habēbat in Graeciam trānsire iussit. 7. Dux Rō-
 mānōrum urbem mūniet atque incolās ab hostibus liberābit.
 8. Equitātum Corinthum mittet, sed ipse Athēnis bellum
 geret. 9. Helvētii ē finibus exire parant, et exercitum
 flūmen trādūcunt. 10. Caesar Rōmā contendit et equitātum
 in Helvētiōs impetum facere iubet.

- II. 1. From Greece; out of Corinth; from home. 2. To
 Athens; to the city; into the country; into the province.
 3. In Rome; in Italy; at home; at Delphi. 4. We ought
 to send the cavalry to Athens. 5. The enemy had made
 an attack on our men, but had been conquered. 6. The
 cavalry wished to cross the river, but were kept away from
 the banks by the enemy.

¹ of Rome. Rōmā is in apposition with urbe.

LESSON 40

NUMERALS. EXTENT OF TIME AND SPACE

241. Learn thoroughly the cardinals as far as twenty (510), and study the formation of the numbers beyond.

242. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

Paradigms

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ūnus, <i>one</i>	ūna	ūnum	trēs, <i>three</i>	tria
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, trīs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	duo, <i>two</i>	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	mille, <i>thousand</i>	millia (milia)
GEN.	mille	millium (miliūm)
DAT.	mille	millibus (milibus)
ACC.	mille	millia (milia)
ABL.	mille	millibus (milibus)

243. 1. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are indeclinable: **quattuor puellae**, *four girls*; **septem puerōrum**, *of seven boys*.

2. Compare the declension of **ūnus** with that of **ille** (202).

3. **Mille** in the singular is indeclinable, and is generally

used as an adjective: **mille militēs**, *a thousand soldiers*. In the plural it is a noun only: **septem millia militum**, *seven thousands of soldiers, seven thousand soldiers*.

244. Examine the following:

1. **Hannibal multōs annōs in Italiā manēbat**, *Hannibal remained (for) many years in Italy*.
2. **Hoc flūmen altum quinque pedēs est**, *this river is five feet deep*.
- a. Observe that the accusative **multōs annōs** denotes duration or extent of *time*, **quinque pedēs**, extent of *space*.

245. RULE. — **Duration of Time and Extent of Space.** — *Duration of time or extent of space is expressed by the accusative.*

246.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitudinis, f. , <i>height, depth</i> .	mercātor, ōris, m. , <i>merchant, trader</i> .
ēruptiō, ōnis, f. , <i>a breaking out, a sally</i> .	socius, i, m. , <i>companion, ally</i> .
incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus , <i>set fire to, burn</i> .	passus, ūs, m. , <i>pace</i> .
maneō, ēre, mānsi, mānsūrus , <i>stay, remain</i> .	mille passūs , <i>a thousand paces, a (Roman) mile</i> ; millia passuum , <i>miles</i> .
	hōra, ae, f. , <i>hour</i> .

247.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Centum viginti mercātorum; mille trecentis sex et quadrāgintā militibus. 2. Trium exercituum; duābus legiōnibus; quattuor equōrum. 3. Mūrus quem vidēs sex pedēs altus est. 4. Duōs mēnsēs ēruptiōnem facere parābant. 5. Caesar novem annōs in Galliā manēbat. 6. Equitēs duās hōrās magnā cum virtūte pugnābant. 7. Socii

Helvētiōrum decem millia passuum per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter fēcērunt. 8. Lēgātus cum tribus cohortibus vicōs duodecim incendit et agrōs vāstāvit. 9. Tria millia militum ad flūmen ab hostibus interfecti erant. 10. Id flūmen centum pedēs lātum et duodēviginti altum fuit. 11. Hic collis septuāgintā quinque pedēs altus est. 12. Equitātus Athēnīs Delphōs exiit.

II. 1. Thirty-seven villages; five thousand soldiers; a thousand horsemen. 2. For two months the soldiers of the Roman people besieged that town. 3. The wall, which was twelve feet high, was defended by Caesar's forces. 4. He remained eight months in that country, and hastened to Rome. 5. The soldiers remained in Carthage, but the consul came to Rome.

LESSON 41

FIFTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

248.

FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in *-ē*.

	<i>diēs</i> , m., <i>day</i>		<i>rēs</i> , f., <i>thing</i>			
	Stem <i>diē-</i>		Stem <i>rē-</i>			
	Base <i>di-</i>		Base <i>r-</i>			
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
GEN.	<i>diēi</i> ¹	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i> ¹	<i>rērum</i>	<i>-ēi</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
DAT.	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ēi</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
ACC.	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>-em</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
ABL.	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>-ē</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

¹ In the genitive singular the case ending is *-ēi* if the base ends in a vowel *-ēi* if the base ends in a consonant.



Street in Pompeii, showing Stepping Stones, Fountain, Water Reservoir, and Shops



Street of the Tombs, outside the Herculaneum Gate, at Pompeii

1. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that have all the forms of the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and accusative plural.

249. RULE. — **Gender.** — *All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except diēs, which is usually masculine in the singular and always so in the plural.*

250. Examine the following:

1. **Satis cibi habēmus**, *we have enough (of) food.*
 2. **Nihil novi est**, *there is nothing (of) new (newness, novelty).*
 3. **Unus ex militibus vulnerātus est**, *one of the soldiers was wounded.*
 4. **Quidam dē nostris cecidērunt**, *some of our men fell.*
- a. Observe that the genitives **cibi**, **novi**, denote the whole of which a part (**satis**, **nihil**) is or is not taken. Note that in 1 and 2 *of* is not used in English.
- b. Observe the construction following **ūnus** and **quidam** in 3 and 4. After the cardinal numerals regularly, and after a few other words occasionally, an ablative with **dē** or **ex** is used in place of the genitive.

251. RULE. — **Genitive of the Whole** ("Partitive Genitive") — *The genitive denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends.*

252.

VOCABULARY

aciēs , ēi , f., <i>line of battle.</i>	nihil reliquī , <i>nothing left.</i>
diēs , ēi , m., <i>day.</i>	cōficiō , ere, cōfēcī , cōfectus ,
rēs , rei , f., <i>thing, circumstance, affair.</i>	<i>accomplish, finish, wear out.</i>
nihil (indecl. noun), <i>nothing.</i>	pūblicus , a, um, <i>public.</i>
satis (indecl. noun), <i>enough.</i>	rēs pūblica , rei pūblīcae , f., <i>the state, the commonwealth.</i>

253.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Exercitus decem mēnsēs Rōmae manēbat. 2. Via vīgintī millia passuum est longa. 3. Pompēius et Caesar cōsulēs fuērunt; ille Rōmae manēbat, hīc cum exercitū in Galliam vēnit. 4. Helvētīi cum omnibus impedimentis domum ire coācti sunt. 5. Equitātus quīndecim hōris Athēnīs Corinthum iit.

II. 1. The city was on a hill a hundred feet high. 2. The allies marched¹ seven miles in two hours. 3. Late at night the general set fire to all the buildings. 4. Behind the camp was a river four feet deep.

254.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar exercitum flūmen ūnō diē trādūxerat. 2. Haec rēs hostēs terruit, atque pars eōrum domum iit. 3. Trēs diēs equitātus cum Helvētīis, quī flūmen trānsibant, pugnābat. 4. Vicōs et aedificia incenderant, et nihil reliquī domī habēbant. 5. Primā lūce paucī dē eōrum militibus iter nōn cōnfēcērant. 6. Fīnitimī eīs satis frūmentī et cibī dedērunt. 7. Rēs pūblica tribus diēbus magnō periculō liberāta est. 8. Quattuor ē lēgātis eō diē eandem rem Caesarī nūntiāvērunt. 9. Omnibus rēbus Rōmānī Helvētīōs, quī domō exierant, superābant. 10. Primam aciem iacere tēla iussit.

II. 1. For twenty days the legions defended the camp from the enemy. 2. The Gauls have enough soldiers, but they lack courage. 3. The Helvetians have² nothing left, and will soon go out of their territories. 4. Few of our men will remain in Rome. 5. In a few days we shall have enough weapons.

¹ iter faciō.
habent.

² Express this idea in some other way than by using

LESSON 42

READING LESSON

(Those who prefer reading lessons based on Caesar's *Gallie War*, Book II, may use the lessons beginning at 476.)

CHAPTER V

THE HELVETII NEVERTHELESS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

255. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi ē finibus suis¹ exire cōstituērunt. Ubi iam ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua¹ omnia ad² duodecim, vicōs ad² quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt.³ Itaque et domum reditiōnis spem sustulērunt⁴ et ad bellum parātī sunt. Frūmentum et multa alia quemque⁵ domō efferre iubent.³ Rauracī et Tulingī et Latobrigī finitimī idem facere et ē finibus exire cōstituunt.³ Bōii, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trāsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnāverant, Helvētiōrum amīci et sociī erant.

(READING SELECTION 454)

LESSON 43

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

256. The degrees of comparison are : *positive, comparative, superlative*.

1. The positive is the simple form of the adjective : *cārus, dear*.

¹ *their*. ² *about* (with numerals). ³ The present tense is sometimes used instead of a past tense to express the thought with greater vividness. It is called the historical present. ⁴ From *tollō*. ⁵ Acc. of *quisque*.

2. The comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter: **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, **cārior**, **cārius**, *dearer*.
3. The superlative is formed by adding to the base of the positive, **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum**: **cārus** (base **cār-**), *dear*, **cārissimus**, **a**, **um**, *dearest*.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	
lātus , a , um ·(lāt-), <i>wide</i>	lārior , <i>wider</i>	lātius , <i>wider</i>	lātissimus , a , um , <i>widest</i>
fortis , e (fort-), <i>brave</i>	fortior , <i>braver</i>	fortius , <i>braver</i>	fortissimus , a , um , <i>bravest</i>
vēlōx (vēlōc-), <i>swift</i>	vēlōrior , <i>swifter</i>	vēlōcius , <i>swifter</i>	vēlōcissimus , a , um , <i>swiftest</i>

257. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (62). The comparative is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	lārior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs (is)	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

1. In what forms does the declension of the comparative differ from that of regular third declension adjectives (155, 161)?

258. Compare **altus** (**alt-**), *high, deep*; **potēns** (**potent-**), *powerful*; **brevis** (**brev-**), *short*. Decline in the comparative.

259. Examine the following :

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Hic mōns altior quam ille est, | } <i>this mountain is higher</i> |
| 2. Hic mōns altior illō est, | |
| 3. Hunc montem saepius ¹ quam illum | } <i>this mountain I have</i> |
| vidi, | |
| 4. Hunc montem saepius illō vidi, | } <i>(I have seen) that.</i> |

In 1 **quam** is used and **ille** is nominative; in 2 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative. In 3 **quam** is used and **illum** is accusative; in 4 **quam** is omitted and **illō** is ablative.

The omission of **quam** is commonest in negative sentences and in relative clauses. Thus, *vir quō nēmō fortior erat, a man than whom none was (ever) braver.*

260. RULE. — Ablative of Comparison. — *In expressions involving a comparative with quam the case used after quam is the case which the completed sentence would require. If quam is omitted, the ablative is used.*

261.

VOCABULARY

vēlōx, vēlōcis, <i>swift.</i>	lātitudō, inis, f., <i>width,</i>
tūtus, a, um, <i>safe.</i> [mous.	<i>breadth.</i>
turpis, e, <i>disgraceful, infam-</i>	pervenīō, ire, pervēnī, per-
Rhodanus, i, m., <i>the Rhone.</i>	ventum, <i>come up, arrive,</i>
quam, adv., <i>than.</i>	reach. [besiege.
latus, ² lateris, n., <i>side, flank.</i>	obsideō, ēre, obsēdī, obsessus,

262.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. Oppidum multōs diēs ā Caesare oppugnātum erat.
 2. Paucīs mēnsibus cibī inopiā hostēs labōrābunt. 3. Incolās quī ex oppidō exiērunt laudat. 4. Quī clāmōribus Gal-lōrum terrentur? 5. Tempus annī bellō nōn erat idōneum.

¹ saepius is a comparative adverb, *oftener*: see 280.

² Do not confuse with the adjective lātus, a, um.

II. 1. On that day Caesar left Rome. 2. That day was the end of the war. 3. He left the city and hastened into Gaul. 4. In that battle a few of our men were wounded in the head.

263.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētīi finitimis fortiōrēs erant. 2. Hoc flūmen quod vidētis altius quam Rhodanus est. 3. Rōmānī multis rēbus potentiōrēs illis gentibus erant. 4. Equōs vēlōciōrēs quam illōs omnēs vidimus. 5. Turpissimum est agrōs sociōrum vāstāre. 6. Hoc latus castrōrum tūtius erat illō, quod hostēs discesserant. 7. Caesar Rōmā contendit et ad finēs Helvētiōrum pervenit. 8. Flūmen Rhodanus quīngentōs pedēs lātum est. 9. Vēlōciōrēs equitēs quam tuōs nōn vidī. 10. Urbs, quam Rōmānī obsidēbant, lātissima erat.

II. 1. The Celts are the bravest of all the Gauls. 2. Have you seen a more disgraceful flight? 3. That side of the fortifications that you see has been besieged for many days. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. What road is shorter than that? 6. This month is shorter than that.

LESSON 44

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

264. Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus**, to the *nominative singular masculine*. The comparative is formed regularly (256, 2).

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher (pulchr-), <i>beautiful</i> [<i>eager</i>	pulchrior, pulchr- ius	pulcherrimus, a, um
ācer (acr-), <i>keen</i> ,	ācrior, ācius	ācerrimus, a, um

265. The following six adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus, a, um** to the base. The comparative is regular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
similis, e (simil-), <i>like</i>	similior, ius	simillimus, a, um
dissimilis, e (dissimil-), <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, ius	dissimilimus, a, um
facilis, e (facil-), <i>easy</i>	facilior, ius	facillimus, a, um
difficilis, e (difficil-), <i>hard</i>	difficilior, ius	difficillimus, a, um
gracilis, e (gracil-), <i>slender</i>	gracilior, ius	gracillimus, a, um
humilis, e (humil-), <i>low</i>	humilior, ius	humillimus, a, um

266. Examine the following :

- Hic mōns centum pedibus altior quam ille est,** *this mountain is a hundred feet higher* (literally, *higher by a hundred feet*) *than that.*
- Hoc iter multō facilius illō est,** *this road is much easier* (literally, *easier by much*) *than that.*

Observe that the ablatives **centum pedibus** and **multō** express the *degree of difference* between the objects compared.

267. RULE. — Degree of Difference. — *The Degree of Difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition.*

268. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used without making a comparison between two objects. Then the comparative means *too* or *rather*, and the superlative *very* or *exceedingly*.

1. **Hic mōns altissimus est**, *this mountain is very (or exceedingly) high.*
2. **Hic mōns altior est**, *this mountain is rather (or too) high.*

269.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|---|
| adventus , fīs, m., <i>approach, arrival.</i> | animus , i, m., <i>mind, courage, spirit, disposition.</i> |
| lēnis , e, <i>smooth, gentle.</i> | inter , prep. with acc., <i>between, among, during.</i> |
| expectō , āre, āvi, ātus, <i>await, wait for, expect.</i> | certiōrem eum faciō , with dē |
| ibi , adv., <i>in that place, there.</i> | and abl., <i>I inform him (lit., I make him more certain) of.</i> |

270.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Caesar in Galliā multās legiōnēs habuit.** 2. **Quod cōsiliū tūtius hōc est?** 3. **Nāvēs quibus militēs missi erant vėlōcissimae sunt.** 4. **Helvētīi finitimōs multōs annōs finibus prohibuerant.** 5. **Turpissimum est ē proeliō discēdere.**

II. 1. **There are not enough horsemen in Rome.**
 2. **Many soldiers have gone from Rome to Gaul.**
 3. **Caesar's army was compelled to fight for two days.**
 4. **Late at night the general ordered the soldiers to pitch camp.**

271.

EXERCISES

I. 1. **Impetum hostium expectāre difficillimum est.**
 2. **Rīpae huius flūminis lēniōrēs sunt.** 3. **Lēgātus multō fortior meō frātre est.** 4. **Pōns inter duo oppida factus erat.** 5. **Omnium urbis viārum haec multō brevissima est.**
 6. **Dē adventū nāvium eum certiōrem fēcērunt.** 7. **Iter inter altōs montēs angustum et difficillimum erat.** 8. **Collis in quō Rōmāni castra posuerant centum pedibus altior illō est quā ad vicum est.** 9. **Dē cāsū exercitūs**

lĕgātōs certiorēs fēcīt. 10. Quī eōs certiorēs dē Caesaris adventū fēcērunt?

II. 1. There¹ was there an exceedingly high mountain. 2. The Rhone is five feet deeper than that river. 3. This city in many respects² is rather like³ Rome. 4. Their spirits were roused by the bravery of our men. 5. We informed them about the difficult road.

LESSON 45

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. **Possum**

272. Several common adjectives are irregularly compared. Which of these are irregular in English?

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um, <i>much</i>	— plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multi, ae, a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, ae, a
vetus, veteris, <i>old</i>	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis, <i>old</i>	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
(501)		
iuuenis, e, <i>young</i>	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
superus, a, um, <i>above</i>	superior, superius, <i>higher</i>	suprēmus, summus, <i>highest</i>
inferus, a, um, <i>below</i>	inferior, inferius, <i>lower</i>	īfimus, īmus, <i>lowest</i>

¹ See note on 49, II. 3. ² rēs. ³ See 163.

273. **Plūs**, *more*, is not declined like other comparatives (257). Wherein is the difference?

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is	plūra
ABL.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus

274. **Possum** (**pot(is) + sum**), *I am able, I can.*

PRIN. PARTS: **possum, posse, potui, —**

Learn all tenses of the indicative (522).

Observe

1. That the **t** of **pot** becomes **s** before **s**, and that the **f** of the tenses formed from the perfect stem is dropped after the **t** of **pot**.
2. That in other respects this compound of **sum** is formed and conjugated like **sum** (521).

275.

VOCABULARY

fidēs , ei, f., <i>trust, confidence.</i>	accēdō , ere, accessi , accessi-
potestās , ātis, f. (possum), <i>power, authority.</i>	rus (with ad and the acc.), <i>go or come near, approach.</i>
nōbillis , e, <i>well known, noble.</i>	hūc , adv., <i>to this place, hither.</i>
amplius , a, um, <i>large, exten-</i> <i>sive, ample.</i>	quam maximus , <i>the greatest</i> <i>possible, as large as pos-</i> <i>sible</i> (with superlatives quam has the force "as possible").
permittō , ere, permisi , permis- sus , <i>give up, intrust, per-</i> <i>mit.</i>	

276.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Eōs difficilior iter facere cōēgit. 2. Sed hostēs eō diē impetum in eōs nōn fēcērunt. 3. Gallōs dē eius cōnsiliis certiōrēs fēcērunt. 4. Paucī dē nostris ad flūmen lātissimum pervēnerant. 5. Urbs cuius moenia obsēdimus lātor mille passibus illō oppidō est.

II. 1. The house is many feet higher than the wall. 2. We have been waiting for the attack for five days. 3. The spirits of the cavalry were aroused by Caesar's speech. 4. We shall inform him of your misfortune.

277.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Poterat; potuerat; potestis; poterit. 2. Caesar quam maximis itineribus in Galliam contendit. 3. Accēdere ad vicum, quī summō¹ in monte positus est, nōn possunt. 4. Omnia in fidem² et potestatem populī Rōmāni illae nātiōēs permiserunt. 5. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum nōbilissimōs civitātis mittunt. 6. Aestāte plūra proelia quam hieme facta sunt. 7. Legiōnem summum collem mūnīre iubet. 8. Helvētiī ob flūmina maxima trānsire in prōvinciam nostram nōn poterant. 9. Pompēius sex annis maior nātū erat quam Caesar.

II. 1. On the top of the hill was a very small house. 2. The general was ten years older than the lieutenant. 3. Very old people cannot make long journeys. 4. Very many have come hither because the fields are rather extensive. 5. We all ought to do as much as possible.

¹ on the highest part of, on the top of. Certain other adjectives also may be used to denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant, as *īmus*, the lowest part of, the bottom of; *medius*, the middle of; *extrēmus*, the end of.

² keeping, protection.

LESSON 46

REVIEW. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

278. Compare the following adjectives, giving the English meanings :

turpis	pessimus	ācrior	minimus
asper	tūtior	īmus	superus
amplus	vēlōx	similis	plūrēs
nōbilis	vetustior	maior	senior

279. Adverbs are formed from adjectives.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declension form the adverb by adding *-ē* to the base.

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
cārus, <i>dear</i>	cār-	cārē, <i>dearly</i>
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>
miser, <i>wretched</i>	miser-	miserē, <i>wretchedly</i>

2. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding *-ter* to the stem. Stems ending in *-nt* drop *-t*.

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
fortis, <i>brave</i>	forti-	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
prūdēns, <i>wise</i>	prūdēt-	prūdenter, <i>wisely</i>

3. In some adjectives the *ablative singular*, in others the *neuter accusative singular*, serves as an adverb :

primus, <i>first</i>	primō, <i>at first</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	multum, <i>much</i>
facilis, <i>easy</i>	facile, <i>easily</i>

280. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective; the

superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē* (note an exception below). *It is, therefore, necessary to know the comparison of the adjective in order to compare the adverb.*

ADJECTIVE	ADVERB	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus	cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
ācer	ācriter, <i>cagerly</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
multus	multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
magnus	magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē

Form and compare the adverbs of these adjectives in 278: turpis, amplius, nōbilis, pessimus, vėlōx, plūrēs.

281.

VOCABULARY

*agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, <i>drive, lead, do.</i>	agmen, ¹ agminis, n. (agō), <i>army (on the march), column; novissimum agmen, the rear; primum agmen, the van.</i>
instruō, ere, instrūxi, instrūctus, <i>draw up, form, arrange.</i>	
administrō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>manage, direct, administer.</i>	proximus, a, um, <i>nearest, next</i> (163).
plūrimum possum, <i>I am very powerful, have most influence.</i>	apud, prep. with acc., <i>among, with, near.</i>
	quārtus, a, um, <i>fourth.</i>

282.

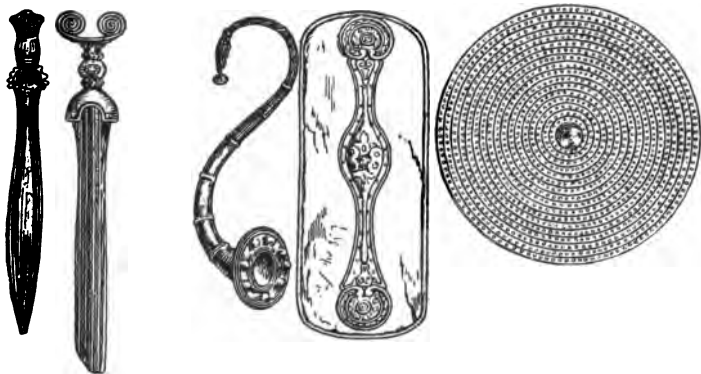
EXERCISES

- I. 1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx plūrimum poterat.
2. Rēs ab imperātore optimē administrābantur.
3. Helvētiī multō ācrius quam finitimī cum hostibus contendēbant.
4. Caesar aciem summō in colle instrūxit et impetum

¹ See lower illustration facing page 31.

exspectāvit. 5. Vicus ad quem primum agmen pervēnerat proximus erat finibus Gallōrum. 6. Omnia quae lēgātus iusserat milites bene ēgērunt. 7. Ubi¹ Caesar ad novissimum agmen pervēnit, ācerrimē cum hostibus equitēs pugnābant. 8. Summus collis ā peditibus nostris occupātus est. 9. In eō proeliō Orgetorigis filiam et ūnum ē filiis nostris cēpērunt, et multōs interfēcērunt. 10. Nostrī quam fortissimē pugnāvērunt, sed expugnāre oppidum nōn potuērunt. 11. Nostrī socii apud finitimōs ob amicitiam populi Rōmāni plūrimum possunt.

II. 1. He hastened into the territories of the Helvetii and arrived there² on the fourth day. 2. Caesar was very powerful among the allies of the Roman people. 3. The enemy attacked the rear very fiercely. 4. Who can manage this affair well? 5. Caesar ordered the allies to make as long³ marches as possible. 6. The general will draw up the line of battle very carefully.⁴ 7. The best citizens are not always the bravest soldiers.

¹ *when.*² *eō (adv.).*³ *magnus.*⁴ *See 147, 3.*

Gallic Swords, Signal Horn, and Shields

LESSON 47

CHAPTER VI

THE TWO ROUTES BY WHICH THE HELVETII COULD
LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

283. Duobus itineribus Helvētīi domō¹ exīre potuērunt. Ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum angustum et difficile erat, quod mōns altissimus impendēbat. Alterum iter per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius est, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque² vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnia ad profectiōnem Helvētiū comparāvērunt et ad rīpam Rhodanī convēnērunt.

LESSON 48

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

284. Learn the forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns with their meanings (511): **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **sui**, *of himself, herself, itself*.

285. USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

1. The pronoun of the first person is **ego**, *I*; of the second person **tū**, *you*; of the third person **is**, **ea**, **id**, *he, she, it* (190, *e*). They are used in Latin as subjects only to show emphasis or to avoid ambiguity.
 - a. **Tē vocō**, *I'm calling you*. ("I" is unemphatic, and therefore **ego** is not used.)
 - b. **Ego tē vocō**, *I (emphatic) am calling you*. (Such emphasis

¹ Why is there no preposition? See 237, 3. ² *I.e.* the river Rhone.

might be expressed in English by the translation,
 "It is I who am calling you.")

c. *Ego eum laudō* ; *is mē culpāt*, *I praise him* ; *he blames me*.

286.

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers back to the subject of the clause or sentence in which it stands (see also 428). It is never in the nominative case and so is never subject.

S. 1. I praise <i>myself</i>	PL. We praise <i>ourselves</i>
2. You praise <i>yourself</i>	You praise <i>yourselves</i>
3. { He praises <i>himself</i> }	They praise <i>themselves</i>
{ She praises <i>herself</i> }	

2. In Latin the pronouns of the first and second person, *ego* and *tū* (except in the nominative case), are used both as personal and reflexive pronouns. There is no special form for the reflexive as in English. In the third person, however, there is a special form for the reflexive, *suī*, of *himself*, *herself*, *itself*.

S. 1. <i>mē laudō</i> , <i>I praise myself</i>	PL. <i>nōs laudāmus</i> , <i>we praise ourselves</i>
2. <i>tē laudās</i> , <i>you praise yourself</i>	<i>vōs laudātis</i> , <i>you praise yourselves</i>
3. <i>sē laudat</i> , <i>he praises himself</i>	<i>sē laudant</i> , <i>they praise themselves</i>

3. Review 190. Do not confuse *is* with *suī*. *Suī* regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands (direct reflexive). Often, however, it refers to the subject of the main verb rather than to that of the clause or phrase to which it belongs grammatically (indirect reflexive).

- a. **Vir sē videt**, *the man sees himself.*
- b. **Vir eum videt**, *the man sees him* (some one else).
4. Review 207, 2. Do not confuse **ipse** with **sē**. **Ipse** is not a reflexive, but merely emphasizes the noun to which it belongs. It may be used in any case.
 - a. **Vir ipse eum vidit**, *the man himself saw him.*
 - b. **Vir sē vidit**, *the man saw himself.*
 - c. **Virum ipsum vidimus**, *we saw the man himself.*

287. The preposition **cum** does not precede the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns, but is appended to them: **tēcum**, instead of **cum tē**; **nōbiscum**, instead of **cum nōbis**. So also **quibuscum**, *with whom*, instead of **cum quibus**.

288. Examine the following:

1. **Ego, qui haec faciō, tuus pater sum**, *I, who do this, am your father.*
2. **Vōs, qui haec facitis, mei amici estis**, *you, who do this, are my friends.*

Review 197. Observe that the verb of the relative clause agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

289.

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|---|
| dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus ,
<i>give up, surrender.</i> | commeātus, ūs, m. , <i>provisions, supplies.</i> |
| committō, ere, commisi, com-
missus , <i>intrust, commit</i> ; | spēs, ei, f. , <i>hope.</i> |
| proelium committō , <i>begin battle.</i> | sine , prep. with abl., <i>without.</i> |
| | ante , adv., and prep. with acc., <i>before.</i> |
| reciplo, ere, recepī, receptus ,
<i>take back, receive</i> ; | postea , adv., <i>afterwards.</i> |
| sē recipere , <i>retreat, betake one's self.</i> | autem , conj. (never the first word), <i>but, however.</i> |

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. mē recipiō, I retreat | nōs recipimus, we retreat |
| 2. tē recipis, you retreat | vōs recipitis, you retreat |
| 3. sē recipit, he retreats | sē recipiunt, they retreat |

290.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Omnis rei publicae spēs in militum virtūte posita¹ est. 2. Brevi tempore quattuor ē principibus Rōmam mitentur. 3. Caesarī plūs potestātis erat quam Pompēiō. 4. Haec rēs hostibus nūtiāta est, quōrum equitātus ā nostris summō in colle vidēbātur.

II. 1. Caesar was very powerful among the Romans on account of his bravery. 2. There our men fought very fiercely. 3. The line of battle that he had drawn up was next to the river. 4. It is very difficult to manage this.

291.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Sine vōbis miserrimī erimus. 2. Ego sum miles, tū es nauta. 3. Nōbīs est satis cibī. 4. Post id proelium hostēs domum sē recēpērunt. 5. Magnā cum celeritāte in prōvinciam nōs recipiēmus. 6. Vir sē culpat, ego autem eum laudō. 7. Ubi Gallī ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, sēsē dēdidērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnēs ad² sē convocārī iubet. 9. Paucīs ante diēbus lēgātum ipsum fugere coēgērunt. 10. Vōs quī haec fēcistis culpāre vōs dēbētis. 11. Quis tēcum Athēnās ibit?

II. 1. The enemy with whom you were fighting have retreated. 2. I shall compel the chief himself to come to me. 3. Caesar praised the plans that were reported to him. 4. You wish to retreat, but I wish to begin battle. 5. We shall always defend ourselves bravely. 6. The girl herself will defend him. 7. He will do this himself.

¹ depends. ² before.

LESSON 49

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. DATIVE OF SERVICE

292. The possessive adjectives are as follows. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1ST PER.	meus, ¹ a, um, <i>my,</i> <i>mine</i>	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
2D PER.	tuus, a, um, <i>your,</i> <i>yours</i>	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i>
3D PER.	suus, a, um, <i>his (own),</i> <i>her(own), its (own)</i>	suus, a, um, <i>their (own),</i> <i>their</i>

293. USE OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

1. They agree in gender, number, and case with the noun *to which they belong*, and not *with the noun to which they refer*. They are not used except for emphasis or contrast.

- a. **Suum patrem puella vidit,** *the girl saw her father.*
- b. **Vestrum amicum vidimus,** *we saw your (plur.) friend.*
- c. **Tuās filiās vidit,** *he saw your (sing.) daughters.*

2. **Suus, a, um,** is reflexive, and refers to the subject of the verb. When "his," "her," "its," "their," does not refer to the subject, use the genitive of **is, eius, his, her, its ; eōrum, their ; eārum, their** (referring to feminine).

- a. **Agricola suum equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (i.e. his own) horse.*
- b. **Agricola eius equum laudat,** *the farmer praises his (some one else's, not the farmer's) horse.*
- c. **Agricola eōrum equōs laudat,** *the farmer praises their horses.*
- d. **Agricolae suōs equōs laudant,** *the farmers praise their (their own) horses.*

¹ The vocative singular is **mī**.

294. Examine the following :

1. **Magnō ūsui nostris fuit**, *it was a great help to our men* (literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).
2. **Tertiam aciem nostris subsidiō misit**, *he sent the third line as a relief* (literally, *for a relief*) *to our men*.

Observe that the datives **magnō ūsui** and **subsidiō** denote the end or purpose, that for which a thing serves. This use of the dative is called the *dative of service* or *purpose*.

295. **RULE.** — **Dative of Service or Purpose.** — *The dative is used with sum and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it.*

296.

SUMMARY

	PERSONAL PRONOUNS	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES
FIRST PERSON	ego	mei ¹	meus, a, um, <i>my, mine</i> noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i>
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui ¹	tuus, a, um, <i>your, yours</i> (sing.) vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> (plur.)
THIRD PERSON	is, ea, id	sui ¹	suus, a, um, <i>his, his own, her, her own, its, its own, their, their own</i> (reflexive) When not reflexive, use the genitive of is, ea, id .

¹ Why is there no nominative form for reflexive pronouns?





Ruined Arches of the Claudian Aqueduct outside of Rome, to the south



Roman Baths at Bath, England

297.

VOCABULARY

redeō, redire, redii, reditūrus, <i>go back, return.</i>	opus, operis, n., <i>work, labor.</i>
dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus, <i>send off, dismiss, let go.</i>	tamen, adv., <i>yet, however,</i> <i>nevertheless.</i>
reddō, ere, reddidi, redditus, <i>give back, return, render.</i>	itaque, conj., <i>and so, there-</i> <i>fore.</i>
sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sus- tentus, <i>hold up, withstand,</i> <i>sustain.</i>	inde, adv., <i>thence, thereupon.</i> ūsus, ūs, m., <i>use, advantage,</i> <i>benefit.</i>

298.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Hoc mihi, illud tibi difficile est. 2. Postea in silvas sese reciperunt. 3. Nos de proelio certiores faciet. 4. Caesar eos sibi arma dedere cogit. 5. Milites se laudabant, eos autem culpabant. 6. Nobis Romae satis cibi est.

II. 1. Some retreated in one direction, some in another. 2. The Gauls themselves had been frightened by Caesar's soldiers. 3. He himself is praising himself. 4. Will you go with me to Corinth? 5. They ought themselves to fight.

299.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar equitatum auxilio suis misit. 2. Tui amici tibi, mei mihi sunt carissimi. 3. Labienus unum latus castrorum ripis fluminis muniēbat. 4. Haec res nostris magnō usui erat. 5. Impetum sustinere nō poterant; itaque in suos finēs redierunt. 6. Hostes Caesari se suaque omnia dēdidērunt. 7. Propter operis magnitudinem flumen transire Helvetii nō potuerunt. 8. Caesar eius milites dimisit, suos autem in castris tenuit. 9. Cōsul in finēs Helvetiōrum quam maximis itineribus contendere cōstituit. 10. Caesar Helvetiōs adventum suum expectare iussit.

II. 1. Caesar compelled the Gauls to surrender all their possessions.¹ 2. They will return everything to him. 3. The general sent three cohorts as a help to his men. 4. Thereupon the Gauls attacked the rear. 5. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify their camp.

LESSON 50

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE

300. Review 195, 216. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what* one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. Learn the declension of the following indefinite pronouns, carefully distinguishing the meanings (see 515):

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
quis	qua	quid (quod), <i>somebody, anybody</i>
aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod), <i>some one</i>
quisquam		quicquam, <i>any one</i> (at all) (no plur.)
quidam	quaedam	quoddam, quiddam, <i>a certain one</i>
quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque, <i>each one, every one</i>

1. The meanings of the neuter would be *something*, etc.
2. **Quisquam** and **quisque** are declined like **quis**.
3. In the neuter the **quid**-forms are used as pronouns, the **quod**-forms as adjectives.

301. USES OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. **Quis**, *some one, any one*, is never the first word in its clause. It is generally used only after **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**: **si quid his accidit**, *if anything happens to them*.

¹ Express by the neuter plural of the proper possessive adjective.

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *all, every*. It is not often used in the plural, and regularly follows the word to which it belongs.
3. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences: **nec quisquam hoc facit**, *and nobody does this*.
4. **Aliquis**, *some one or other, some one*, denotes some one whose identity is unknown: **aliquis tibi haec dixit**, *some one (I do not know who) told you this*.
5. **Quidam** denotes some one whose identity is known but is not fully revealed: **quidam haec mihi dixit**, *some one (I know who, but I will not tell) told me this*.

302. Examine the following:

1. **Vir summae virtutis fuit**, } *he was a man of very great*
2. **Vir summā virtute fuit**, } *courage.*

Observe that the genitive phrase **summae virtutis** and the ablative phrase **summā virtute** describe the noun **vir**; and that an adjective modifies the nouns **virtutis** and **virtute**.

303. RULE. — **Descriptive Genitive and Ablative.** — *The ablative or the genitive of a noun, if itself modified by an adjective or genitive, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by magnus, maximus, summus, tantus.*

304.

VOCABULARY

diligentia , ae, f., <i>carefulness, diligence, industry.</i>	aliēnus , a, um, <i>another's, strange, unfavorable.</i>
grātia , ae, f., <i>favor, influence, kindness.</i>	reperiō , ire, repperi, repertus, <i>find, discover, ascertain.</i>
plēbs , plēbis, f., <i>the common people.</i>	sī , conj., <i>if.</i>
	nisi , conj., <i>if not, unless, except.</i>

305.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Lēgātī sua omnia Caesarī dēdere iubentur. 2. Auxilium, quod ā Labiēnō missum erat, equitātui magnō ūsui fuit. 3. Legiōnī satis cibī nōn erat, itaque domum sē recēpit. 4. Galli sē suaque omnia Rōmānis dēdidērunt, quod magnitudīne eōrum operis terrēbantur. 5. Hostēs in nostram aciem impetum fēcerant.

II. 1. The general ordered the hostages to come before¹ him. 2. He will return to Rome and will see his father. 3. We all love our country. 4. We like our friends, you yours. 5. He praised his own children, but blamed hers.

306.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Quemque domō exire iubent. 2. Sī quis eius filiā laudat, laetus est. 3. Quīdam ex Gallis multā nocte ad Caesarem contendērunt. 4. Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs magnā grātiā erat. 5. Quis dē hostium cāsū aliquid novī² repperit? 6. Libērī quique³ pugnāre nōn poterant in ūnum locum convocātī erant. 7. Prīnceps propter dīligentiam magnae potestātis apud suōs fuit. 8. Neque (*and not*) ē proeliō tōtō diē quisquam discessit. 9. Sī aliēnō in locō proelium committent, vincentur. 10. Fīnitimī nostrī bonō animō⁴ esse in nōs dicuntur.

II. 1. Every one ought to love his country. 2. She is wretched, unless she hears something good² about her son. 3. A certain one of the merchants informed Caesar of this. 4. Caesar was a man of great influence among the common people. 5. Some fled in one direction, some in another.

¹ ad. ² See 250, 2. ³ quique (quī + que) = et si quī. ⁴ bonō animō, *well disposed*.

LESSON 51

PARTICIPLES. FORMS. DECLENSION. MEANINGS

307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participles may be formed from the stems that are obtained from the principal parts (86):

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	pres. stem + ns ¹	wanting
FUTURE	participial stem + ūrus	Gerundive. Pres. stem + ndus ¹
PERFECT	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Learn the participles, with their meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).
2. Participles ending in **-ns** are declined like adjectives of the third declension (504); those in **-us**, like **bonus** (62).

308. The participle is a *verbal adjective*. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, not absolutely, but *relatively*, that is, *with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The following examples will show how the time of the participle depends upon that of the main verb.

¹ *iō* verbs have a connecting vowel *e* before the ending; *i.e.* **audiēns. audiendus.**

1. **Videō eum id agentem**, *I see him as (while) he is doing it* (literally, *him doing it*).
2. **Vidēbam eum id agentem**, *I saw him as he was doing it*.
3. **Vidēbō eum id agentem**, *I shall see him as he will be doing it*.

309.

TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

1. *Present*: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
2. *Perfect*: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.
3. *Future*: expressing an action that is *subsequent to* (not yet done at) the time indicated by the tense of the main verb.

310. Form all the participles, giving the English meanings, of **dō**, *give*; **videō**, *see*; **faciō**, *make, do*; **mūniō**, *fortify*; **eō**, *go*. (525.)

311. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. In Latin the participle is used to express ideas that are often expressed in English by a relative clause, by clauses beginning with "when," "after," "since," "although," "while," "if," etc. Study carefully the following examples, which show the various relations that the participle expresses:

1. **Militēs missōs nōn culpāvit**, *he did not blame the soldiers who had been sent* (lit., *the soldiers sent*). This use is not common; a relative clause is generally used.
2. **Vidēbam eōs id agentēs**, *I saw them as (or when) they were doing this*.
3. **Caesar cōsul factus in Galliam contendit**, *Caesar, after he had been made consul, hastened into Gaul* (literally, *Caesar having been made consul*, etc.).
4. **Galli his rēbus permōti obsidēs misērunt**, *the Gauls, since*

(or because) they were alarmed by these things, sent hostages (literally, the Gauls having been alarmed, etc.).

5. **Orgetorix damnātus interficiētur**, if Orgetorix is condemned, he will be killed (literally, Orgetorix having been condemned will be killed).
6. **Vulnerātus diū pugnābat**, although he had been wounded, he fought for a long time (literally, having been wounded, he fought).
7. **Multōs vicōs captōs incendit**, he captured and burned many villages (literally, he burned many captured villages).

312.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., *approach*.

vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, earth-works*.

posterus, a, um, *next, following*.

circum, prep. with acc., *around*.

permoveō, ēre, **permōvi**, **permōtus**, *influence, arouse*.

circumveniō, ire, **circumvēni**, **circumventus**, *come around, surround*.

ēducō, ere, **ēdūxi**, **ēductus**, *lead out*.

laccessō, ere, **laccessivi**, **laccessitus**, *attack, harass*.

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Sequani* (a tribe of Gauls).

313.

REVIEW EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Hic grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat**.
2. **Gallī cōsiliū cēpērunt quod Rōmānīs nōn grātum erat**.
3. **Sī quid repertum est, Caesarī semper nūntiātur**.
4. **Suam quisque melius quam aliēnam patriam amat**.
5. **Hominēs summae virtūtis esse dicuntur**.

- II. 1. Caesar has been informed of his arrival.
2. The day that Caesar had appointed¹ with the ambassadors came.
3. He ordered the hostages to come to him.
4. He carried all his possessions with him.

¹ cōstituō.

314.

EXERCISES

I. 1. His rēbus permōti Rōmā exīre mātūrant. 2. In lē gātōs cōpiās ē castris ēdūcentēs Gallī impetum fēcērunt. 3. Posterō diē nostrōs aditūs oppidi mūnientēs hostēs laces- sent. 4. Rōmānī hanc urbem vāllō et moenibus mūnitam obsidēre cōstituērunt. 5. Caesar, duōs diēs ā dextrō cornū lacessitus impetum sustinēre poterat. 6. Legiōnēs ē castris ēductās instrūxit. 7. Suum amīcum domō exeuntem videt. 8. Principēs Gallōrum victi Rōmam mittentur. 9. Caesar dē coniūrātiōne quam Gallī fēcērant certior factus est. 10. Lē- gātus Gallōs quī castra circumveniēbant sēsē dēdere coēgit.

II. 1. When Caesar had been informed¹ of this, he hur- ried to Rome. 2. The general captured² their town and fortified it. 3. The enemy harassed us as we were crossing³ the river. 4. If you are defeated,⁴ you will retreat into Italy. 5. Who will go with me into that city that you see? 6. Al- though we have been surrounded,⁵ we will fight bravely.

¹ 311, 3.² 311, 7.³ 311, 2.⁴ 311, 5.⁵ 311, 6.

(READING SELECTION 457)

*A Siege*

LESSON 52

THE PARTICIPLE (CONTINUED). ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

315. **Ablative Absolute.** — A noun or a pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the ideas mentioned in 311. This construction will be understood best by a careful study of the following examples :

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1. Caesar, Germānis victis, in hiberna vēnit, | <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>after the Germans had been conquered,
when he had conquered the Germans,
after conquering the Germans,
having conquered the Germans,
now that the Germans had been conquered,
the Germans having been conquered,</i> </div> | <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>Caesar went into winter quarters.</i> </div> |
| 2. Oppidō expugnātō, hostēs vincent, | <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>if the town is captured,
by capturing the town,
since the town has been captured,
the town having been captured,</i> </div> | <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>they will conquer the enemy.</i> </div> |
| 3. Nōbis castra mūnientibus, Galli pervēnērunt, | <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>while we were fortifying the camp,
as we were fortifying the camp,</i> </div> | <div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px;"> <i>the Gauls arrived.</i> </div> |

Observe that the ablative absolutes, **Germānis victis, oppidō expugnātō, nobis mūnientibus**, are translated in a variety of ways. In translating an ablative absolute, one must use judgment in selecting a translation that is consistent with the meaning of the main verb.

Notice that the ablative absolute construction is used only when the participle does not agree with a noun of the main clause (the word "absolute" means that the ablative phrase stands by itself). For example, such a sentence as "When the Gauls had been conquered, they returned home" would be rendered, **Galli victi domum rediērunt**, and the ablative absolute construction would not be used, because it is possible to make **victi** agree with **Galli**, which is the subject of **rediērunt**.

316. Since the verb **sum** has no present participle, two substantives, or a substantive or pronoun and an adjective, are sometimes used in the ablative absolute construction.

Duce Caesare Rōmāni semper vincēbant,	{	<i>lit. Caesar (being) leader, under the leadership of Caesar, if Caesar was their leader, when Caesar was their leader,</i>	<i>the Romans always used to conquer.</i>
--	---	---	---

317. Remember that the Latin perfect participle is *passive*, there being no perfect active participle. The ablative absolute is often used to supply this lack of a perfect active participle; for example, the sentence "Caesar having done this returned to Rome" cannot be expressed literally in Latin. It must be changed to the passive form, "This having been done, Caesar returned to Rome," and then it may be rendered: **hōc factō, Caesar Rōmam rediit**.

318.

VOCABULARY

mulier, mulieris, f., woman.

signum, i, n., sign, ensign, standard (of the legion).

quam primum, as soon as possible.

tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus, lift up, raise, remove, take away.

redūcō, ere, redūxi, reductus, lead back.

obtinēō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus, possess, obtain, retain.

convertō, ere, converti, conversus, turn about, change.

signa convertō, face about (literally, *turn the standards about*).

occidō, ere, occidi, occisus, cut down, kill, slay.

inquam, inquit, def., say.

319.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Legiōnem auxiliō nostris diū lacessitis misit. 2. Caesar hostium clamoribus permotus munire aditus castrorum coepit. 3. Consul legatum secum redire Romam iubebit. 4. Equitatus Gallōs nostra castra circumvenientēs lacessēbat. 5. Legatus nihil novī repperit.

II. 1. After the Helvetiī had been defeated, they were compelled to return home. 2. He led his forces out of the camp and drew them up. 3. Although many of our men had been wounded they fought bravely. 4. The Gauls could not fortify the mountain themselves.

320.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Tē imperātore, nōs nōn dēdēmus. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, suōs in hiberna redūxit. 3. His rēbus Caesar factis quam primum Rōmā exiit. 4. Peditēs in castra reductōs hostēs moenibus prohibēre dux iubet. 5. Suis¹ ā Gallis permotis¹ Caesar "Impetum" inquit "hostium exspectare est difficile." 6. Novissimum agmen, signis conversis, laces-

¹ Is this ablative absolute?

sere Helvētiōs imperātor iubet. 7. Caesarī Rōmam redire coāctō hoc proelium nūntiātum erat. 8. Hostēs, multīs occīsīs, fortiter nostrum impetum sustinēbant. 9. Omni spē victōriæ sublātā, Helvētīi cum mulieribus liberisque domum rediērunt. 10. Oppidum quod Galli mūnierant ā Rōmānis incēsum est.

II. 1. Having fought this battle,¹ Caesar led his forces across the river. 2. If you are brave, the republic will be preserved. 3. When the hostages had been freed, they returned to their people. 4. When the leader of the enemy had been killed, the Gauls crossed the river. 5. The Romans faced about and bravely attacked the enemy. 6. After the top of the hill had been fortified, we awaited the enemy. 7. When the Romans had fortified the hill, they returned to their camp. 8. Having burned your villages, we shall kill your leader.

LESSON 53

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VII

CAESAR ATTEMPTS TO CHECK THE MARCH OF THE HELVETII. THEY SEND AMBASSADORS TO HIM

321. His rēbus nūntiātīs Caesar mātūrat Rōmā exīre atque quam maximīs itineribus ad² Genāvam contendit. Erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna.³ Quā⁴ rē prōvinciam tōtam praeberē quam maximum mīlitum numerum et pontem quī erat ad Genāvam rescindī iubet. Ubi dē

¹ = *this battle having been made.*

² *towards.*

³ *but (only) one.*

⁴ *Quā rē, therefore.*

eius adventū Helvētīi certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitatīs. Qui¹ lēgāti iter per prōvinciam Rōmānam ā Caesare postulant. Sed temporibus antiquīs Helvētīi cōnsulem Cassium occiderant exercitumque eius sub iugum mīserant. Quā rē Caesar hominibus inīnicō animō² iter per prōvinciam nōn dedit. Tamen diem conloquiō cum lēgātīs cōstituit.

LESSON 54

INFINITIVES. FORMATION AND MEANINGS

322. Review 182, 183, 184, 307. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be obtained from the principal parts :

INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	Second one of the principal parts.	Change final e of present infinitive to i , except in third conjugation, which changes final ere to i .
FUTURE	Future active participle and esse .	Supine in -um (which is the same form as accusative singular neuter of perfect passive participle), and iri .
PERFECT	Perfect stem + isse .	Perfect passive participle and esse .

¹ The relative often stands at the beginning of a sentence where English uses a personal pronoun or a demonstrative with or without *and*; hence *Qui lēgāti* = *these ambassadors*.

² See 303.

1. Learn the infinitives, with English meanings, of the model verbs (516-520).

323. Form all participles and infinitives, giving the English meanings, of

vinciō, *bind.*

iubeō, *order.*

relinquō, *leave.*

sum, *I am* (521).

iaciō, *throw.*

appellō, *name, call.*

vincō, *conquer.*

eō, *go* (525).

324.

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, *ātis*, f., *reputation, influence, authority.*

littera, *ae*, f., *letter of the alphabet; (plur.), letter, document.*

rēs frūmentāria, *rei frūmentāriae*, *supplies of grain, provisions.*

cottidiānus, *a, um*, *daily.*

* **scribō**, *ere*, **scripsī**, **scriptus**, *write.*

cadō, *ere*, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, *fall, perish, die.*

at, *conj.*, *but.*

numquam, *adv.*, *never.*

325.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli cōnsulem cōpiās instruentem lacesivērunt.
2. Rōmānī, signīs conversīs, oppidum ex itinere oppugnāvērunt. 3. Caesare cōsule Helvētīi coniūrātiōnem faciēbant. 4. Germānī victī finitimōs virtūte superābant. 5. Nostri autem multās mulierēs captās domum misērunt.

II. 1. If I am your leader, will you attack the enemy?
2. The women could do this themselves. 3. After they had slain a few of the enemy, the soldiers were led back to camp. 4. And so the hope of the Gauls was taken away.

326.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Scribī; sustulisse; cāsūrum esse. 2. Instruī; prohibuisse; missōs esse; prohibērī. 3. Capi; cēpī; reddidisse; dēdidisse. 4. Missūram esse; mīsisse; redūci. 5. Paucī dē filiis occīsi esse dicuntur. 6. Numquam culpārī cupimus. 7. Galli ā finitimīs cottidiānis proeliīs lacessīti ex suis finibus discēdere coepērunt. 8. Caesar multās literās scripsisse dicēbātur. 9. Frūmentum ad Caesarem nāvibus portārī nōn poterat. 10. At decem ē nostrīs cecidisse in hōc proeliō dicuntur.

II. 1. He is said to be a man of great reputation. 2. Those women are said to have been sent to Rome. 3. This place cannot be taken by storm by the enemy on account of its very large ramparts. 4. You were compelled to retreat into the province. 5. Caesar ordered the ships to be burned. 6. This is said to have been a great advantage to them.

(READING SELECTION 458)

LESSON 55

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE STATEMENTS

327. The words or thoughts of a person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (*i.e.* direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (*i.e.* indirect discourse) is one in which instead of the original words or thoughts we have their substance (general sense) stated in the words of another.

The English sentence, "I am present," when quoted directly, is stated thus: "He said, 'I am present.'" When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: "He said that he

was present," or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, "He says that he is present." An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, "He says (that) he is coming."

328. Examine carefully the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

tū venis, you are coming.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**dicit tē venire, he says that
you are coming, or he says
you are coming.**

Note

1. That the English generally expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that" (expressed or understood).
2. That there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English.
3. That the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, and changes the case of the subject to the accusative.

329. RULE. — Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

330. Review 308. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. Like the tenses of the participle, they merely denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action as *going on at the time* of the main verb, the perfect as *completed by (before) that time*, the future as *not yet begun at that time*.

The following examples will show to what tenses of the infinitive the various tenses of the indicative are changed :

TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
PRESENT	veniō, I am coming	<p>PRESENT videt mē venire, he sees that I am coming</p> <p>PAST vidit mē venire, he saw that I was coming</p>
IMPERFECT	veniēbam, I was coming	<p>PRESENT audit mē vēnisse, he hears that I came, or have come</p> <p>PAST audivit mē vēnisse, he heard that I came, or had come</p>
PERFECT	vēni, I have come, I came	
PLUPERFECT	vēneram, I had come	
FUTURE	veniam, I shall come	<p>PRESENT spērat mē ventūrum (esse), he hopes that I shall come</p> <p>PAST spērāvit mē ventūrum (esse), he hoped that I should come</p>

CAUTION. — In indirect discourse the subject of the infinitive should never be omitted.

331.

VOCABULARY

existimō, āre, āvi, ātus, think, <i>believe, suppose.</i>	trādō, ere, trādidi, trāditus, <i>give up, surrender, de-</i> <i>live.</i>
dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus, <i>point out, show, mention.</i>	cōspectus, ūs, m., sight, <i>view.</i>
spērō, āre, āvi, ātus, hope.	
respondeō, ēre, respondi, re- spōnsum, answer, reply.	complūrēs, a (ia), a great many, very many.
sciō, scire, scivī, scītus, know, <i>know how.</i>	

332.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Gallī sē domum recipiunt. 2. Caesar Gallōs sē domum recipere dixit. 3. Nostra arma numquam trādēmus. 4. Respondēmus nostra arma numquam nōs trāditūrōs (esse). 5. Sē in cōspectū suī¹ imperātōris pugnāvisse miles existimāvit. 6. Armīs trāditīs, in Caesaris potestātem Gallī vēnerant. 7. Caesar nūntiāvit Gallōs, armīs trāditīs, in suam potestātem vēnisse. 8. Omnēs scīmus hanc rem ā lēgātō bene administrātam esse. 9. Caesar suis "Quis scit" inquit "hunc pontem facere?" 10. Imperātōrī nūntiātum est complūrēs aliōs aliam in partem fugere. 11. Lēgātī respondērunt "Nōs ā finitimīs nostrīs diū lacessitī sumus."

II. 1. The gods will give us help. 2. They thought that the gods would give them help. 3. We have shown that the Gauls were men of the greatest² courage. 4. They said that many had not come. 5. We can do this ourselves. 6. They said they could do this themselves. 7. Caesar replied, "I hope that they will retreat."

¹ The reflexive pronouns and adjectives in an indirect statement usually refer to the subject of the main verb of "saying," "thinking," etc. See 286, 3.

² Do not use **maximus**. See 302, 1.

LESSON 56

DEPONENT VERBS. ABLATIVE WITH *ûtor*, *fruo*, Etc.

333. Deponent verbs have *passive forms* with *active meanings*. These passive forms are regular in their formation and inflection, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are as follows :

	PRESENT IND.	PRESENT INF.	PERFECT IND.
1ST CONJ.	hortor	hortârî	hortâtus sum, <i>I urge, encourage</i>
2D CONJ.	vereor	verêrî	veritus sum, <i>I fear</i>
3D CONJ.	sequor	sequî	secûtus sum, <i>I follow</i>
4TH CONJ.	potior	potîrî	potitus sum, <i>I get possession of</i>

1. Learn all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of these four model verbs. (528.)

334. Deponent verbs have a *future active* infinitive instead of a future passive, and they have the *participles* of both *active* and *passive* voices.

335. Review 317. The perfect passive participle of a deponent verb is *active* in meaning.

Cohortâtus militês proelium commisit, *after encouraging* (literally, *having encouraged*) *his soldiers, he began the battle.*

336. Examine the following :

1. **Equis ûtuntur**, *they use horses.*
2. **Vitâ fruitur**, *he enjoys life.*

Observe that **equis** and **vitâ** are ablatives, although the corresponding words in English are the direct objects of their verbs.

337. RULE. — Ablative with Certain Verbs. — *The ablative is used with the deponent verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor, and their compounds.*

338.

VOCABULARY

ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, <i>use,</i>	proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, <i>set out, march, go.</i>
sequor, sequi, secutus sum, <i>follow.</i>	arbitror, āri, ātus sum, <i>think, suppose.</i>
cohortor, āri, ātus sum, <i>encourage, exhort.</i>	* pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus, <i>expel, drive away, rout.</i>
potior, potiri, potitus sum, <i>get possession of.</i>	praesidium, i, n., <i>defense, guard, garrison.</i>
fossa, ae, f., <i>ditch, trench.</i>	

339.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar complūrēs sēcum in Ītaliā itūrōs (esse) sciēbat. 2. Hōc proeliō factō, hostēs sē recipere coācti sunt. 3. Lēgātī dēmōnstrant sibi esse multōs equitēs. 4. Incolae respondērunt sēsē multum frūmentum dedisse. 5. Lēgātus sē expugnāre oppidum posse spērat.

II. 1. The Gauls thought Caesar would not fight with them. 2. All those arms that you see have been given up. 3. Caesar saw that the enemy were being drawn up on top of the hill. 4. The ambassadors replied that many were leaving their homes.

340.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Arbitrāris; ūtiminī; proficiscētur; proficiscitur. 2. Pepulerāmus; arbitrārī; arbitrāre; ūsūrum esse. 3. Caesar sē cum tribus legiōnibus secūtūrum (esse) dixit. 4. Cōsul Rōmā profectus in finēs Helvētiōrum contendit. 5. Germānī ūsī esse parvis equis dicuntur. 6. Cōsul,

cuius exercitus pulsus est, ā cīvibus culpābitur. 7. Commeātus, quō nostrī ūtēbantur, multā nocte incēnsus est. 8. Gallī oppidum vāllō fossāque mūnīrī arbiṭrābantur. 9. Hostēs potīrī castrīs nōn posse dux vidit. 10. Quattuor cohortēs praesidiō castrīs Labiēnus reliquit.

II. 1. After encouraging his men, Caesar got possession of the town. 2. For many days the horsemen who were following harassed the rear. 3. He will use these legions as a garrison. 4. Caesar set¹ out from the city, and began to wage war with the Helvetii. 5. It is reported that Labienus has routed the brave Gauls.

LESSON 57

Ferō AND fiō. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES

341. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, infinitive, and participle of **ferō** (527) and **fiō** (526).

1. Review the conjugation of **faciō** (177-179), and note that **fiō** is used as the passive of **faciō**.

342. Examine the following :

1. **Nōbīs persuādent**, *they persuade us.*
2. **Imperātōrī pāret**, *he obeys the commander.*

Observe that **nōbīs** and **imperātōrī** are datives, while the corresponding English words are the objects of their verbs.

343. RULE.—Dative with Verbs. — *Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

¹Use a participle.

344.

VOCABULARY

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear,	fiō, fieri, factus sum, become,
<i>carry.</i>	<i>be made.</i>
cōferō, cōferre, contuli,	persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, per-
conlātus, bring together,	suāsum (w. dat.), persuade.
<i>gather.</i>	pāreō, ēre, pārui, — (w. dat.),
nēmō, dat. nēminī (no gen.	<i>obey.</i>
or abl.), no one, nobody.	noceō, ēre, nocui, nocitūrus
moror, āri, ātus sum, delay,	(w. dat.), harm, injure.
<i>hinder. [resist, oppose.</i>	crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditum
resistō, ere, restiti, — (w. dat.),	(w. dat.), believe, trust.

345.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Nostrī equitātum Gallōrum tria mīllia passuum secūtī populērunt. 2. Caesar certior factus est Gallōs ex vicō profectōs (esse). 3. Labiēnus urbe vāllō et fossā mūnītā potitur. 4. Prīncipēs Helvētiōrum suōs cohortātī nostrum impetum fortissimē sustinēbant. 5. Caesar suōs ex castrīs ēductōs instrui iubet.

II. 1. They informed us that the enemy were preparing to make an attack. 2. On leaving¹ the camp, our men crossed a river that was twenty feet wide. 3. After fortifying the camp, the Romans awaited their attack. 4. He said they ought to come to him.

346.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Impedimentis in ūnum locum conlātis, nostrī aciem instrūxērunt. 2. Pārere suō quisque imperātōrī dēbet. 3. Ad castra multōs diēs morātī Gallī domum sē recēpērunt. 4. Persuādere nōs eis numquam poterimus. 5. Nēmō ei haec dicentī crēdit. 6. Oppidum expugnārī nōn poterat, quod

¹ Use the ablative absolute.



Porta Maggiore, Rome

Over the Arches of the Gate are two Aqueducts. In front of the right-hand Arch is the Tomb of a Government Bread Contractor



Part of Frieze on Bread Contractor's Tomb at the Porta Maggiore

Reading from right to left we see men grinding grain into flour, sifting it, molding the loaves, and putting them into the oven

incolae nostris fortiter resistebant. 7. Boni libri nemini nocent. 8. Caesar litteris Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas (*Belgians*) contra populum Romanum coniurationem facere. 9. Quare (*therefore*) Caesar ad eos proficisci constituit. 10. Itaque re frumentaria comparata, castra movet, diebusque quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

II. 1. They inform Caesar; Caesar is informed by them. 2. They said that a conspiracy was being formed. 3. No one could persuade him. 4. Children ought to obey their elders.¹ 5. I believe that they will injure us. 6. After fortifying the camp, Caesar encouraged his men.

(READING SELECTION 459)

LESSON 58

READING LESSON

CHAPTER VIII

CAESAR ERECTS FORTIFICATIONS. THE HELVETII ATTEMPT TO CROSS THE RHONE, BUT ARE REPELLED

347. Interea ea legione quam secum habebat militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant murum pedes sedecim altum et fossam a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, perducit. Eo opere perfecto et castellis munitis, facile eos prohibere potest. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum redierunt, negat² se posse iter ulli per provinciam dare. Helvetii autem, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, perrumpere conati³ operis munitione⁴ et militum telis repulsi sunt.

¹ See 272, *senex*. ² *negat se posse*, says he cannot (literally, denies that he can). ³ From *cōnor*, a deponent verb. ⁴ Can you not infer its meaning from the verb *mūniō*?

LESSON 59

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE. CLAUSES
OF PURPOSE

348. Learn the present tense, active and passive, of the subjunctive of the model verbs of the four conjugations (516–520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **fiō** (526).

No meanings for the subjunctive are given, because the translations vary according to the construction used. These meanings will be understood as the various uses of the subjunctive are taken up in the succeeding lessons.

1. Compare carefully the forms of the present subjunctive of the third and fourth conjugations with those of the future indicative.
2. Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the indicative.
3. The following table will assist in fixing in mind the forms of the first person singular :

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

CONJUGATION	I	II	III	IV
ACTIVE	-em	-eam	-am, -iam	-iam
PASSIVE	-er	-ear	-ar, -iar	-iar

349. A sentence consisting of a main (or independent) clause and one or more dependent (or subordinate) clauses is called a complex sentence. In the following examples the dependent verbs are italicized :

When he *arrived* it was late.

He was so tired that he *went* to sleep.

He came that he *might see* me.

The common uses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are considered in this lesson and those following. Its uses in independent clauses are treated in Lessons 67, 71, 72, 73.

350. Examine the following :

1. **Rōmam venit ut suum amicum videat**, *he comes to Rome that he may see his friend, in order that he may see his friend, in order to see his friend, to see his friend, for the purpose of seeing his friend.*
2. **Vir in urbem fugit nē interficiātur**, *the man flees into the city that he may not be killed, so that he may not be killed, in order not to be killed, lest he be killed.*
- a. Observe that the verbs of the dependent clauses **ut suum amicum videat** and **nē interficiātur** are subjunctive, and that they express the *purpose* of the action of the main clauses, **ut** (*that*) introducing an affirmative and **nē** (*that . . . not*) a negative clause.
- b. Notice that the purpose clauses may be translated in a variety of ways. Purpose clauses may be translated by the English infinitive, but *never use the Latin infinitive to express purpose.*

351. **RULE.**—**Subjunctive of Purpose.**—*Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with ut if the purpose clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with nē if the purpose clause is negative.*

352. Review the principal parts and meanings of :

cōficiō	dēdō	accēdō	proficīscor	ferō
committō	reddō	potior	ūtor	persuādeō
convertō	redeō	sequor	cadō	noceō
cohortor	reducō	sciō	tollō	scribō
agō	reperiō	trādō	obsideō	arbitror
crēdō	laccessō	pellō	instruō	fiō

353.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Mulieribus liberisque in ūnum locum convocātis, Gallī impetum nostrōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. 2. Ubi Rōmānī ad eōrum finēs pervēnērunt, Gallī eis restitērunt. 3. Lēgātus suum quemque cibum portāre iubet. 4. Orgetorīgis filia ā Rōmānīs capta certior fiēbat nēminem sibi nocitūrum (esse). 5. Quis ūtī illō equō potuit?

II. 1. He is informed that Labienus has persuaded the Gauls. 2. On the next day the Romans will get possession of their camp. 3. He did not believe his father. 4. He did not believe his father would return.

354.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar ad primum agmen proficiscitur ut suōs cohortētur. 2. Nostrī, signīs conversīs, pellere Gallōs coepērunt. 3. Lēgātum in Galliam proficiscī iubet nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia convocentur. 4. Ibi rēx paucōs diēs morātur ut oppidum obsideat. 5. Redimus domum nē ab hostibus occidāmur. 6. Gallī magnās cōpiās ūnum in locum convocant ut bellum gerant. 7. Manēsne domī ut litterās amicīs scribās? 8. Lēgātī in castra redeunt ut Caesarī persuādeant. 9. Nōs sequiminī ut aliquid reperiātis. 10. Arbitror Gallōs accēdere ut obsidēs redant.

II. 1. They are coming in order that they may be praised. 2. Caesar hurries into the province to wage war with the Gauls. 3. They are surrendering all their possessions to Caesar in order not to be killed. 4. We write many letters to persuade our friends. 5. He knew that they would not believe him. 6. You are waiting in Rome that you may not be conquered.

LESSON 60

SUBJUNCTIVE (CONTINUED). IMPERFECT. RESULT
CLAUSES

355. The first person singular of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings **-m** (active), **-r** (passive), to the present active infinitive.

PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

amāre

mūnīre

monēre

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

amārem amārer

mūnīrem mūnīrer

monērem monērer

1. Learn the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of the four model verbs (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **possum** (522); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527).

356. Notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of the main verb. Observe the difference as shown in these examples :

They shouted (so) that he might hear. (Purpose.)

They shouted so that he heard. (Result.)

He was so tired that he could not go. (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so*, *such*, *in such a way*, etc., is often used in the main clause to show that a result clause may be expected to follow.

357. Examine the following :

1. **Flūmen tam lātum est ut Galli trānsire nōn possint**, *the river is so wide that the Gauls cannot cross.*

2. **Flūmen tam lātum fuit ut Galli trānsire nōn possent,**
the river was so wide that the Gauls could not cross.
3. **Nostrī tam fortiter pugnābant ut hostēs sē reciperent,**
our men fought so bravely that the enemy retreated.
4. **Tam graviter vulnerātī erant ut pugnāre nōn possent,**
they had been so severely wounded that they could not fight.
- a. Observe that the above clauses beginning with **ut** express the *result*, and that the verbs are *subjunctive*.
- b. Observe that when the main verb is *present* tense the dependent subjunctive is *present* tense, and that when the main verb is either *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect* (*i.e.* any tense expressing past time), the dependent subjunctive is *imperfect*.
- c. Observe that the tense of the subjunctive is not necessarily the same as that of the main verb.

These principles (*b*, *c*) are true also for purpose clauses.

358. RULE. — Subjunctive of Result. — *Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with ut if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with ut nōn if the result clause is negative.*

359.

VOCABULARY

cōsequor, cōsequī, cōsecū-	dēditō, ōnis, f.,
tus sum, pursue, overtake.	surrender.
prōgredior, prōgredi, prō-	calamitās, ātis, f.,
gressus sum, advance, pro-	disaster,
ceed.	defeat.
* audeō, ēre, ausus ¹ sum, dare.	tantus, a, um, so great, such.
accipiō, ere, accēpi, acceptus,	tam, adv., so (with adjectives
receive.	and adverbs).
castellum, i, n., fort, redoubt.	ita, adv., thus, so.
	timor, ōris, m., fear.

¹ A semi-deponent verb; *i.e.* the present stem is active, and the perfect stem passive.

360.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Germānī in Galliam trāseunt ut eōrum finēs vāstent. 2. Vicis multis et parvis incēnsis, Labiēnus urbem pulcherrimam obsidēbat. 3. Arbitrāmur nōs eōrum castris potiri posse. 4. Equitātus sociōrum Caesarī magnō ūsuī fuit. 5. Caesar ex castris profectus in Helvētiōs flūmen trāseuntēs impetum faciet.

II. 1. Each soldier ought to obey his general. 2. The enemy are following us to harass the rear. 3. You are doing this for the sake of harming me. 4. I am informed that the enemy have taken possession of the top of the hill.

361.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Equitātus prōgressus erat ut Gallōs fugientis cōsequerētur. 2. Oppidum ita ā militibus mūnītur ut expugnāri nōn possit. 3. Omnēs quī trānsire Rhodanum ausi sunt tēlis et sagittis vulnerābantur. 4. Tantus erat Helvētiōrum timor ut sē suaque omnia dēderent. 5. Caesar castra movet nē hostēs inter sē et flūmen sint. 6. Galli ita operis magnitudine permovēbantur ut arma lēgātō trāderent. 7. Haec urbs castellis mūnīta est nē ā Rōmānīs caperētur. 8. Haec urbs castellis ita mūnīta est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn caperētur. 9. Labiēnus in eōrum finēs decem diēs prōgressus multās civitatēs in dēditionem accēpit. 10. Tantus hostium erat numerus ut sinistrum cornū circumvenīre possent.

II. 1. We shall never dare to do it on account of the width of the river. 2. The road is so narrow that the enemy cannot advance. 3. Such was the depth of the river that they could not cross. 4. We were sent to carry the children back to Rome. 5. The river was so wide and deep that they used ships.

(READING SELECTION 460)

LESSON 61

Volō. Nōlō. Mālō. RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

362. Learn the principal parts and all forms of the indicative, present and imperfect subjunctive, infinitive, and participle of **volō, nōlō, mālō** (524). Observe that **nōlō** is a compound of **nōn** and **volō**, and **mālō** a compound of **magis, more** (shortened to **ma**), and **volō**. Note the irregularities in the present tense of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive.

363. Examine the following :

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Princeps lēgātōs misit ut pācem peterent, | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the chief sent} \\ \text{ambassadors to} \\ \text{ask for peace.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| 2. Princeps lēgātōs misit quī pācem peterent, | |

The English translation of these sentences is the same, and the verbs of the purpose clauses are subjunctive. In 2, however, **quī** is used instead of **ut** to emphasize the ambassadors as the persons who have the purpose to perform.

364. RULE. — Relative Clause of Purpose. — Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion.

365.**VOCABULARY**

petō, ere, petivi (ii), petitus,	praemittō, ere, praemisi, prae-
aim at, ask for, go to get.	missus, send ahead, dis-
volō, velle, volui, —, be will-	patch.
ing, wish, will.	celeriter, adv. (celer, swift),
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, be un-	swiftly, quickly.
willing, will not.	senātus, ūs, m., senate.
mālō, mālle, mālui, —, be	dē tertiā vigiliā, about the
more willing, prefer.	third watch (a watch was
impediō, ire, impedivi, impe-	equal to one fourth of the
ditus, entangle, impede.	night).

366.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Flūmen Rhodanum trānsierant nē ā Caesaris equitibus caperentur. 2. Nostrī tam ācriter pugnābant ut Helvētīi aliī aliam in partem fugerent. 3. Equitātus hostēs in fugam datōs cōsequī nōn audēbat. 4. Caesar dē Gallōrum dēditionē certior factus legiōnēs in hiberna redūxit. 5. Labiēnus sē nōn posse Gallis crēdere arbitrābātur.

II. 1. That they might sustain our attack for a long time, the Gauls had gathered a great abundance of grain. 2. Such was the speed of our cavalry that they overtook the enemy. 3. They will not try to resist our soldiers. 4. Are you (plur.) returning to the city to warn your friends?

367.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Nōluisse; māvultis; nolumus. 2. Māvis; nōlēs; mālunt. 3. Imperātor militēs praemisit quī castra pōnerent. 4. Gallī victī petere pācem nōlunt. 5. Multī esse cum Caesare quam Rōmam redire mālēbant. 6. Helvētīi lēgātōs mittunt ut iter per Sēquanōrum finēs facere possint. 7. Caesar equitēs quī Gallōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesse-
rent praemiserat. 8. Germānī lēgātōs mīsērunt quī dīxērunt¹ sē petere pācem velle. 9. Caesar hīs rēbus ita permovēbātur ut quam celerrimē ad suōs contenderet. 10. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnus eōs quī hostēs cōsequerentur praemisit.

II. 1. We are unwilling to obey him. 2. Caesar sends ahead horsemen to burn the villages. 3. We are returning to Rome to persuade the senate. 4. The Helvetii

¹ Notice how the translation of the indicative, *dīxērunt*, differs from that of the subjunctive, *dīcerent*.

preferred to seek peace rather than to be killed by the Romans. 5. Why are you unwilling to remain at home? 6. Although¹ a great defeat had been received, the Gauls did not wish to surrender their arms.

LESSON 62

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

368. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the model verbs (516-520); of **sum** (521); of **eō** (525); of **ferō** (527); of **possum** (522); of **fiō** (526); of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (524).

Observe that the first person of the perfect active subjunctive of all verbs may be found by adding **-erim** to the perfect stem; that the pluperfect active subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the perfect active infinitive; that the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive are compound forms, like the same tenses of the indicative.

369. Examine the following:

DIRECT QUESTION

Ubi sunt? *where are they?*
Quid facit? *what is he doing?*

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō ubi sint, *I know where they are.*
Vidimus quid faceret, *we saw what he was doing.*

Observe that when a direct question is asked indirectly, depending upon some introductory verb, the verb of the original direct question becomes subjunctive in the indirect.

¹ See 311, 6; 315.

CAUTION. — Do not confuse an indirect question with an indirect statement (327). Indirect questions may be recognized by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

INDIRECT QUESTION

Sciō quis veniat,
I know who is coming.

INDIRECT STATEMENT

Sciō eum venire,
I know (that) he is coming.

370. RULE. — Indirect Question. — *The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.*

371. It has been noticed in the three preceding lessons that the tense of a dependent subjunctive depends upon the tense of the verb of the main clause. This use of the tenses follows a principle called the *Sequence of Tenses*, a principle that is familiar from English usage. Compare:

He *comes* that I *may* see him.
 He *came* that I *might* see him.

The change from *may* to *might* accompanies the change of the main verb from *comes* to *came*. This change of tenses, therefore, is not peculiar to Latin.

372. All tenses are divided into two classes, as follows:

Primary or principal tenses, denoting present or future time.	{	Present Indicative, Perfect Indicative, some- times, when it means <i>have</i> , Future Indicative, Future Perfect Indicative, Present Subjunctive, Perfect Subjunctive.
---	---	--

Secondary or historical tenses, denoting past time.	{ Imperfect Indicative, Perfect Indicative, Pluperfect Indicative, Imperfect Subjunctive, Pluperfect Subjunctive.
--	---

373. Examine the following :

- | | | | | |
|----|---|--|---|---|
| 1. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid faciam, <i>what I am</i>
<i>doing.</i> |
| 2. | { | Videt, <i>he sees,</i>
Vidēbit, <i>he will see,</i>
Viderit, <i>he will have seen,</i> | } | quid fēcerim, <i>what I have</i>
<i>done (or did).</i> |
| 3. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid facerem, <i>what I was</i>
<i>doing.</i> |
| 4. | { | Vidēbat, <i>he was seeing,</i>
Vidit, <i>he saw,</i>
Viderat, <i>he had seen,</i> | } | quid fēcissem, <i>what I had</i>
<i>done (or did).</i> |

Observe what tenses of the subjunctive follow primary tenses of the indicative, and what tenses follow secondary.

374. RULE. — **Sequence of Tenses.** — Whenever the subjunctive is used in a dependent or subordinate clause, the tense that should be used is determined commonly by the following rule:

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause.

1. Sometimes the perfect indicative, when it means *have*, *has*, . . ., is followed by a primary tense.

375.

VOCABULARY

prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōces-	explōrātor, ōris, m., scout.
sum, go forward, advance.	in reliquum tempus, for the
cōnor, āri, ātus sum, try,	future.
attempt.	inter sē dare, to exchange,
conloquor, conloquī, conlocū-	give each other.
tus sum, speak together,	in flūmine pontem faciō,
confer.	build a bridge across the
in animō habēō, } I have in	river.
mihi est in } mind, in-	rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, ask, beg.
animō, } tend.	* teneō, ēre, tenuī, —, hold.

376.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis Caesare imperātore ē proeliō discēdere audēbit? 2. Cūr Rōmā exīre vultis? 3. Labiēnus cohortēs ex castrīs ēductās instrui iussit. 4. Caesarī est nūntiātum summum montem ā Labiēnō tenērī.

II. 1. He sent forward men to fortify the hill as quickly as possible. 2. The enemy hastened to attack our men while impeded in the river. 3. Are you willing to obey your leader? 4. After encouraging his men there Caesar hastens to the river.

377.

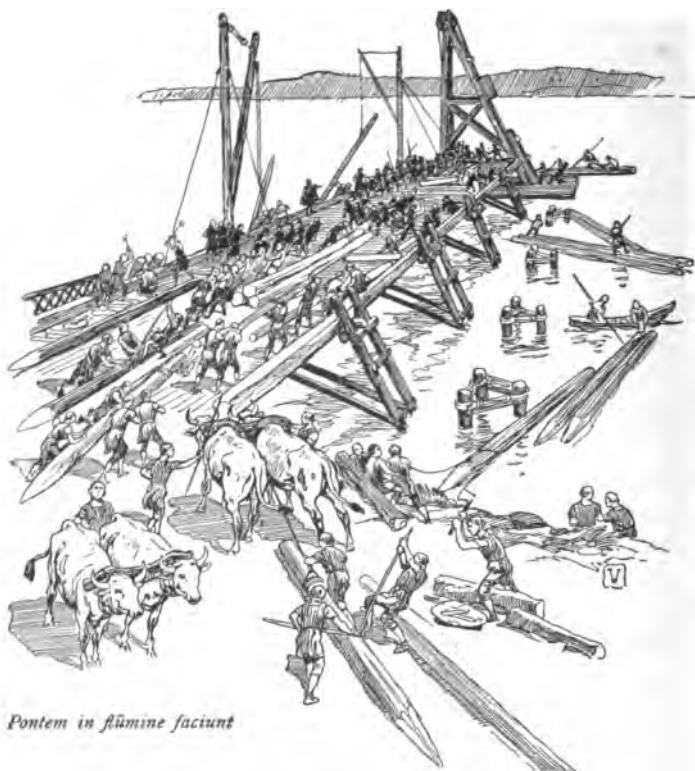
EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvētiis est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Caesar rogāvit cūr inter sē obsidēs darent. 3. Principēs ut dē dēditione conloquantur convenient. 4. Imperātor multōs diēs scīverat quae Gallī facere cōnātī essent. 5. Caesar praemittet eōs quī in flūmine pontem faciant. 6. Lēgātī Gallōrum Caesarī dixērunt quae sibi in animō in reliquum tempus facere esset. 7. Germānī Caesarem rogāvērunt "Cūr in nostrōs finēs prōcessisti?" 8. Germānī Caesarem rogāvērunt cūr in suōs finēs prōcessisset. 9. Summus collis

multis castellis mūnitus erat nē hostēs impetum facerent.

II. 1. We know who goes to the city. 2. The lieutenant said,¹ "Who goes to Rome?" 3. I know that they have returned home. 4. Caesar asked what towns they had captured. 5. We can see why they have fled. 6. Caesar is informed through scouts that the enemy have advanced. 7. When the battle had been fought, the general saw who had been wounded.

¹ inquit.



Pontem in flumine faciunt

2. **Suis imperat nē id faciant**, *he orders his men not to do this.*
3. **Militēs cohortātur ut impetum sustineant**, *he urges the soldiers to sustain the attack.*

380. The following are the most common verbs of the classes mentioned in 379. Their meanings and principal parts should be carefully learned :

persuādeō, ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, persuade.

imperō, āre, āvi, ātum, order, command.

rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, ask, beg.

postulō, āre, āvi, ātus, demand, ask.

moneō, ēre, monui, monitus, advise, warn.

petō, ere, petivi (ii), petitus, ask, request.

cohortor (and hortor), āri, ātus sum, encourage, urge.

permittō, ere, permisi, permissum, permit, allow.

1. The following are exceptions to the above, and are followed by the infinitive, as in English :

iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus, order, command.

vetō, āre, vetui, vetitus, forbid.

2. The following are generally followed by (1) the infinitive, sometimes by (2) *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive :

patior, pati, passus sum, suffer, allow.

cōstituō, ere, cōstitui, cōstitutus, determine.

cupiō, ere, cupivi, cupitus, desire.

volō (also nōlō and mālō), velle, volui, wish.

381.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. **Sciō quid tibi sit in animō.** 2. **Lēgātī diū inter sē conlocūtī domum rediērunt.** 3. **Eōs Caesar rogāvit cūr ex proeliō discessissent.** 4. **Helvētīi respondērunt sēsē exire ē finibus nōn cōnātūrōs.** 5. **Cūr hostēs sē recēpērunt?**

II. 1. I know whom you called together on that night.

2. If our arms are surrendered, we cannot defend ourselves.
3. They tried to keep the Germans away from their fields.
4. They thought we could not build a bridge over that river.

382.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar suis imperāvit ut castra mūnīrent. 2. Imperātor equitēs cohortātus est nē clāmōribus Gallōrum permovērentur. 3. Caesar, Helvētiis superātis, bellum gerere cum Germānis cōstituit. 4. Dumnorix Sēquanis persuādet nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 5. Helvētīi finitimōs cohortābantur ut obsidēs inter sē darent. 6. Suōs in flūmine Rhodanō pontem facere lēgātus iussit. 7. Caesar Gallōs monuit nē coniūrātiōnem facerent.

II. 1. We urge you to be brave. 2. The Helvetii persuaded their neighbors to attack the Romans. 3. The general commands¹ us to do this as quickly as possible. 4. We asked him² what he was doing. 5. He was informed that the enemy were crossing the river. 6. Now³ that the Germans have been conquered, Caesar will allow us to return to Rome. 7. They were sent to build a bridge.

(READING SELECTION 461)

LESSON 64

READING LESSON

CHAPTER IX

DUMNORIX PERSUADES THE SEQUANI TO ALLOW THE
HELVETII TO MARCH THROUGH THEIR TERRITORY

383. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanis invītis propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Cum⁴ his ipsi Helvētīi persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnōrigem

¹ imperō. ² Use the accusative. ³ Now . . . conquered, use abl. abs. ⁴ since, when.

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō¹ dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.² Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent perficit, Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trāseant.

LESSON 65

OBJECT CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING. **Cum**
TEMPORAL, CAUSAL, AND CONCESSIVE

384. Examine the following :

1. **Timeō nē hoc faciat**, *I fear that he will do this* (or *I fear that he is doing this*).
2. **Timēbam ut hoc faceret**, *I feared that he would not do this*.

Observe

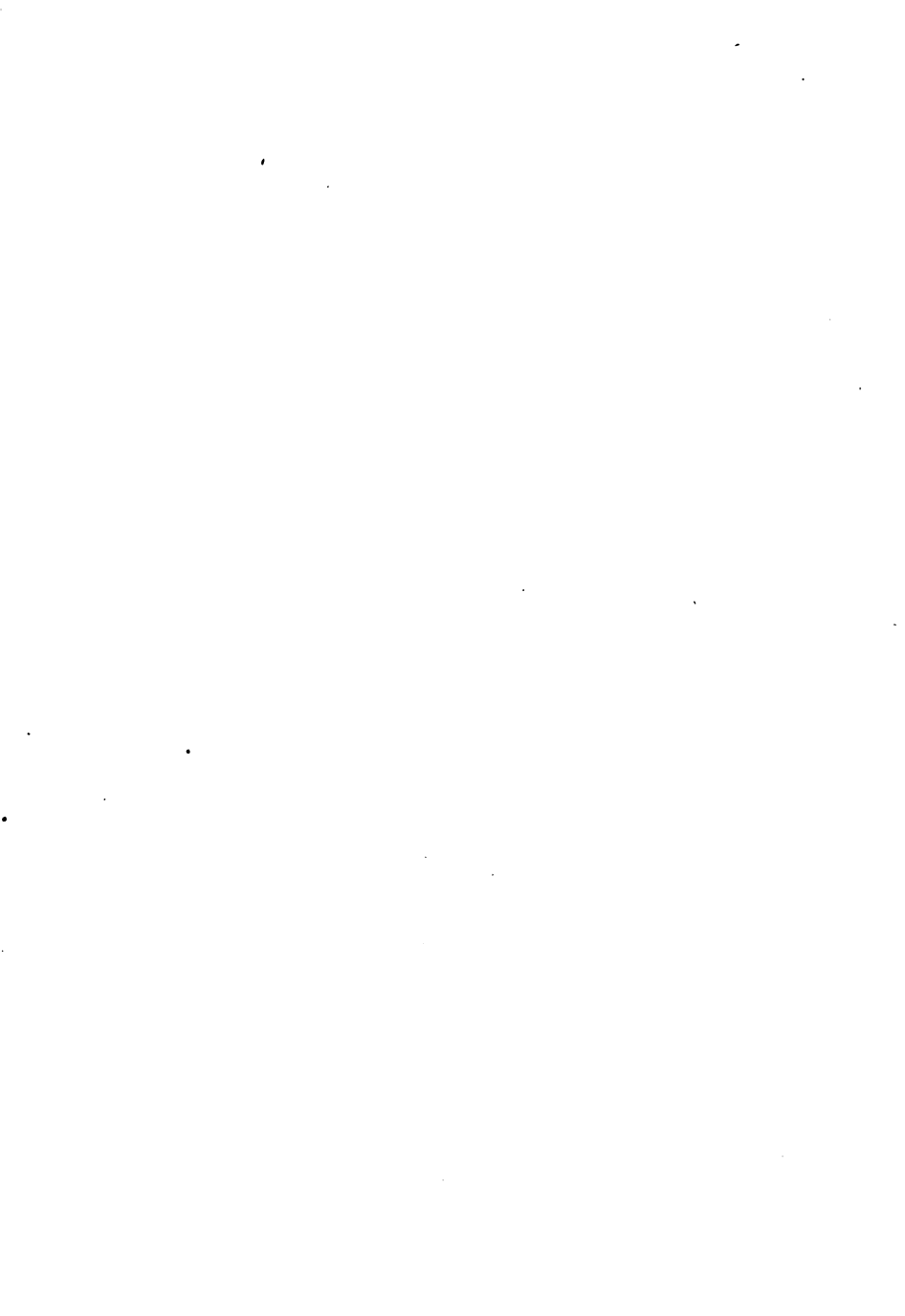
- a. That the clauses **nē hoc faciat** and **ut hoc faceret** are the object of the main verb.
- b. That we translate the **nē** clause affirmatively (*that*, etc.), and the **ut** clause negatively (*that not*, etc.).

385. RULE.—**Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing.**—*The subjunctive with nē, that, or ut, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing.*

386. Examine the following :

1. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit**, *when Caesar came into Gaul*.
2. **Cum Caesar in Galliā esset**, *when Caesar was in Gaul*.
3. **Cum Caesarī id nūntiātum esset**, *when this had been reported to Caesar*.

¹ eō dēprecātōre, *by his mediation* (literally, *he (being) an intercessor*; ablative absolute). ² Do not confuse this verb with imperō.





Arch of Constantine, Rome



The Forum at Pompeii. In the distance, to the north, is Vesuvius

4. **Cum** his persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt, *since they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*
5. **Cum** primī ōrdinēs concidissent, reliquī tamen resistēbant, *although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted.*

Cum, meaning *when* (**cum** temporal, sentences 1, 2, 3), is used with the indicative if the verb of its clause refers to present or future time. **Cum**, meaning *when, after*, is commonly used with the subjunctive, if the verb of its clause refers to past time, but the indicative is sometimes used to point out clearly the exact time at which the main action took place (**cum** then = *quō tempore*). **Cum**, meaning *since* or *as*, is called **cum** *causal*, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 4). **Cum**, meaning *although*, is called **cum** *concessive*, and the verb is subjunctive (sentence 5). The student will be able to infer from the meaning of the whole sentence which of the three translations **cum** should have in a given case. What must it mean with the indicative?

387. RULE. — **Cum** clauses. — 1. *In a cum clause expressing time, the verb is, if present or future, in the indicative; if the verb is past, it is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used.*

2. *In a cum clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive.*

388.

VOCABULARY

vereor, ēri, veritus sum, <i>fear, respect.</i>	signa inferō, <i>charge (literally, bear the standards against).</i>
* timeō, ēre, timui, —, <i>fear, be afraid of.</i>	in fidem venire, <i>to put one's self under the protection.</i>
intelligō, ere, intellēxi, intellēctus, <i>learn, know, perceive.</i>	postquam, conj., <i>after.</i>
	polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum, <i>promise.</i>

389.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar quibusdam ē suis imperāvit ut in flūmine pontem facerent. 2. Imperātor Helvētiis nē iter per prōvinciam faciant persuādet. 3. Germānī ā Caesare quae-sivērunt cūr in Galliam vēnisset. 4. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior fit summum montem ā Labiēnō occupātum esse. 5. Helvētīi finitimīs persuādēbant ut, aedificiīs incēnsīs, sēcum exirent.

II. 1. He warns us not to leave the camp. 2. The Gauls urged each man to resist the Romans bravely. 3. We shall attack the enemy who are following. 4. Caesar ordered¹ the Gauls to give up their arms.

390.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar timēbat ut nostrī impetum sustinērent. 2. Cum hoc fēcimus, tamen ā nostris amicis nōn culpābimur. 3. Imperātor verēbātur nē hostēs nostrōs in flūmine impeditōs lacesserent. 4. Cum nostrī fortiter resisterent, Gallī sē recipere cōstituērunt. 5. Helvētīi superātī in Caesaris fidem venire volēbant. 6. Caesar, cum suōs labōrāre intellexeret, in primam aciem prōcessit, et militēs cohortātus est. 7. Cum hoc fēcissent, Rōmam rediērunt. 8. Hāc rē factā, Rōmam rediērunt. 9. Gallī pollicitī sunt sē sociōrum populī Rōmānī agrōs nōn vāstātūrōs esse. 10. Caesar suōs signa conversa inferre iussit.

II. 1. We feared that the general would not send us aid. 2. Although² the enemy resisted bravely, our men were able to take the town. 3. When Caesar was informed of their arrival, he drew up the line of battle.

¹ Use *iubeō*. ² Although . . . resisted. Express in two ways. See 311. 6, 315, 386. 5.

4. I fear that he is coming. 5. I know that he is coming.
6. I know who is coming. 7. The man that I saw in Rome has arrived. 8. Since the enemy have fled, we will return home.

LESSON 66

COMPOUNDS OF *sum*. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

391. Review *possum* (274). The verb *sum* is often compounded with the prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *dē*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *prae*, *prō* (*prōd*), *super*. Review the meanings of these prepositions from the general vocabulary. In the compound *prōsum*, *I benefit*, *prōd*, not *prō*, is found before *e*. Learn the conjugation of *prōsum* (523).

392. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of *sum*:

absum, *abesse*, *āfuī*, —, *be away, be absent*.

adsum, *adesse*, *adfuī*, —, *be present, aid*.

dēsum, *deesse*, *dēfuī*, —, *be lacking, fail*.

obsum, *obesse*, *obfuī*, —, *be against, injure*.

praesum, *praeesse*, *praefuī*, —, *be at the head of, command*.

prōsum, *prōdesse*, *prōfuī*, —, *be of use to, benefit*.

393. Examine the following:

1. *Lēgātus oppidō praefuit*, *the lieutenant was in charge of the town*.
2. *Amicis prōsumus*, *we benefit our friends*.
3. *Exercitus hostibus appropinquābat* (*ad + propinquō*), *the army was approaching the enemy*.
4. *Pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit*, *he puts honor before money, or he prefers honor to money*.

Observe that these compound verbs govern the dative case. If a verb is transitive, as in 4, it may take both an accusative and a dative.

394. RULE. — Dative with Compound Verbs. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super often govern the dative.*

395.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum	vis (no gen. or dat. sing.),
(w. dat.), <i>approach, draw</i>	vim, vi, (501) f., plur.,
<i>near.</i>	virēs, ium, ibus, <i>strength,</i>
bellum inferō, inferre, intuli,	<i>power; (plur.), strength.</i>
inlātus, and dative, <i>make</i>	iterum, adv., <i>again, a second</i>
<i>war upon.</i>	<i>time.</i>

396.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Verēmur ut impetum sustineant. 2. Gallī sē in populī Rōmānī fidem ventūrōs pollicentur. 3. Postquam Caesar in Galliam vēnit, gentēs obsidēs inter sē dare intellexit. 4. Quae¹ cum ita sint, in hostium finibus morābimur.

II. 1. The Gauls feared that the Romans would advance.
2. The Gauls thought that the Romans were advancing.
3. The camp that had been fortified was a mile wide.
4. They persuaded the Sequani to exchange hostages.

397.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum finibus Gallōrum appropinquāret, magnā cum cūrā prōcessit. 2. Peditēs diū pugnāre nōn poterant, quod virēs deerant. 3. Germānī dixērunt

¹ *these things.* A relative at the beginning of a sentence is often translated by a demonstrative.

Rōmānōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Virī quī suīs amīcīs obsunt nōn sunt fidī. 5. Gallī mulierēs liberōsque ūnum in locum convocābant nē tēlis interficerentur. 6. Caesar Labiēnum quī castrīs praeesset reliquit. 7. Incolae oppidī, armīs trāditīs, tamen Rōmānīs resistere iterum cōnātī sunt. 8. Cum lēgātus ab hostium finibus nōn amplius¹ duōbus mīllibus passuum abesset, castra posuit. 9. Omnēs quī eā in pugnā fuerant ā Caesare pācem petēbant. 10. Cum oppidī incolae paucī essent, expugnārī nōn potuit.

II. 1. We all wish to benefit our friends. 2. Labienus commanded two legions. 3. Caesar said he intended to wage war on the Germans. 4. We persuaded them to leave Rome with us. 5. Although we are drawing near the enemy, we ought not to fear, if² Caesar is general. 6. Caesar called all the soldiers together.

(READING SELECTION 462)

LESSON 67

THE IMPERATIVE. COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS

398. FORMS OF THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

SECOND PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
IMPERATIVE ACTIVE		IMPERATIVE PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amā, <i>love</i>	amāte	amāre, <i>be loved</i>	amāmini
monē, <i>advise</i>	monēte	monēre, <i>be advised</i>	monēmini
mitte, <i>send</i>	mittite	mittere, <i>be sent</i>	mittimini
cape, <i>take</i>	capite	capere, <i>be taken</i>	capimini
audi, <i>hear</i>	audite	audire, <i>be heard</i>	audimini

¹ more. ² if . . . general: see 316.

Observe that the present active imperative singular has the same form as the *present stem* (86), and that the present passive imperative, singular and plural, have the same forms as the *second person singular in -re* and the *second person plural of the present indicative passive*.

The present active imperatives of *dicō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō* are *dic, dūc, fac, fer*.

Give the imperative forms in the second person of *gerō, videō, dicō, mūniō, accipiō, sequor, laudō*.

399. The imperative, second person, is used to command or order; the subjunctive, in the *first and the third persons*, is used to exhort or urge. For example:

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
1ST PER.	<i>laudem, let me praise</i>	<i>nē laudem, let me not praise</i>
2D PER.	<i>laudā, praise</i>	<i>nōlī laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER.	<i>laudet, let him praise</i>	<i>nē laudet, let him not praise</i>
1ST PER.	<i>laudēmus let us praise</i>	<i>nē laudēmus, let us not praise</i>
2D PER.	<i>laudāte, praise</i>	<i>nōlīte laudāre, do not praise</i>
3D PER.	<i>laudent, let them praise</i>	<i>nē laudent, let them not praise</i>

Observe that the negative used with the subjunctive is *nē*, but that *nē* is *not* used with the imperative; instead *nōlī* or *nōlīte* (pres. imperative of *nōlō, be unwilling*) is used with the infinitive. Do not use *nē* or *nōn* with the imperative to express a negative command.

400.

VOCABULARY

praeficiō, ere, praefēci, prae- fectus, <i>set over, put in charge of.</i>	revertor, reverti, reverti, re- versus, ¹ dep., <i>turn back, return.</i>
referō, referre, rettuli, relā- tus, <i>carry back; referre pedem, retreat.</i>	animadvertō, ere, animad- verti, animadversus (ani- mus + ad + vertō), <i>turn the mind to, notice.</i>
ad multam noctem, <i>till late at night.</i>	adversus, a, um, <i>opposite, facing, hostile; adversō colle, up the hill.</i>
longē, adv., <i>far, far off.</i>	
Ariovistus, I, m., <i>Ariovistus, chief of the Germans.</i>	

401.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Illud oppidum nōn longē ā prōvinciā abest.
2. Hostium ducēs cōnātī sunt castellum, cui praeerat
lēgātus, expugnāre. 3. Ariovistus dixit nōn sēsē Gallīs
sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. 4. Labiēnus, ūnus ex
Caesaris lēgātis, oppidō appropinquāre contendit. 5. Cum
proeli finem nox fēcisset, virī quī summā grātiā apud suōs
erant ad Caesarem vēnērunt.

II. 1. The chief had two daughters; one was killed, the
other captured. 2. I fear that he will injure me. 3. The
man did this himself. 4. The chief said, "The power of
the Roman people is very great."

402.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli respondērunt, "Nōlite Rōmānis bellum in-
ferre." 2. Dic mihi quid in animō tibi sit. 3. Fortiter
pugnēmus² nē in potestātem Caesaris veniāmus. 4. Caesar

¹ This verb in the perfect system, indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive,
commonly has only active forms. The perfect participle is deponent. ² Notice
that the subjunctive of exhortation is the main verb of the sentence. See 349.

cum Gallōs iterum coniūrātiōnem facere animadvertisset, lēgātōs ad sē reverti iussit. 5. Cum virēs tōtae deessent, hostēs referre pedem coepērunt. 6. Signa inferte adversō colle ad hostium castra. 7. Labiēnum urbi captae Caesar praefēcit. 8. Cum nostrī ad multam noctem contenderent, nēmō ab hostibus occīsus est. 9. Ariovistus Caesari "Cūr" inquit "in meōs fīnēs venis?" 10. Hāc rē factā, duābus legiōnibus in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē Caesar cōstituit.

II. 1. Let us wage war. 2. Do not do this. 3. Pursue the enemy, if you wish. 4. Let them do this. 5. Labienus,¹ lead the forces out of camp. 6. Friends, do not persuade me to remain in Rome. 7. We noticed that our men had not seized the top of the mountain.

LESSON 68

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

403. Note carefully the difference in English between the verbal noun in *-ing* and the verbal adjective in *-ing*. The verbal noun is used like a noun in any of the cases, and the verbal adjective, or participle, like an adjective, always in agreement with some word. Both have the force of a verb, and may therefore take an object. Compare these examples:

I found my friends *waiting* for me. (Participle, or verbal adjective.)

Waiting is tedious. (Verbal noun, subject of "is.")

We learn to do by *doing*. (Verbal noun.)

404. In Latin, the *gerund* is a verbal noun. It has only the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases, the

¹ Review page 15, footnote, and page 27, footnote 1.

nominative case being supplied by the infinitive. Its gender is neuter. *The gerundive is a verbal adjective* (see 308), and is passive in its meaning.

405. Learn the gerunds and gerundives of the model verbs (516-520). Note that they are formed from the present stem.

406. Examine the following :

NOM.	{ Videre est credere, <i>seeing is believing</i> (infinitive as subject).
GEN.	{ Ars vivendi (gerund), <i>the art of living</i> . Vēnit amicōrum videndōrum causā (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the sake of seeing his friends)</i> .
DAT. ¹	{ Vix his rēbus administrandis tempus dabatur (gerundive), <i>time was hardly given for managing these things</i> .
ACC.	{ Vēnit ad pugnandum (gerund), <i>he came to fight (for fighting, or for the purpose of fighting)</i> . Vēnit ad amicōs videndōs (gerundive), <i>he came to see his friends (for the purpose of seeing his friends)</i> .
ABL.	{ Mēns discendō alitur (gerund), <i>the mind is strengthened by learning</i> . Conlocūtī sunt de cōsiliis capiendis (gerundive), <i>they conferred about forming plans</i> .

Observe

1. That when the gerundive is used the noun is put in the proper case, and the gerundive agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

¹ The use of the dative of the gerund or gerundive is not very common; *ad* and the accusative is more common.

2. That the gerundive, not the gerund, is generally used where there is an object in English.
3. That purpose may be expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund or gerundive, and by *causā* following the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. What other ways are there of expressing purpose?

407.

VOCABULARY

<i>coniciō, ere, coniciēci, coniectus,</i>	<i>causa, ae, f., cause, reason ;</i>
<i>throw, hurl.</i>	<i>abl., for-the-sake-of, in-</i>
<i>dēligō, ere, dēlēgi, dēlēctus,</i>	<i>order-to (after a genitive).</i>
<i>select, choose. [opportunity.</i>	<i>cupidus, a, um, desirous (of),</i>
<i>spatium, i, n., space, time,</i>	<i>eager (for) (with genitive).</i>
<i>discō, ere, didici, —, learn.</i>	<i>dēnique, adv., finally, at last.</i>
<i>turris, is, f., tower.</i>	<i>iam, adv., now, already, soon.</i>

408.

REVIEW EXERCISES

I. 1. Animadvertite quae fēcerit. 2. Nōlī, hostibus appropinquantibus, castris lēgātum praeficere. 3. Omnibus Gallis superātis, in prōvinciam revertāmur. 4. Ubi turrim movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt. 5. Dic nōbīs quōs Rōmae videris.

II. 1. Do not persuade them to wage war on the Romans. 2. Lead your troops out of camp and draw them up. 3. Let us always obey the general. 4. I fear the Gauls will be conquered.

409.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Agendō agere discimus. 2. Militēs finem pugnandī fēcērunt. 3. Militēs cupidī potiendī oppidi erant. 4. Bellum gerere hieme difficillimum est. 5. Hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut spatium tēlōrum coniciendōrum nōn darētur. 6. Caesar locum omnibus rēbus idōneum castris dēlēgit. 7. Lēgāti ad pācem petendam vērērunt. 8. Com-



The Romans attacked by the Gauls, both in front and in the rear, at the Siege of Alesia

(Caesar, *Gallie War*, Book VII, Chapters 68-90)

plūrēs prīncipēs ad Caesarem pācis petendae causā vēnērunt. 9. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās annum satis esse Helvētīi arbitrābantur. 10. Gallī dē bellō Rōmānīs inferendō cōnsilia capiēbant. 11. Nē nōs ē proeliō discēdāmus.

II. 1. Fighting; by fighting; of fighting. 2. For the purpose of defending; for the sake of choosing. 3. Time was not given for¹ defending the city. 4. Caesar sent men to² fortify the camp. 5. The enemy attacked our men while crossing the river. 6. He chose a lieutenant to accomplish all these things. 7. Choosing good friends is difficult. 8. Do not leave the city.

LESSON 69

COMPLETE REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As much time should be given to this review of verb forms as the needs of the class require. It is suggested that this review be made by synopsis, and by quick recognition of miscellaneous verb forms both orally and in writing.

410. Review 228 and 352. Review the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs:

timeō	prōcēdō	coniciō	imperō
appropinquō	petō	dēligō	pāreō
intellegō	permittō	animadvertō	quaerō
polliceor	volō	revertor	cōnsequor
conloquor	nōlō	moror	audeō
vereor	mālō	obtineō	prōgredior
cōnor	respondeō	praefficō	

411. Following the form suggested below, write the synopsis of (1) *tollō* in the first person singular, and of (2) *cōnor* in the third person plural.

¹ for *defending*: genitive case.

² to *fortify*: express in four ways.

FORM¹ FOR SYNOPSIS

PRINCIPAL PARTS

TEMUS		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	Act.					
	Pass.					
Imperf.	Act.					
	Pass.					
Fut.	Act.					
	Pass.					
Perf.	Act.					
	Pass.					
Plup.	Act.					
	Pass.					
Fut. Perf.	Act.					
	Pass.					

(READING SELECTION 463)

LESSON 70

READING LESSON

CHAPTER X

CAESAR PREPARES TO DEFEAT THE PLANS OF THE
HELVETII

412. Caesarī renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs

¹ This form is merely suggested as a model for writing the synopsis of a verb.

facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Caesar nōlēbat hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmānī inimicōs, prōvinciae esse finitimōs. Ob eās rēs ei mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum prae-fēcit, et ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiā hie-mābant,¹ ex hībernīs ēdūcit et cum hīs quinque legiōnibus ire in ulteriōrem Galliā contendit. Ibi nōnnūllae nātiōnēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliis² pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum in ulteriōrem prōvinciam diē² septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

¹ Can you not infer its meaning from *hiems* ? ² Why ablative ?



Roman Harbor and Ships (Restoration)

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — These lessons are designed to meet the needs of those teachers who wish a more extensive treatment of syntax than has been attempted in the previous lessons. They are so arranged that they may be taken up in connection with the previous lessons, or in any order that the teacher wishes.

LESSON 71

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. PRESENT AND PAST TIME

413. Conditional sentences are complex sentences. They consist of two clauses, the *condition* (or protasis) introduced by “if,” “if not,” “unless,” and the *conclusion* (or apodosis). For example :

If it rains, I shall not go.

If he had not seen me, I should have gone.

You will not do this unless I command you.

Observe that a condition may be expressed in English without using “if,” “if not,” “unless,” by merely placing the subject after the verb in the condition. For example :

Had he not seen me, I should have gone.

414. Various classifications of conditional sentences are possible, but for convenience they will be considered as follows :

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.

2. Contrary to Fact.

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

415. SIMPLE CONDITION

Examine the following :

1. **Si hoc faciunt, bene est, if they are doing this, it is well.**
 2. **Si hoc fēcērunt, bene fuit, if they did this, it was well.**
- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) does not imply whether the statement is true or not, *i.e.* whether "they did this" or not; it *merely makes a supposition.*
 - b. That the present or past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion.

416. CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

1. **Si hoc facerent, bene esset, if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.**
 2. **Si hoc fēcissent, bene fuisset, if they had done this, it would have been well.**
- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) makes a supposition that is obviously contrary to the actual facts of the case; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that they are *not* now doing this, and the second sentence, that they had not done this. So too the conclusion (or apodosis) makes a statement contrary to the facts; *i.e.* the first sentence implies that it is not now well, the second sentence that it was not well.
 - b. That the *imperfect subjunctive* is used in both condition and conclusion, when the time is present, and the *pluperfect subjunctive*, when the time is past.

417.

EXERCISES

(In these and the succeeding exercises, the student should use the general vocabularies whenever it is necessary. But see Hints for Translation, 136.)

I. 1. Si meus amicus Rōmae est, laetus sum. 2. Si Helvētīi ācrius Rōmānis restitissent, nōn victī essent. 3. Si adesset, exīre Rōmā parātī essēmus. 4. Laetus fuit pater, sī quis liberōs laudāvit. 5. Caesar, sī accēdere hostēs arbitrātus esset, aciem instrūxisset. 6. Plūrēs Galli occisī essent, sī nostrī celerius cōsecūtī essent. 7. Sī imperātor essēs, darēsne proelī committendī sīgnum?

II. 1. If they had been at home, I should have been glad. 2. I am glad, if they are at home. 3. If anything happened, it was reported to the general. 4. That soldier would leave the battle, if he were not a brave man. 5. Who would not have done the same thing, had he been present? 6. If the general commands, the soldiers obey him. 7. If you were in Rome, should you wish to be a soldier?

LESSON 72

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CONTINUED). FUTURE TIME

418.

VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following:

Si hoc facient, bene erit, if they do this (i.e. shall do this), it will be well.

- a. Observe that the condition (or protasis) states a future supposition vividly or strongly (*i.e.* by using "shall").
- b. That the conclusion (or apodosis) states positively what will be the result, if the condition shall prove to be true.
- c. That the future indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.

- d.* That the present tense in English may often refer to future time (*i.e.* "if they do this" means "if they shall do this").

419. LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS

Examine the following :

Si hoc faciant, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.

- a.* Observe that the condition (or protasis) here states a future supposition in a less distinct and vivid fashion (*i.e.* by using "should").
- b.* That the conclusion (or apodosis) states less positively, as a mere possibility, what the result would be, should the condition prove to be true.
- c.* That the present subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion.

420. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

I. Present or Past Time.

- 1. Simple.** Present or past tenses of the indicative in both parts.
- 2. Contrary to Fact.**
 - a.* Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts.
 - b.* Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts.

II. Future Time.

- 1. Vivid Future** — Future¹ indicative in both parts.
- 2. Less Vivid Future** — Present¹ subjunctive in both parts.

421. It has been indicated in 311, 5, 315, 2, and 316 that the condition (or protasis) may be expressed by the participle without the use of **si** or **nisi**. For example :

¹ For the sake of clearness the use of other tenses in the protasis of future conditions is not here treated.

Principēs Gallōrum victī Rōmam mittentur, *the chiefs of the Gauls, if they are conquered (literally, having been conquered), will be sent to Rome.*

422.

EXERCISES

I. 1. Si equitēs cōsequentur, magnum hostium numerum occīdent. 2. Si equitēs cōsequantur, magnum hostium numerum occīdant. 3. Caesare imperātōre, numquam terēbimur. 4. Helvētīi flūmen Rhodanum trānsissent, nisi Caesar in Galliam contendisset. 5. Obsidēs liberātī domum redeant. 6. Incolae, armīs trāditīs, sēsē dēfendere nōn poterunt. 7. Si hostēs flūmen trāseant, nostrī nōn cōsequantur.

II. 1. If we should go to Athens, we should see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we go to Athens, we shall see many beautiful buildings. 3. Had the Helvetii tried to cross the river, Caesar would have attacked them. 4. If Labienus hurries, he will be able to seize the top of the hill. 5. If Caesar should attack that town, the inhabitants would not be able to defend it. 6. If you were in the town, you would be alarmed at Caesar's approach. 7. Who will be afraid, if the soldiers fortify the town well?

(READING SELECTION 464)

LESSON 73

WISHES

423. Wishes may be divided into two classes :

I. Those that refer to the future. For example :

May my friend come !

Would that my friend would come !

O that my friend would come !

Observe that the above expressions are different ways of expressing the same desire.

II. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are, therefore, sometimes called hopeless wishes. For example :

O that my friend were here !	} referring to present time, and implying that he is not here.
I wish (that) my friend were here !	
Would that my friend were here !	
O that my friend had been here !	} referring to past time, and implying that he was not here.
I wish (that) my friend had been here !	
Would that my friend had been here !	

424. Examine the following :

1. (**Utinam**) **meus amicus veniat**, *may my friend come !* (a wish about the future).
 2. **Utinam meus amicus adesset**, *would that my friend were here !* (a wish hopeless in present time, implying that he is not here).
 3. **Utinam meus amicus adfuisset**, *O that my friend had been here !* (a wish hopeless in past time, implying that he was not here).
- a. Observe that the subjunctive is used to express a wish.
- b. That the present (or perfect) subjunctive expresses a wish relating to the future, that the imperfect subjunctive expresses a wish that is hopeless in present time, and the pluperfect a wish hopeless in past time.
- c. That hopeless wishes employ the same mood and tenses as contrary to fact conditions (416).

Utinam is often omitted with the present tense, but is regularly used with the imperfect or pluperfect. The negative is **nē**.

425. RULE. — Subjunctive in Wishes. — *Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without **utinam**; wishes hopeless in present time by **utinam** with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by **utinam** with the pluperfect subjunctive. In wishes the negative is **nē**.*

426.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Utinam nē Galli coniūratiōnem fēcissent!* 2. *Miles ē proeliō nē discēdat!* 3. *Utinam hoc facerent!* 4. *Helvētīi "Utinam" inquit¹ "nē altissimis montibus continērēmur!"* 5. *Utinam nē Germāni populō Rōmānō bellum intulissent!* 6. *Utinam Rōmam veniāmus!*

II. 1. *May he always obey the general!* 2. *I wish we had gone to Athens!* 3. *Would that we were with Caesar in Gaul!* 4. *O that he had not persuaded me!* 5. *May we be killed, if we surrender our arms!* 6. *Would that we were able to go with you!*

LESSON 74

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES

427. Review 327–330, 349. When a complex sentence is quoted indirectly, its principal or main verb, if the main clause makes a statement (affirmative or negative),² follows the rule stated in 329. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes subjunctive. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (374).

428. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and

¹ Plural of *inquit*.

² The treatment of main clauses involving commands and questions has been purposely excluded from this book.

second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns refer commonly to the subject of the introductory verb, but sometimes to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

429. Examine the following :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Vir quem videō meus amicus
est, the man whom I see is
my friend.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Present Time

Dicit virum quem videat suum
amicum esse, he says that
the man whom he sees is
his friend.

Past Time

Dixit virum quem vidēret
suum amicum esse, he
said that the man whom
he saw was his friend.

Observe

- a. That the main verb **est** becomes **esse** with its subject **virum** in the accusative.
- b. That the dependent (or subordinate) verb **videō** becomes present subjunctive, **videat**, when the introductory verb, **dicit**, is a primary tense, and imperfect subjunctive, **vidēret**, when the introductory verb, **dixit**, is a secondary tense.
- c. That the person of the dependent verb changes to the third person, and that **meus** becomes **suum**, because it refers to the subject of the introductory verb.

430. RULE. — **Moods in Indirect Discourse.** — *In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive.*

431.

EXERCISES

I. 1. *Militēs quōs mēcum habuī fortissimī fuērunt.*
 2. *Dixit militēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse.*
 3. *Ubi ad nostrum exercitum pervēnimus, Caesar castra mūnivit.* 4. *Dixērunt Caesarem, ubi ad suum exercitum pervēnissent, castra mūnīvisse.* 5. *Caesar dixit suōs flūmen, quod¹ altissimum esset, trānsīre nōn posse.* 6. *Ariovistus Caesarī “Volō” inquit “his dē rēbus, quae inter nōs agī² coeptae neque perfectae sunt, agere² tēcum.”* 7. *Ariovistus Caesarī dixit sē velle dē eis rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō.*

II. 1. The river that we see is very wide. 2. They said that the river that they saw was very wide. 3. The lieutenant is frightened because the enemy are approaching. 4. Write 3 indirectly in Latin after *audiō*. 5. When I arrived, I saw my friend. 6. Write 5 indirectly in Latin after *dixit*. 7. Ariovistus replied that those who had conquered ought to rule³ those whom they had conquered.

LESSON 75

IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. SUPINE. DIFFERENT
WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

432. Verbs are said to be used impersonally when they do not have a personal subject. This impersonal use is more common in Latin than in English. There are some verbs in Latin that are used only impersonally, while others are used both personally and impersonally.

EXAMPLES

Acriter pugnātum est, the battle was fought sharply, or there was sharp fighting (literally, it was sharply fought).

¹ because. ² agō, treat. ³ imperō.

Vos hoc facere oportet, *you ought to do this* (more literally, *it is proper that you do this*).

Vobis hoc facere licet, *you may do this* (literally, *it is permitted to you to do this*).

433. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, and has forms only in **-um** and **-ū**. These forms are used only in the following constructions :

Lēgātī vēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātum, *ambassadors came to congratulate Caesar*.

Hoc difficile est factū, *this is difficult to do*.

The supine in **-um** is used to express purpose, but only after verbs of motion ; the supine in **-ū** is used with a few adjectives and indeclinable nouns, as ablative of specification.

434. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

Review 351, 364, 406, 3. Are there several ways of expressing purpose in English ?

EXAMPLES

Helvētī lēgātōs misērunt	{ ut pācem peterent, quī pācem peterent, pācis petendae causā, ad pācem petendam, pācem petitum, }	<i>the Helvetii sent ambassadors to seek peace.</i>
Militēs mittuntur	{ ad pugnandum, pugnandi causā, }	<i>the soldiers are sent to fight.</i>

435. RULE. — Supine in **-um**. — *The supine in -um is used to express purpose after verbs of motion.*

436. EXERCISES

I. 1. **Hoc est mirābile dictū**. 2. **Ariovistus respondit**, "Tē ad mē venire oportet." 3. **Principēs Gallōrum ad**

Caesarem vērunt auxilium petītum. 4. Sī volunt, eis ex oppidō exīre licet. 5. In utram partem¹ flūmen Arar fluat oculis iūdicārī nōn potest. 6. Helvētīi rogant ut iter per prōvinciam sibi facere liceat. 7. Galli coniūrātiōnem facere dīcuntur. 8. Gallōs coniūrātiōnem facere nūntius dicit.

II. 1. He went to Rome to² see his daughters. 2. This is easier to say than to do. 3. We ought to obey the general. 4. There is sharp fighting on the right wing. 5. The soldiers may go to Rome. 6. It was reported that the enemy were returning home.

(READING SELECTION 465)

LESSON 76

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

437. The first or active periphrastic conjugation is formed by the future active participle and the verb **sum**. It is future in its meaning, and expresses the idea conveyed in English by the phrases "about to," "going to," "intend to." For example:

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise, or is going to praise, or intends to praise.*

For all forms of this conjugation, see 529.

It has been noticed that there is no future or future perfect tense in the subjunctive. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used in their place. For example:

Sciō quem visūrus sit, *I know whom he is going to see, or whom he will see.*

438. The second or passive periphrastic conjugation is formed by the gerundive and the verb **sum**. It is passive

¹ direction. ² to see his daughters: express in three ways.

in its meaning, and expresses the idea of *obligation or necessity*. For example :

Laudandus est, *he ought to be praised, or he must be praised* (literally, *he is to be praised*).

For all forms of this conjugation, see 530.

439. USES OF THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. The person for whom the obligation or necessity exists is expressed by the dative.
2. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast before they are the equivalent literally of this Latin construction. Thus: "I must do this" = "For me this is to be done," **id mihi agendum est**.
3. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this conjugation in Latin. Thus: "We ought to come," **nōbīs veniendum est**.

EXAMPLES

Urbs est mūnienda, *the city must be fortified*.

Nōbīs fortiter pugnandum est; *we ought to (or must) fight bravely* (literally, *for us it is to be fought bravely*).

Caesari omnia erant agenda, *Caesar had to do everything* (literally, *for Caesar everything was to be done*).

440.

EXERCISES

- I. 1. **Visūrī erāmus**; *amātūra fuit*; *monitūrae erant*.
2. **Nōbīs cum Gallīs bellum gerendum est**. 3. **Incolae oppidī ēruptionem erant factūrī**. 4. **Caesari omnia unō tempore agenda erant**; *aciēs instruenda*, *signum dandum*, *militēs ab opere revocandī erant*. 5. **Sī victūrī sumus**, *nōbīs fortissimē contendendum erit*. 6. **Sciēbam quid vōs factūrī**

essētis. 7. Sciēbam quid vōs facerētis. 8. Incolis quīnque diēs oppidum dēfendendum fuit.

II. 1. We intend to go to Rome. 2. They were about to fortify the top of the hill. 3. They must fortify the camp. 4. It was reported to Caesar that the Gauls were about to attack him. 5. We ought to hurry to the city. 6. Labienus had to cross the river. 7. Caesar asked who was going to remain with him. 8. The ambassadors will have to answer.

NOTE

THE following exercises are intended to provide additional material for the rapid reading of connected prose. Each selection is based on the vocabulary and constructions already acquired. Nothing has been admitted that has not been previously studied, with the exception of a very few necessary words, all of which are indicated by superior figures and translated in footnotes. Such words, however, present no additional difficulty in form or construction. Proper names which have no English form, or are readily recognizable, are used without explanation; *e. g.*, *Coriolanus*, *Washingtonius*.

The exercises have been prepared for use after every third lesson. The subject matter chosen is intentionally largely non-classical, in order that the beginner may realize as early as possible that the Latin language is adapted to the expression of modern as well as ancient thought.

SELECTIONS FOR RAPID READING

(To follow Lesson 3)

441. A DIALOGUE

Ubi est tua patria? America mea patria est; estne tua? Nōn est; mea patria Gallia est. Est terra Eurōpae. Pulchrane Gallia est? Pulchra et lāta terra est ubi longae viae sunt. Suntne silvae tuae patriae magnae? Magnae nōn sunt, parvae sunt. Nōnne vīta fēminārum tuae patriae; pulchra est? Fēminārum bonārum vīta semper pulchra et bona est.

(To follow Lesson 6)

442. A FAITHFUL SERVANT

Lydus est fidus servus agricolae boni in insulā. Frūmentum domini et vinum in oppidum portat, ubi cibus incolis superbis grātus est. Malus nauta et amicus in hortō sunt. Nauta servum vocat. "Cūr vinum, serve, in hortum nōn portās?" Lydus amicis vinum in pōculō¹ parvō dat. Nauta vinum bonum laudat sed pōculum parvum et inopiam vīni culpat. Pugnant. Lydus nautam et amicum superat.² Servō pecūniam dant, et Lydus, servus fidus, vinum et frūmentum servat.

(To follow Lesson 9)

443. ROMAN CHILDREN

Eurōpae terra Ītalia est. Rōma magnum in Ītaliā oppidum est. Multae portae, bonae et lātae viae, alba aedificia in oppidō sunt. Horti incolārum superbōrum magni sunt.

¹ cup.

² overcome.

In hortis Mārci lūdus¹ est. Magister, vir peritus, liberōs convocat. Equi validi parvōs liberōs in hortōs magistri portant. Cūr malī pueri pugnant? Asperi sunt. Pueri amant bella et proelia et sagittās et gladiōs. Puellās
 5 tenerās rosae albae in hortis, nova lūna, parvae stellae dēlectant. Magister malōs et pigrōs discipulōs culpat, sed bonōs (discipulōs) amat. Pulchrōs librōs dōna bonis pueris et puellis dat. In libris multae fābulae Rōmam oppidum laudant.

(To follow Lesson 12)

444. A ROUGH WOOING

10 Rōma parvum oppidum erat, ubi Rōmulus in terris erat. Incolae viri erant, sed fēminae in oppidō nōn erant. Rōmulī lēgātī multōs agricolās et multās fēminās et pulchrās puellās in oppidum convocāvērunt. Tēlis idōneis, pīlis, gladiis, hastis, incolae pugnābant. Fēminās asperum
 15 proelium dēlectābat. Sed Rōmulī cōnsilium malum erat. Viri validi puellās tenerās in aedificia portāvērunt. Tum² superbī agricolae armis Rōmānōs oppugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmulus et Rōmulī amīci agricolās superābant. Tum miserae agricolārum filiae parvōs liberōs in proelium portā
 20 vērunt et virōs³ vocāvērunt: "Semper virōs³ et liberōs amābimus. Cūr pugnātis? Nōne filiās et filiārum liberōs amātis?"

(To follow Lesson 15)

445. HOW TIBERIUS WON A WIFE

Mārcus, dux cōpiārum Rōmānārum, miles peritus erat. In Galliā cum Helvētiis Rōmānī pugnābant et Mārcus
 15 locum hibernis idōneum parāverat. Helvētīi castra Rō-

¹ school.

² then.

³ husbands.

mānōrum oppugnāre mātūrāvērunt et in silvis et agris semper dimicābant. Rōmānōrum periculum magnum erat. Multi in castris equitēs erant, multae et tenerae fēminae, multi et parvī liberī, sed nōn erat cibi cōpia.

Tiberium, fidum lēgātum, Mārcus dux vocat. “Nōne; periculum vidēs? Cōpiae Helvētiōrum magnae sunt et castra expugnābunt. Tulliam, pulchram filiam meam, amās. Nōne caput feri Helvētiōrum ducis in castra portābis? Tullia tuum praemium erit.”

Mox Tiberium cum paucis militibus albī equī ad castra 10 Helvētiōrum portābant. Longa et aspera via erat, sed validi equī et viri erant. Helvētīi magnam praedam, vinum, frūmentum in castra portāverant. Superāverat vinum ducem Helvētiōrum. Magnum in vinō periculum est. Tiberius gladiō ducem oppugnat, et mox ducis caput 15 ad Mārcum portat. Mārcus Tiberium laudat et lēgātō fidō Tulliam, filiam pulchram, dat. Sed Tiberi virtūs militum Rōmānōrum virtūtem auget. Helvētiōs in fugam dant; magnam frūmenti cōpiam et magnam praedam in castra Rōmāna portant.

20

(To follow Lesson 18)

446. THE DEFENSE OF THE BRIDGE

Porsena, rēx Clūsī,¹ hostis Rōmānōrum erat. Magnis cōpiis militēs Rōmānōs in fugam dederat et Rōmam urbem oppugnābat. Longus pōns in flūmine Tiberi lātō et altō erat. Valerius pontem occupāre mātūrat, et cum feris hostibus dimicat. Magnā virtūte Rōmānī in ponte 25 pugnābant, sed proeliō hostēs cōsulem superāvērunt. Cōsul pontem dēlēre² parābat. Tum vir validus, Horātius Cocles, trāns flūmen cum hostibus dimicāvit. Magnum periculum erat, magna caedēs. Multis corporis vulneribus

¹ *Clusium*, a town of Etruria.

² *destroy*.

Horātius labōrābat, sed pedem nōn mōvit et multā nocte hostēs in fugam dedit. Laeti Rōmānī Horātiō lātōs agrōs dedērunt.

(To follow Lesson 21)

447. A STERN FATHER

Brūtus et Valerius cōsulēs Rōmānī erant et cum Tarquiniō¹ rēge pugnābant. Sed malī filiī Brūtī contrā patrem ā Tarquiniō incitābantur. Cum paucis coniūrātis Rōmae imperium Tarquiniō dominō dare parābant. Sed per Brūtī servum fidum, quod periculō terrēbatur, cōsulī nōmina coniūrātōrum nūntiantur.² Ā cōsule filiī
 10 cum coniūrātis in collem Capitōlinum³ magnā cum celeritāte convocantur. Tum Brūtus hominēs superbōs culpat quod contrā urbem armantur. Pater miser filiōrum vitam nōn servāvit. Tum militēs hominēs malōs gladiis necāvērunt. Sed Brūtī, patris fortissimī,⁴ magna virtūs ā
 15 Rōmānis grātis semper laudābitur.

(To follow Lesson 24)

448. THE ROMANS AND THE ELEPHANTS

Pyrrhum, Ēpirī⁵ rēgem, quod fortis vir bonusque imperātor erat, Tarentī⁶ cīvēs in Ītaliā vocāvērunt. Cum Rōmānis multis proeliis dimicāvit Rōmānōsque superāvit, quod elephantōs⁷ in Ītaliā portāverat, quae animālia
 20 ante Pyrrhī tempus ā Rōmānis nōn visa erant. Sed Rōmānī, virī audācēs, pedēs elephantōrum pilis vulnerābant magnaque animālium caedēs fuit. Parī virtūte militēs cum Pyrrhī cōpiis dimicāvērunt. Omnia corpora necātōrum Rōmānōrum vulnera in capitibus habuērunt.

¹ *Tarquin.*

² *report.*

³ *Capitoline.*

⁴ *very brave.*

⁵ *Ēpirus*, a country northwest of Greece.

⁶ *Tarentum*, a Greek city on the southern coast of Italy; now Taranto.

⁷ *elephants.*

(To follow Lesson 27)

449. CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS SCHOOL

Carolus¹ Magnus, Francōrum² rēx, imperātorque³ Rōmānus, multōs in patriā lūdōs conlocāvit. Ibi filii et potentium et reliquōrum litterās⁴ discēbant.⁵ Saepe in lūdō rēx magnus erat, pigrōs discipulōs culpābat, ācrēs laudābat. Sed potentium liberī discere nōn cupiēbant, quod Caroli temporibus ā potentibus bella semper gerēbantur. Pigrōs liberōs rēx in aedificium vocāvit et "Quod primōrum," inquit,⁶ "filii estis, fidī discipuli nōne eritis? Omnēs mei civēs in lūdō parēs sunt et ad parem cūram ā magistris incitābuntur. Patriae nostrae laudem⁷ augēre cupiō,⁸ quod¹⁰ fortēs mei Franci sunt, sed ā Rōmānīs libris et litteris superantur. Magnā cum celeritāte magnōque cum studiō discētis, quod pigri discipuli nōn servābunt dōna mea meamque amicitiam."

(To follow Lesson 30)

450. BRENNUS, THE GALLIC GENERAL, IN ROME

Rōmāni antiquis temporibus cum Gallis, Ītalīae partis¹⁵ incolis, bellum gerēbant. Dux Gallōrum Brennus erat et Ītaliā vāstābat. Ad Alliam flūmen Rōmāni cum Gallis contendērunt, sed hostēs Rōmānōs superāvērunt. Tum ad urbem Rōmam contendērunt. In urbe neque in portis neque in viīs hominēs vidērunt, sed aedificia alta et pulchra²⁰ laudābant. In Forō⁹ sedilia vidērunt, ubi principēs Rōmāni sedēbant.¹⁰ Gladiis Galli principēs Rōmānōrum necāvērunt. Rōmāni lēgātōs ad Brennum misērunt et pecūniae cōpiam prō libertāte Gallis dedērunt. Sed superbus

¹ Charles.² the Franks.³ here emperor.⁴ letters.⁵ study.⁶ said (he).⁷ praise, reputation.⁸ wish, desire.⁹ market place, Forum.¹⁰ sit.

Gallōrum dux gladium in librā¹ conlocāvit et "Vae² victis!" exclāmāvit.³ Tum Camillus, fortis Rōmānōrum dux, legiōnēs in Forum dūxit et patriam ab hostibus servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 33)

451. SIR PHILIP SIDNEY

Proeliō asperō militēs contendēbant, multaque corpora
 5 et vulnerātōrum et interfectōrum hominum in terrā fuērunt.
 In quibus erat ūnus ē principibus quī ab omnibus propter
 virtutem amābātur. Sed vulnerātus ille et vulnere et siti⁴
 laborābat. Cui amīci auxilium dare mātūrāvērunt. Miles
 illi aquam⁵ in pōculō portāvit. Tum "Hanc aquam," inquit,
 10 "dux Philippe, quam ex flūmine portāvi habēbis. Grāta
 miserō hominī aqua erit." Sed Philippus mox militem
 vulnerātum vidit quī illam aquam habēre cupiēbat. "Huic
 militi hanc aquam dabis," inquit. Nōne hoc pulchrum
 factum erat, quod omnēs semper laudābimus?

(To follow Lesson 36)

452. WILLIAM TELL

15 Helvētia⁶ hodiē libera civitās est, sed nōn semper erat.
 Temporibus antiquis superbus homō, quī Gesslerus ap-
 pellābātur, Helvētiaē imperium habēbat. Is lignum⁷ in
 viā cōstituit, in quō pilleum⁸ posuit, omnēsque quī illā viā
 iter faciēbant pillei auctōritātem cōgnōscere iussit. Illud
 20 sōlus ex incolis Guglielmus⁹ Tellius nōn fēcit. Audivit
 Gesslerus et territus est. "Quem ille nōn movēbit?" inquit.
 "Alii idem facient. Tōta Helvētia nostrō imperiō liberābi-
 tur."

Ab omnibus Tellius, quod sagittārius peritus erat, laudā-

¹ *balance, pair of scales.*

² *woe.*

³ *cry out.*

⁴ *thirst.*

⁵ *water.*

⁶ *Switzerland.*

⁷ *pole.*

⁸ *cap.*

⁹ *William*

bātur. Quā dē causā Gesslerus malum cōsiliū cēpit. Parvum Tellī puerum in viā conlocārī et mālum¹ in capite pōnī iussit. In mālum Tellius sagittam mittere iussus est. Pater territus id quod Gesslerus iusserat facere parātus nōn erat. Sed malus ille homō ei dixit: “Nōne hoc faciēs?² Si² nōn faciēs, filium tuum interficiam.” Itaque Tellius sagittam misit, quae in mālum vēnit. Clāmōre magnō omnēs quī viderant Tellī factum laudāvērunt. Sed Gesslerus “Cūr alteram cēpisti sagittam?” inquit. “Haec sagitta,” inquit Tellius, “in³ tuam mortem servāta est, quod post¹⁰ puerī mei mortem nūllis moenibus dēfēnsus eris.” Audivit Gesslerus et magnā celeritāte Tellium in vinculis nāve ēripuit. Sed liberātus mox Tellius superbum hominem alterā illā sagittā necāvit Helvētiōsque liberāvit.

(To follow Lesson 39)

453. ARNOLD WINKELRIED

Helvētia Tellī virtūte libera facta erat. Sed incolae,¹⁵ propter pecūniae parvam cōpiam, multōs militēs nōn habēbant quī patriam dēfendēbant. Quā dē causā principēs et equitēs, Helvētiaē finitimī, terram occupāre incolāsque prō servīs habēre cupiēbant. Magnus militum exercitus in Helvētiam missus est. His militibus longae hastae, magnī²⁰ gladii, incolis Helvētiaē sagittae et saxa erant. Sed omnibus dē montibus Helvētīi convēnērunt et in hostēs asperōs impetum fēcērunt. Diū pugnātum est, sed hastis longis agricolae ab exercitū prohibēbantur, neque sagittae quās in militēs mittēbant eōs vulnerābant. Et ā dextrō et ā²⁵ sinistrō cornū agricolae hostēs oppugnābant, sed nūllum militem interfēcērunt. Tum ūnus ex illis, cui Arnol-dus Winkelriedius nōmen erat, in viam exiit itaque⁴ dixit:

¹ apple.

² if.

³ for.

⁴ and thus, and so.

“Trāns illum montem mihi domus cum liberis et uxōre¹ est. Hōs omnēs cum meā vitā patriae meae civibusque meis prō libertāte dabō. Viam libertātī faciam.” Tum, nūllis armis armātus, in hastās multās hostium corpus suum, ūnus prō omnibus, misit. Amīcī fortissimī trāns corpus viri audācis, quod humi erat, impetum magnā cum virtūte fēcērunt. Hostēs hōc ācri animō territī et in fugam dati sunt. Sed Helvētīi per omne futūrum tempus liberī remānsērunt, quod Winkelriedi virtūte, quam omnēs semper
 10 laudābunt, servātī sunt.

(To follow Lesson 42)

454. THE FIRST ERUPTION OF MT. VESUVIUS

Vesuvius mōns in Campāniā, Ītaliae prōvinciā, trium millium pedum in altitudinem est. Ex eō et ignis et flūmen saxōrum, quod ā nōbis “lava” appellātur, saepe in agrōs mittitur. Sed temporibus antiquōrum Rōmānōrum pulcher
 15 mōns erat, sub quō multi et agricolae et mercātōrēs vicos et oppida incolēbant. Undique multum frūmentum, vinum multum in agris et in collibus erat, multae in portubus nāvēs. Saepe principēs Rōmānī multōs diēs in his oppidis mānsērunt et hiemem fūgērunt. Sed haec omnia LXXIX
 20 post Christum annīs, mēse Augustō, cāsū miserō dēlēta sunt. Eō annō Plinius,² Rōmānārum nāvium longārum³ dux, cum Pliniō alterō, nepōte⁴ suō, Misēnī, quī portus Rōmānus fuit, erat. Eī ēruptiō Vesuvi facta esse nūntiātur. Et ipse vidit. Nam lūce diēs caruit propter fūmum.⁵
 25 Itaque nāve ad Vesuvium Plinius vēnit incolisque miseris auxilium parāvit. Undique clāmōrem miserum audiēbat hominum quī alii aliam in partem fugiēbant. Et ipse discēdere coāctus est. Sed saxīs illis, dē quibus diximus, in itinere interfectus est.

¹ wife. ² Pliny. ³ nāvis longa, a warship. ⁴ grandson. ⁵ smoke.

Omnēs agrī, omnēs vicī, oppida omnia ēruptiōne incēnsa sunt. Post paucōs diēs nihil in terrā reliquī erat. Saxa omnēs agrōs complēverant. Neque oppida illa tria sub monte conlocāta, Stabiae, Herculāneum, Pompēii, per multōs annōs ab ūllō homine vīsa sunt. Hodiē autem ei quī in, Ītaliā iter faciunt omnēs in Campāniā veniunt. Nam vident in his locīs quae ex illis oppidīs remanent — portas, vias cum aedificiīs suis, templa deōrum. Multae et pulchrae rēs, quae in incolārum domibus fuērunt, servātae sunt multaeque dē antiquōrum hominum vitā et fortunā cōgnōscet 10 qui illās rēs viderit.

(To follow Lesson 45)

455. THE TREACHEROUS SCHOOLMASTER

Falerii,¹ Etrūriae oppidum, ā Rōmānis diū obsidēbantur. Sed fortissimī incolae magnā virtūte patriam tūtā ab hostibus servābant. Quōdam diē senex plūrimis cum pueris ex oppidī portā ad castra Rōmāna exiit. 15 Cuius adventum inter castra et oppidum nōbilissimus Rōmānōrum dux, Camillus nōmine, exspectāvit. Ille autem ad imperātōrem accessit dixitque: "Lūdī magister in oppidō Faleriis sum. Cārissimōs potentium cīvium filiōs tuae potestātī permittō. Brevi tempore superbī 20 incolae, quī liberōs suōs amant, et ipsi in castra tua pervenient et prō liberōrum libertāte Rōmānis civitātem suam dabunt." Turpī magistrī cōnsiliō lēnis Camillī animus permōtus est. Puerōs convocāvit eōsque flagellis² malum magistrum pūnīre et patrēs suōs dē illius malō animō 25 certiōrēs facere iussit. Grātiōr Faliscis³ Camillī magnitūdō

¹ In Latin, when names of towns that are plural in form are used as subject, the verb is plural; in English the verb is singular, as, Athens was a great city.

² *whips*.

³ *Falisci*, the inhabitants of Falerii.

animi quam victōria ipsōrum erat. Itaque pācem cum Rōmānis cōfirmāvērunt reiūque publicae Rōmānae clientēs facti sunt.

(To follow Lesson 48)

456. STORIES OF CAESAR

Caesar, summus Rōmānōrum imperātor, dē quō omnēs
 5 vōs multa iam audivistis plūraque audiētis, iuvenis iter per
 Hispāniam prōvinciam faciēbat. Nocte ad vicum per-
 vēnit, ubi ā principe bene receptus est. Superbior ille
 omni cive Rōmānō erat, quod in suō vicō plūrimum poterat.
 Propter quod Caesaris amici eum culpābant. Sed Caesar,
 10 prūdentissimus vir, dixit: "Superbus princeps nōn est.
 Princeps vicī maior est omnibus quī post primum Rōmae
 civem sunt."

Idem Caesar cum Pompēiō, duce summō, et cum suis
 civibus bellum gessit. Eō tempore in Galliam prōvinciam
 15 prō cōsule missus erat. Fīnis autem prōvinciae et Ītaliae
 flūmen minimē¹ lātum erat, quod Rubicō² appellātur.
 Cuius flūminis in ripā aciem suam Caesar instrūxit diūque
 expectāvit lēgātōrum, quī dē pāce missi erant, adven-
 tum. Postea autem, Rubicōnem ubi exercitū trānsiit,
 20 "Alea³ iacta est!" exclāmāvit. Ex eō tempore ācritur cum
 Pompēiō bellum gessit.

In illō ipsō bellō Pompēius, cuius militēs parēs numerō
 Caesaris nōn erant, Brundisiō, quod nōmen est portūs
 Ītaliae, in Graeciam trānsiit. Caesar ipse mare trānsire
 25 cupiēbat. Sed ventus⁴ asperrimus nāvem in aliam partem
 ēgit. Nautae territi ad terram sē recipere cupiēbant.
 Quibus Caesar, fortissimus vir, respondit:⁵ "Fortiter faci-
 ētis et tūti eritis, quod Caesarem Caesarisque fortūnās por-
 tātis."

¹ adverb of minimus.

² Rubicon.

³ die.

⁴ wind.

⁵ answer.

(To follow Lesson 51)

457. CORIOLANUS AND HIS MOTHER

Prīmīs rei publicae liberae temporibus Rōmae iuvenis quidam erat, cui Gnaeus Mārcius Coriolānus nōmen erat, vir maximā virtūte sed nōn cōsiliō prūdēns. Hunc, quod superbissimus erat, populus Rōmānus ex urbe exire iussit. Ille autem ad Volscōs exiit, quōs dē antiquā potestāte 5 monuit. Itaque illi cum populō Rōmānō bellum gerere mātūrāvērunt, cuius belli imperium Coriolānō dedērunt. Maximā militum multitudīne ad urbem accesserant eamque castris et vāllō obsidēbant. Saepe proelium commiserunt, neque tamen hostēs superāre potuērunt. Sed fēminae 10 Rōmānae ad Veturiā, Coriolāni mātrem, eiusque uxōrem Volumniā convēnērunt. Quae cum Mārci duōbus filiis parvis in hostium castra iērunt, urbem, quam viri dēfendere nōn poterant, lacrimis¹ suis dēfēnsūrae. Ubi Coriolānō fēminārum agmen accēdere nūntiātur, primō superbissimē 15 eās recēpit. Ubi autem ā sedili suō mātrem vīdit, maximē permōtus ad illam accessit. Cui Veturia “Hostisne filius,” inquit, “ad mē venit captaque ā militibus mātēr tua in tuis castris sum? Grāta mihi vīta esse iam nōn poterit, quod tē patriae tuae hostem, civibus nōn amicum reperiō. Nōnne in 20 mē, mātrem tuā, uxōrem, filiōs tuum amōrem dēmōnstrābis et cum exercitū tuō in Volscōs redībis atque urbī Rōmānae libertātem reddēs? Nihil turpius, nihil miserius ego tōtā in vītā vidī nec vidēre poterō.”

His māttris verbis² permōtus Coriolānus ab urbe castra 25 mōvit civitātemque liberā servāvit. Ipse autem culpātus ā Volscis postea interfectus est. Fēminis fortissimis summā laudem Rōmāni dedērunt templumque Fortūnae prō eārum subsidiō in urbe conlocāvērunt.

¹ tears.² words.

(To follow Lesson 54)

458. THE FAITHFUL WIVES OF WEINSBERG

Imperātor quīdam Germānus oppidum mūnitissimum, quod Weinsberg appellātur, quod civēs liberī esse cupiēbant, obsidēbat. Cottidiānis proeliis oppidī incolae cum militibus imperātōris pugnantes nec vincere poterant nec vinci. At¹ post longum tempus rei frūmentāriae inopiā oppidum labōrābat, quod commeātū omnī prohibēbātur. Quā dē causā litterās ad imperātōrem scripsērunt, quibus oppidum in eius potestātem dēdidērunt. Ille autem haec dē pāce cōstituit. Mulierēs omnēs exire iussit. "Portābitis ex oppidō," inquit, "vōbiscum quae tollere poteritis. Sed virōs omnēs occidī iubēbō." Diē proximō, signō datō, exeunt ē portā mulierēs, quārum quaeque virum suum portābat. Tum miserae fēminae sē ad imperātōris pedēs iaciunt. At¹ ille permōtus viris vitam dōnāvit² oppidum-
que tūtum ā militibus asperis servāvit.

(To follow Lesson 57)

459. TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Colōnī³ Americānī, quī rēgis Britannōrum imperia sibi nocēre crēdebant, litterās ad rēgem mittere cōstituērunt, et eis summās Britannōrum iniūriās⁴ dēmōstrāre. Quās litterās cōficere ūnus ex nōbiliōribus, Samuel Adams nōmine, ab iis iussus est. Filia autem Samuēlis parva literis visīs patri "Spērō," inquit, "brevi tempore litterās rēgis in manibus futūrās esse." Cui pater respondit: "Ego, mea filia, exīstimō rēgem superbissimum pedēs suōs in nostris litteris positūrum esse."
Militum Britannōrum dux, Gagiū⁵ nōmine, ā colōnis frūmentum cōferri audīverat, quō sē potitūrum esse spērābat.

¹ but.

² give.

³ colonists.

⁴ wrongs.

⁵ Gage.

Erant autem Bostōnī¹ viri patriae amantissimi, qui igne plēbi dēmōstrātūrī erant Britannum ducem profectum esse. Itaque nocte hī ignēs ā civibus visi sunt. Inter quōs Paulus Revērius, peritissimus eques, nihil morātus, equum cōnscondit² et maximā celeritātē per vicōs iter fēcit Britannōs iam ventūrōs esse vocāns. Sic tandem³ ad oppidum Lexingtonium pervēnit, ubi et Samuel Adams et Ioannes⁴ Hancock in amicōrum domibus erant. Hōs captōs sēcum redūcere Gagiū quam maximē cupiēbat. Sed ā Revēriō monitī militēs Britannōs fūgerunt. 10

Fortissimi erant militēs Americāni, sed ducibus male pārēbant. Centuriō⁵ quidam ūnum ex suis militibus aquam in castra portāre iussisse dicitur. Cui ille superbē respondit: “Ego nōn portābō, quod complūra iam pōcula portāvī. Quā rē tū tibi ipse hodiē illam comparābis.” 15 Nec meliōre ipsī centuriōnēs animō erant. Washingtonius arborem⁶ maximam militēs quōsdam magnō labōre moventēs vidit et eis centuriōnem auxilium ferre iussit. Ille autem “Num mē centuriōnem,” inquit, “esse tū scis?”

(To follow Lesson 60)

460. MORE TALES OF THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE

Multī inter Americānōs Washingtoniō, maximō duci, tam 20 inimicī erant ut ei imperium ēripere cōnārentur. Quae omnia fortissimō animō ille tulit. Cīvis quidam aliquem in silvā sē moventem audivisse dicitur. Summā cum diligentīā accessit ut causam cōgnōsceret. Quid autem eum vidisse arbitrāmini? Washingtonius humī Deum multis 25 cum lacrimis rogābat ut patriam auxiliō servāret. Cōnspectū permōtus, cīvis rediit neque ab illō visus est. Post multōs annōs, rē nūntiātā, crēdidisse sē dixit virum tam bonum Deō persuādere debuisse.

¹ locative, at Boston. ² mount. ³ at length. ⁴ John. ⁵ captain. ⁶ tree.

Philadelphiae¹ exercitus Britannōrum in hibernis erat. Illō tempore Howius,² exercitūs dux, ut cōpiās Washing-
tōni, quae praesidiō finitimis castris erant, pelleret cōsi-
lium cēpit. Semper autem eius cōsiliis duci Americānō
5 nūntiātis nē ea perficeret impeditus est. Itaque multā
nocte lēgātī et dux domum mulieris cuiusdam, Lydiae
Darrah nōmine, convēnerunt. Nē cōsilia audirentur eam
cum omnibus suis in domūs superiōrem partem ire coēgit.
Ipse in parte inferiōre lēgātōs imperiis suis summā cum
10 diligentīā pārēre iussit. Lȳdia autem, ut omnia quae
dicēbantur audiret, ad ōstium³ accesserat. Ubi lēgātī do-
mum reliquērunt, eam nihil dē cōsiliis scire crēdentēs,
virō sē ad vicum quendam profectūram esse dixit ut
rem frūmentāriam suis comparāret. Quem in vicum ubi
15 vēnit, centuriōnī Americānō ea quae audiverat nūntiāvit
ita ut Washingtonius dē periculō monitus exercitū Bri-
tannōrum fortiter resistere posset. Neque quisquam quae
Lȳdia tam fortiter fēcerat ante bellī finem audivit.

In proeliō quōdam ad Cowpens vicum factō Tarletōnius,
20 lēgātus Britannōrum, qui dux exercitūs erat, ā Guglielmō
Washingtoniō, lēgātō Americānō, vulnerātus est. Postea
mulieri cuidam Washingtonium tam ferum esse dixit ut
nōmen suum scribere nōn sciret. Cui illa vulnus dēmōns-
trāns "At optimē," inquit, "suum signum facere scit."
25 Illis autem temporibus ei qui scribere nōn sciēbant signum
prō nōmine faciēbant.

(To follow Lesson 63)

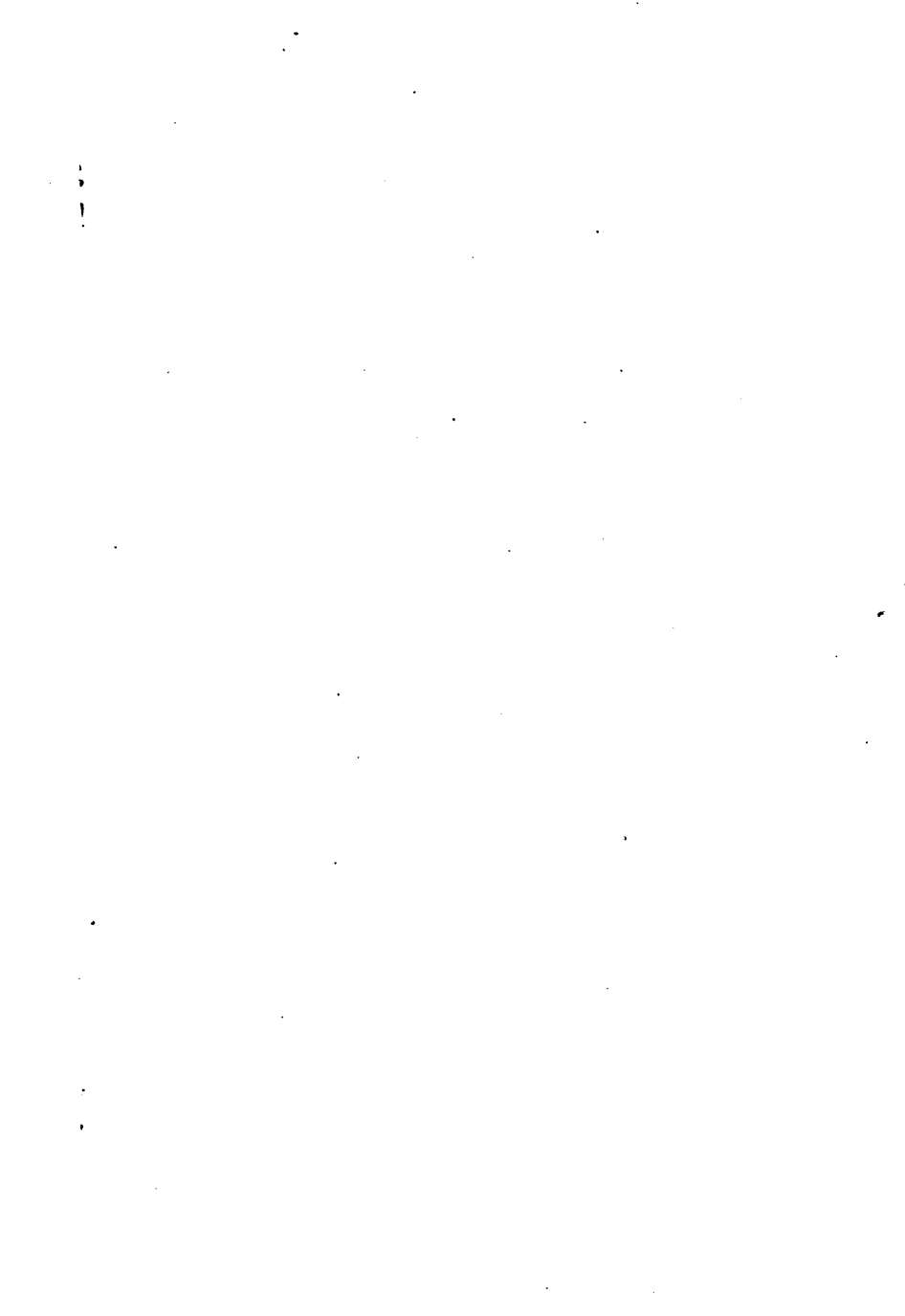
461. THE BURNT HAND

Porsena, Etruscōrum rēx, magnō cum exercitū Rōmam
urbem obsidēbat. Magnus Rōmānōrum timor erat, quod

¹ locative.

² Howe.

³ door (of house or room).





Mucius Scaevola dextram manum in igni pōnit

frūmentum nōn multum in urbe erat. Patriam tamen hostibus trādere nōlēbant. Quā dē causā iuvenēs quidam bellum cōficere cōstituērunt ūnumque ex suō numerō qui rēgem gladiō necāret misērunt. Agricolam sē esse simulāns¹ Mūcius in Etruscōrum castra profectus rēgem petivit. Rogāre autem quis rēx esset nōluit, nē hostēs Rōmānum sē esse cōgnōscerent, sed nōbilem quendam pulcherrimē armātum prō rēge interfēcit. Captus et ad rēgem ductus est. Rogātus quis esset aut cūr ūnum ē rēgis lēgātis interfēcisset, "Rōmānus sum," inquit, "quī patriae meae¹⁰ hostem necāre volui." Quae ubi rēx audivit, ut igni cremārētur imperāvit. Sed nōn territus prōcessit Rōmānus et dextrā manū in igni positā, "Ignem tuum," inquit, "minimē vereor. Plūrimi mihi sunt socii, qui tē interficient, nisi in Etrūriam redibis." Quibus verbis¹⁵ superbissimis auditis Porsena iuveni libertātem dōnāvit, magnō civis Rōmāni animō maximē permōtus. Rōmam ille rediit, et postea ā plēbe Scaevola vocābātur, quod est, is qui manum sōlam sinistram habet.

(To follow Lesson 66)

462. FOLLOW THE FLAG

Cum ē Galliā Caesar in Britanniam dē tertiā vigiliā pro-²⁰fectus esset, proximō diē in cōspectum terrae Britannicae vēnit. Ibi hostēs sē ad mare expectantēs vidit. Tantaе autem magnitudinis nāvēs Rōmānae erant ut terrae appropinquāre nōn possent. Quā rē territi hostiumque tēla veritī militēs Rōmāni nōn eādē quā solēbant² virtūte in²⁵ proeliō utēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar intellēxit, militēs ē nāvibus ad terram per mare accēdere iussit. Cum militēs, novam rem timentēs, quae imperāverat facere nōllent, is qui decimae legiōnis signum ferēbat, postquam deōs ut sibi

¹ *pretending.*

² *be accustomed.*

praesidiō essent rogāvit, "Mē," inquit, "sequēminī, milītēs, nisi vultis signum nostrum in hostium manibus esse. Ego quae ab imperātōre iussus sum faciam." Haec cum dixisset, ē nāve per mare in hostēs signum ferre coepit. Tum
 5 Rōmānī cohortātī inter sē, nē illum in hostium potestāte relinquerent, signum secūtī in Britannōs impetum fēcērunt. Acrīter ab utrisque pugnātum est. Rōmānis tamen arma multum prōderant, ita ut summā vī pugnantes hostēs in fugam darent.

(To follow Lesson 69)

463. TWO BRAVE RIVALS

10 Caesar ē Britannīā in Galliam reversus Cicerōnem lēgātum suum hibernis praefēcit. Ipse in Ītaliā profectus est. Galli autem absente Rōmānōrum imperātōre libertāte suā iterum potiri cōnātī sunt. Cum castra Rōmāna plūrimis cōpiis circumvēnissent, tantā vī in ea impetum
 15 fēcērunt ut ad multam noctem pugnārētur, neque tamen Rōmānōrum castra expugnāre potuērunt. Erant in exercitū duo viri fortissimī, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. Hī inter sē omnibus annis dē ōrdine contendēbant. E quibus Pullō, cum ācerrimē prō castris pugnārētur, "Quid,
 20 Vorēne," inquit, "exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrā virtūte iudicābit." ¹ Haec cum dixisset, ē castris prōcessit et, ubi plūrimī hostēs vidēbantur, ibi dīmīcāvit. Neque Vorēnus sē castris tenuit, sed nē timēre vidērētur veritus illum secūtus est. Pilum Pullō in hostēs mittit atque ūnum ex illis
 25 interficit. Omnēs autem hostēs tēlis in Pullōnem missis prōgredi eum prohibuērunt. Gladiō ūtī cōnantem circumveniunt vulnerantque. Sed illi auxiliō Vorēnus adest, in quem hostēs sē convertunt. Gladiō Vorēnus sē dēfendit et ūnō ex hostibus interfectō reliquōs in fugam dat. Sed iterum

¹ *decide.*



Rōmānī in Britanniam egrediuntur



ā Gallis circumventus cadit. Huic subsidium fert Pullō tam fortiter ut uterque complūribus hostibus interfectis summō cum clāmōre militum sē in castra reciperet. Sic fortunā factum est ut inimici alter alteri auxiliō essent.

(To follow Lesson 72)

464. IN LIGHTER VEIN

Ennius, vetus Rōmānus poēta,¹ Scīpiōnī, summō Rōmā-
nōrum ducī, amīcissimus erat. Quōdam autem diē Scīpiō
Enni ad domum cum vēnisset, ut cum poētā conloqueretur,
servus qui ōstium servābat "Dominus," inquit, "meus
abest." Visus tamen erat Ennius ā Scīpiōne, in domūs
superiōre parte sē tenēns. Post paucōs diēs Ennius Scīpi-
ōnis ad domum vēnit. Cui ille accēdentī "Domī," inquit,
"ego nōn sum." Tum Ennius "Ego autem tē et videō
et audiō." "Quid?" Scīpiō respondit, "ego servō tuō
crēdidī: tū mihi ipsī nōn crēdēs?"

Lincolnius, nōbilissimus optimusque vir, per bellum
illud quod civēs nostri alteri cum alteris gessērunt, civi-
tātī praeerat. Is fābulis saepe ūtēbātur, ut eīs qui ad sē
veniēbant persuādēret. Cum plūrimī ab eō ut aliquid
sibi daret rogārent, saepe quid respondēret nōn habuit.
Dēnique tamen morbō² quōdam labōrābat, qui ā nobis
"variola"³ appellātur. Tum medicō⁴ ille "Laetus," in-
quit, "sum, quod tandem habeō quod ūnī cuique dare pos-
sim qui habēre cupiat."

Centuriō quīdam, qui ante bellī finem ab exercitū discē-
dere volēbat, hoc nē faceret ā Shermānō duce impeditus est.
Cum pārēre nōllet, Shermānus illi "Nisi tū," inquit, "in
castra redieris, tē interfici iubēbō." Post paucōs diēs cum
Lincolnius ad exercitum vēnisset, centuriō ad eum vēnit dixit-
que: "Lēgātus mē discēderē nōluit et, nisi ad legiōnem

¹ poet. ² illness. ³ varioloid (a mild form of smallpox). ⁴ physician.

rediissem, mē interfici iussisset." Lincolnus et ad lēgātum et ad centuriōnem sē convertit, tum illi "Scīsne," inquit, "quid ego putem? Si Shermānus sē. mē interfectūrum esse dixisset, celeriter id quod vult facerem. Crēdō eum id facere et velle et posse."

(To follow Lesson 75)

465. AN EXAMPLE OF ROMAN FORTITUDE

Summa omnibus temporibus Rōmānōrum virtūs fuit, ita ut fortissimus quisque semper maximē ab iis laudārētur. Inter multa alia nōbilissimum Rēguli factum semper erit. Is bellō Pūnicō primō Carthāginiēnsēs terrā marique
10 vicerat, sed tandem proeliō superātus ab illis in vincula coniectus est. Cum pācem cum Rōmānis Carthāginiēnsēs cōfirmāre vellent, Rēgulum Rōmam mīsērunt, qui dē pāce cōfirmandā civēs certiōrēs faceret. Postulāvērunt autem ut sibi pollicērētur sē, si Rōmānis persuādere
15 nōn posset, in Āfricam reversūrum esse. Rōmam profectus Rēgulus in senātum vēnit, sed patrēs cohortātus est nē pācem cōfirmārent. Haec sunt quae illis dixit: "Utinam nē ad vōs venīre coāctus essem! Rēs mihi turpissima vidēbātur cum nostrōs vīdī ab hostibus manibus
20 vinctis in urbem dūcī. Num spērātis eōs fortiōrēs futūrōs esse, si pecūniā datā libertātem recēperint? Mortem mihi huius cōsili praemium exspectandam esse ego sciō. Sed utinam plūrēs mihi vitae essent, ut omnēs patriae prō victōriā darem. Morte meā incitāti, civēs, bellum for-
25 tissimē gerite." Itaque senātui persuāsit. Cum autem amīci nē in Āfricam in vincula rediret postulārent, vir fortissimus pārēre nōluit. Ubi Carthāginem rediit, ā Carthāginiēnsibus interfectus est. Sed eius morte Rōmāni quam maximē incitāti Carthāginiēnsēs vicērunt. Utinam nostra
30 patria semper in suis finibus tantae virtūtis virōs habeat!

SELECTIONS FOR READING

STORIES¹ FROM ROMAN HISTORY

466. EARLY BOYHOOD OF ROMULUS AND REMUS

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnū reliquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō² frātre, rēgnāvit et Rhēam Silviam, eius filiam, Vestae sacerdotem fēcit, quae³ tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Quārē Amūlius ipsam in vincula⁴ coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs⁵ abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super ripās erat effūsus; sed, relābente flūmine, eōs aqua in siccō reliquit. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitudinēs erant. Lupa ad vāgītum accurrit, mātremque⁶ sē gessit.

10

Cum lupa saepius⁶ ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit. Adultī⁷ deinde hī inter pāstōrēs primō lūdīcrīs⁸ certāminibus vīrēs⁹ auxērunt, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā 15

¹ These stories are from the traditional accounts of Rome's early history. Little faith should be put in them as a true historical record, at least as far as details are concerned. ² *pulsō* (*pellō*) *frātre*, abl. absolute, *after he had driven out his brother*. ³ *but she*. ⁴ See 311, 7. *impositōs abiēcit*: translate as if they were two coördinated verbs, *imposuit et abiēcit*. ⁵ *mātremque sē gessit*, *acted like a mother*. ⁶ *very often*. ⁷ *adultī* (*adolēscō*), *when grown* (literally, *having grown*). ⁸ *lūdīcrīs certāminibus*, *with playful contests*. ⁹ From *vīs*; do not confuse with *vir*, *virī*.

pecoribus arcēre coepērunt. Quārē cum iīs insidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset¹ eōrum avus, quae māter. Rōmulus statim armātis pāstōribus Albam² pro-
5 perāvit.

467. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum accūsantēs quasi³ Numitōris agrōs infestāre solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est; at Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōn-
10 siderāns, haud⁴ procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret. Nam Remus ōris lineāmentis⁵ erat mātīrī simillimus aetās-que expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet,⁶ repente Rōmulus supervenit, frātrem liberat, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum
15 restituit.⁷

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in iisdem locīs, ubi expositī ubique educātī erant, condidērunt⁸; sed ortā inter eōs contentiōne, uter⁹ nōmen novae urbī daret¹⁰ eamque regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt¹¹ adhibēre. Remus prior sex
20 vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim vīdit. Sic Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur. Cuius¹² angustias inridēns cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum irātus¹³ Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbis: "Sic¹⁴ deinde, qui-
25 cumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea!" Ita sōlus potitus est imperiō¹⁵ Rōmulus.

¹ For mood and tense, see 369-374. ² See 237. ³ on the ground that. ⁴ haud . . . āgnōsceret, came very near recognizing his grandson. ⁵ See 157. ⁶ dum, while, regularly takes the pres. ind. where the English uses the imperfect; translate "was keeping." ⁷ restituit. ⁸ condō. ⁹ as to which of the two. ¹⁰ Why subjunctive? ¹¹ dēcernō. ¹² its. ¹³ in anger. ¹⁴ Supply pereat, let him perish, or some similar verb. ¹⁵ For case, see 337.

468. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

War with the Sabines

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in ¹ proximō lūcus; hunc asyllum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs ² latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vicinās gentēs mīsīt, quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent.³ Nusquam benīgnē audīta lēgatiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asyllum aperuistis? Id enim compār foret ⁴ cōnūbium." Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indicī ⁵ deinde finitimīs spectāculum iubet. Multī ⁶ convēnērunt studiō videndae novae urbis, maximē Sabīnī cum liberis et coniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque ⁷ conversae mentēs ⁸ cum oculīs erant, tum signō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.⁹

Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs ¹⁰ raptās ¹¹ bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt,¹² quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum ¹³ ierat. Huius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī ¹⁴ exercitum suum ¹⁵ in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petiit quod Sabīnī in sinistris manibus gererent,¹⁶ vidēlicet aureōs ānulōs et armillās. Quibus dolōsē prōmissis, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem per-

¹ in proximō, near by. ² number. ³ See 364. ⁴ = esset, would be. ⁵ Pres. pass. infin. of indicō, to be announced. ⁶ eō = in spectāculum. ⁷ mentēs cum oculis, minds and eyes alike (literally, minds with eyes). ⁸ The connective, et, is often omitted in rapid historical narrative. ⁹ ob virginēs raptās, on account of the seizure of the maidens (literally, on account of the seized maidens). ¹⁰ nanciācor. ¹¹ Supine to denote purpose; see 435. ¹² sī . . . perdūxisset, if she would lead. ¹³ wore.

dūxit, ubi Tatiū scūtīs eam¹ obruī iussit; nam et² ea in laevis habuerant. Sīc impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est.

469. ROMULUS, FIRST KING OF THE ROMANS

Peace with the Sabines. Death of Romulus

Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcessit, et in eō locō ubi
5 nunc Forum Rōmānum est pugnam cōseruit. Primō
impetū vir inter Rōmānōs insignis, nōmine Hostilius, fortissimē dīmican³ cecidit⁴; quārē Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs,⁵ imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt longē⁶ aliud esse virginēs
10 rapere, aliud pugnāre cum virīs." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit, et exercitus restitit.⁷ Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre et, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs
ōrantēs,⁸ pācem conciliāvērunt.

15 Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērūm haud ita multō post, occisō Tatiō, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit. Centum deinde ex senīōribus ēlēgit, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōstituit, populum in trī-
20 gintā cūriās distribuit. His ita ōrdinātis, cum ad⁹ exercitum lūstrandum cōntiōnem in campō habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās et Rōmulus ē cōspectū ablātus est.¹⁰ Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est.¹¹ Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō¹² cōstitutā, ipse prō deō cultus¹³ et Quirīnus est
25 appellātus.

¹ eam obruī iussit, ordered her to be buried. ² et ea, these also. ³ while fighting. ⁴ cecidit. ⁵ hosts. ⁶ longē aliud esse . . . aliud, that it is one thing . . . quite another. ⁷ resistō, held its ground. ⁸ by beseeching. ⁹ See 496, 3. ¹⁰ auferō. ¹¹ crēditus est, he was believed. ¹² in honor of Romulus. ¹³ colō.

470. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

(716-673 B.C.)

Successit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclutā iūstitiā¹ et religiōne. Is Curibus,² ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accītus est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populū ferū religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima instituit. Aram Vestae cōsecrāvit, et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum³ virginibus dedit. Flāminem⁴ Iovis sacerdotem creāvit eumque insignī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc, ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmīssīs, dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacris fulmina essent⁵ prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsit. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit. Postridiē omnēs ad aedēs⁶ rēgiās convēnērunt silentēsque exspectābant quid futūrum esset. Atque sōle ortō⁷ dēlābitur ē caelō scūtum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē fūrtō auferri⁸ posset, Māmuriū fabrum undecim scūta eādē fōrmā⁸ fabricāre iussit. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdotēs lēgit, quī ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, cūstōdirent.

471. NUMA POMPILIUS, SECOND KING OF THE ROMANS

Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae Numa Pompilius dēscripsit; nefāstōs⁹ fāstōsque diēs fēcit; portās¹⁰ Iānō¹⁰ geminō aedificāvit ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam

¹ For case, see 303. ² Curibus . . . Sabīnōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines; why is the prep. omitted with Curibus? ³ to be kept. ⁴ Flāminem . . . creāvit, he appointed a priest as flamen for Jupiter. ⁵ essent prōcūranda, should be taken care of (i.e. averted). ⁶ aedēs rēgiās, the palace. ⁷ sōle ortō (orior), at sunrise. ⁸ eādē fōrmā: see 303. ⁹ nefāstōs . . . fēcit, he made a distinction between sacred days and business days. ¹⁰ Iānō geminō, in honor of two-headed Janus.

apertus,¹ in armīs esse cīvitatē, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs, significābat.

Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō maiōrem institūtis suis auctōritatē conciliāret, simulāvit sibi² cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna eiusque³ monitū sē omnia quae ageret facere. Lūcus erat, quem⁴ medium fōns perennī⁵ rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitris sē inferēbat, velut ad congressum deae; ita omnium animōs eā⁶ pietāte imbuīt, ut fidēs ac iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō exstinctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus⁷ est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitatē auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

472. MUCIUS SCAEVOLA

(507 B.C.)

Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius, vir Rōmānae cōstantiae, senātum adiit et veniam⁸ trāsfugiendī petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte⁹ cum in castra Porsenae vēnisset, ibi in cōfertissimā turbā prope tribūnal cōstitit.¹⁰ Stīpendium tunc forte mīlitibus dabātur et scriba cum rēge parī ferē ōrnātū sedēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, illum prō rēge occidit. Apprehēsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus¹¹ dextram accēnsō¹² ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, velut manum pūniēns, quod in caede peccās-

¹ Agrees with Iānus understood, subject of significābat, when opened.

² sibi esse, that he had: why is sibi dative? ³ eiusque monitū, at her suggestion. ⁴ quem medium, the middle of which. ⁵ perennī aquā: see 303.

⁶ eā pietāte, with such piety. ⁷ sepeliō. ⁸ veniam trāsfugiendī, permission to go over (to the enemy). ⁹ privilegē. ¹⁰ cōsistō. ¹¹ pertrahō.

¹² accēnsō foculō, in a brazier that was burning.

set. Attonitus mirāculō rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, ait trecentōs adversus eum suī¹ similēs coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus bellum acceptis obsidibus dēposuit. Mūciō prāta trāns Tiberim data, ab eō Mūcia appellāta. Statuas quoque eī honōris grātiā cōstitutā est.

473. PUBLIUS DECIUS

(343 B.C.)

P. Decius, Valeiō² Maximō et Cornēliō Cossō cōsuli-
bus, tribūnus militum fuit. Exercitū Rōmānō in angus-
tīs Gaurī montis clausō Decius ēditum collem cōspēxit
imminentem hostium castris. Acceptō praesidiō verticem³ ¹⁰
occupāvit, hostēs terruit, cōsulī spatium dedit ad subdū-
cendum agmen in aequiōrem locum. Ipse, colle quem
īnsēderat undique armātis circumdatō, intempestā nocte
per⁴ mediās hostium cūstōdiās somnō oppressās incolumis⁵
ēvāsit. Quā rē ab exercitū dōnātus est corōnā civicā, quae ¹⁵
dabātur ei qui⁶ civēs in bellō servāsset. Cōsul fuit bellō
Latīnō cum Mānliō Torquātō. Hōc bellō cum⁷ utrīque
cōsulī somniō obvēnisset, eōs victōrēs futūrōs, quōrum
dux in proeliō cecidisset, convēnit inter eōs ut,⁸ utrīus
cornū⁹ in aciē labōrāret, is diīs sē Mānibus dēvovēret. ²⁰
Inclīnante suā parte Decius sē et hostēs diīs Mānibus
dēvōvit. Armātus in equum īsiluit ac sē in mediōs hostēs
immisit; corruit obrutus tēlis et victōriam suīs reliquit.

¹ Refers to Mūcius. ² Valeriō . . . cōsulibus, in the consulship of, etc.,
abl. absolute; see 316. ³ the summit of the hill. ⁴ per . . . cūstōdiās,
through the midst of the enemy's pickets. ⁵ safely. ⁶ one who. ⁷ cum . . .
obvēnisset; when the two consuls had dreamed (literally, when it had come
to each of the two consuls by a dream). ⁸ ut . . . dēvovēret is subject of
convēnit; translate "it was agreed among them that he whose (utrīus), etc.,
should," etc. ⁹ Nominative.

474. GAIUS DUILIUS

(260 B.C.)

I. Gāius Duīlius Poenōs nāvālī pugnā prīmus¹ dēvicit. Quī cum vidēret nāvēs Rōmānās ā Pūnicīs vėlōcitātē superārī, manūs² ferreās, māchinam ad comprehendendās hostium nāvēs tenendāsque ūtilem, excōgitāvit. Quae
 5 manūs² ubi hostilem apprehenderant nāvem, superiectō ponte trānsgridiēbātur Rōmānus³ et in ipsōrum ratibus comminus dīmīcābant, unde⁴ Rōmānīs, quī rōbore praestābant, facilis victōria fuit. Celeriter sunt expugnatae nāvēs Pūnicae trigintā, mersae⁵ tredecim.

10 Duīlius victor Rōmam reversus prīmus nāvālem triumphum ēgit. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs grātiōr fuit, quod invictī⁶ terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum⁷ possent. Itaque Duīliō⁸ concessum est ut per omnem vitam praelūcente fūnālī et praecinente tībīcine ā cēnā rediret.

15 II. Hannibal, dux classis Pūnicae, ē nāvī quae iam capiēbātur, in scapham saltū sē dēmīttēns Rōmānōrum manūs effūgit. Verītus autem nē in patriā classis⁹ āmissae poenās daret, cīvium odium astūtiā āvertit, nam ex illā infēlicī pugnā priusquam clādīs nūntius domum perveniret
 20 quendam ex amīcīs Carthāginem mīsīt. Quī postquam cūriam intrāvit, "Cōnsulit"¹⁰ inquit "vōs Hannibal, cum dux Rōmānōrum magnīs cōpiīs maritimīs instrūctīs advēnerit, num cum eō cōnfligere dēbeat?" Acclāmāvit ūniversus senātus nōn esse dubium quīn¹¹ cōnfligī oportē-

¹ prīmus dēvicit, *was the first to conquer.* ² manūs ferreās, *grappling irons.* ³ the Romans, a collective noun. ⁴ and as a consequence. ⁵ mergō. ⁶ invictī terrā, *victorious on land.* ⁷ plūrimum possent, *they were supreme.* ⁸ Duīliō concessum est ut, etc., *Duilius was allowed to, etc.* ⁹ classis āmissae, *for losing the fleet.* ¹⁰ Cōnsulit . . . vōs . . . num, *asks your advice as to whether.* ¹¹ that.

ret. Tum ille "Cōnflixit" inquit "et superātus est." Ita nōn potuērunt factum damnāre, quod ipsī fieri dēbuisse iūdicāverant. Sic Hannibal victus crucis supplicium effūgit: nam eō poenae genere dux rē male gestā apud Poenōs adficiēbātur.

5

475. APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER

(249 B.C.)

Appius Claudius, vir stultae temeritātis, cōsul adversus Poenōs profectus priōrum ducum cōnsilia palam reprehendēbat sēque, quō¹ diē hostem vīdisset, bellum cōfectūrum esse iactitābat. Quī cum, antequam nāvāle proelium committeret, auspicia² habēret pullāriusque eī nūntiāset,¹⁰ pullōs nōn exīre ē caveā neque vēscī, inridēns iussit eōs in aquam mergī, ut saltem biberent, quoniam ēsse³ nōllent. Ea rēs cum, quasi⁴ irātis diīs, milītēs ad omnia sēgniōrēs timidiōrēsque fēcisset, commissō proeliō magna clādēs ā Rōmānis accepta est: octō eōrum millia caesa sunt,¹⁵ vigintī millia capta. Quā rē Claudius postea ā populō condemnātus est damnātiōnisque ignōminiam voluntāriā morte praevēnit. Ea rēs calamitāti⁵ fuit etiam Claudiae,⁶ cōsulis sorōri: quae ā lūdīs pūblicis revertēns in cōnfertā multitudīne aegrē prōcēdente carpentō, palam optāvit²⁰ ut frāter suus Pulcher revivisceret atque iterum classem āmitteret, quō⁶ minor turba Rōmae foret.⁷ Ob vōcem illam impiam Claudia quoque damnāta gravisque⁸ eī dicta est multa.

¹ quō diē, on the same day that. ² auspicia habēret, was consulting the auspices. ³ Infinitive of edō, to eat. ⁴ quasi irātis diīs, because (as they thought) the gods were angry. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ quō, so that. ⁷ = esset.

⁸ gravisque . . . multa, and a heavy fine was imposed upon her.

CAESAR. GALLIC WAR. BOOK II (*Adapted*)

CHAPTER I

476. THE BELGAE FORM A CONFEDERACY AGAINST THE ROMANS

Dum Caesar in Galliā in hibernis est,¹ omnēs Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant obsidēsque inter² sē dabant. Coniūrandī³ hae erant causae: primum nōlēbant⁴ nostrum exercitum ad sē⁵ addūcī,⁶ deinde ab nōnnullis Gallis sollicitābantur. Hī populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant. Nōnnūlli mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs⁷ imperiis studēbant. Ab nōnnūllis etiam sollicitābantur, quod in Galliā ā potentibus atque ab iis quī cōndūcere hominēs poterant⁸ vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem⁹ imperiō¹⁰ nostrō cōsequī poterant.

CHAPTER II

477. CAESAR PROCEEDS AGAINST THE BELGAE

Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus est Caesar. Duās legiōnēs in citeriōre¹¹ Galliā novās cōscripsit.¹² In interiōrem¹³ Galliam cum hīs legiōnibus Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsīt. Ipse paucis post¹⁴ diēbus ad exercitum vēnit. Senonēs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, ea quae apud Belgās geruntur cōgnōscunt, atque Caesarī omnēs nūntiant manum cōgī et exercitum Belgārum in ūnum locum cōdūcī. Tum vērō Caesar contendit ad eōs proficisci.¹⁵

¹ was. ² inter sē, one another (literally, between themselves). ³ of conspiring. ⁴ From nōlō. ⁵ them. ⁶ Present passive infinitive, to be led.

⁷ novīs imperiis, revolution. ⁸ Imperfect of possum. ⁹ eam rem . . . cōsequi, to do this. ¹⁰ imperiō nostrō, under our rule. ¹¹ See map, page 22.

¹² From cōscribō. ¹³ the interior of. ¹⁴ afterwards. ¹⁵ to set out.

Itaque castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

CHAPTER III

478. THE REMI IMMEDIATELY SUBMIT TO CAESAR

Eō¹ dē imprōvisō celeriterque vēnit Caesar. Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex² Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Audecumborium mīsērunt, quī “Nōs” inquit “omnia in, fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum comiūrāvimus. Parātī sumus obsidēs dare et tua imperāta facere et tē oppidis³ recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt. Germānī, quī cis Rhēnum¹⁰ incolunt, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt.⁴ Maximus est eōrum omnium furor, neque potuimus prohibēre Suessiōnēs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, cum hīs cōsentire.⁵”

CHAPTER IV

479. CAESAR LEARNS FROM THE REMI THE STRENGTH OF THE ENEMY'S FORCES

Caesar ab hīs lēgātīs sic reperiēbat; plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs,¹ propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque expulisse, atque Teutonīs⁶ Cimbrīsque intrā finēs suōs ingredi⁷ prohibitis eārum rērum⁸ memoriā magnam auctōritātem sibi in rē militārī sūmere. Dē numerō eōrum omnia⁹ sē habēre

¹ *there, i.e. ad finēs Belgārum.* ² *ex Belgīs, of the Belgae.* ³ *oppidis recipere = in oppida recipere.* ⁴ *From coniungō.* ⁵ *from conspiring.*

⁶ *Teutonīs . . . prohibitis, abl. absolute, stating the reason or cause.*

⁷ *from entering.* ⁸ *deeds; refers to repelling the Teutones and Cimbri.*

⁹ *omnia explōrāta, full information.*

explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō posse; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīllia centum. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre.
 5 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā¹ Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum: nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad² hunc propter iūstitiam prūdētiāque tōtius bellī sum-
 mam omnium voluntāte dēferri.

CHAPTER V

480. CAESAR RECEIVES HOSTAGES FROM THE REMI AND
ENCAMPS ON THE BANKS OF THE AXONA

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē con-
 10 venīre principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit.
 Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad³ diem facta sunt. Ipse
 Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus monet ut
 manūs hostium distineantur. Id fierī potest, sī suās cōpiās
 Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint⁴ et eōrum
 15 agrōs populārī coeperint. His mandātis eum ab sē dīmittit.
 Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās
 ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse vidit, flūmen Axonam
 exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit.
 Quae⁵ rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat
 20 et quae⁶ post eum essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat. In
 eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā
 parte flūminis Q. Titūriūm Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex co-
 hortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim
 vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

¹ Ablative of time within which. Why is *memoriā*, 479, line 18, ablative?

² *on.* ³ *ad diem*, to the very day.

⁴ Future perfect indicative. ⁵ *Quae rēs*, this position, i.e. crossing the river.

⁶ *quae . . . essent*, the rear.

CHAPTER VI

481. THE BELGAE LAY SIEGE TO BIBRAX, A TOWN OF THE REMI

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum¹ est. Gallōrum atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Circum-
iectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus² undique in;
mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt. Ubi mūrus dēfēnsōri-
bus nūdātus est, testūdine³ factā portās succēdunt mūrum-
que subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta
multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī
potestās erat nulli.⁴ Cum finem oppugnandī nōx fēcisset, I-
ccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium ad Cae-
sarem mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius
sustinēre nōn posse.⁵

CHAPTER VII

482. THE BELGAE ABANDON THE SIEGE OF BIBRAX

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem⁶ ducibus ūsus⁷ quī
nūntiū ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et
funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō⁸ oppidānis mittit; quōrum
adventū hostibus spēs potiundī oppidi discessit. Itaque
paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dē-
populātī, multis vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis, ad castra Cae-
saris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ab⁹ millibus passuum 20

¹ sustentātum est, *the attack was sustained* (literally, *it was sustained*).

² Dative, governed by circumiectā. ³ This was done by placing the shields over the heads of the soldiers. ⁴ Dative of possession. ⁵ Infinitive in indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in nūntium mittit. ⁶ Isdem ducibus, *the same persons as guides*. ⁷ using. ⁸ For construction, see 294, 295. ⁹ An adverb, away, off.

minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut¹ fūmō atque ignibus sīgnificābātur, amplius millibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

CHAPTER VIII

483. DESCRIPTION OF CAESAR'S CAMP. HE AWAITS THE ATTACK OF THE BELGAE

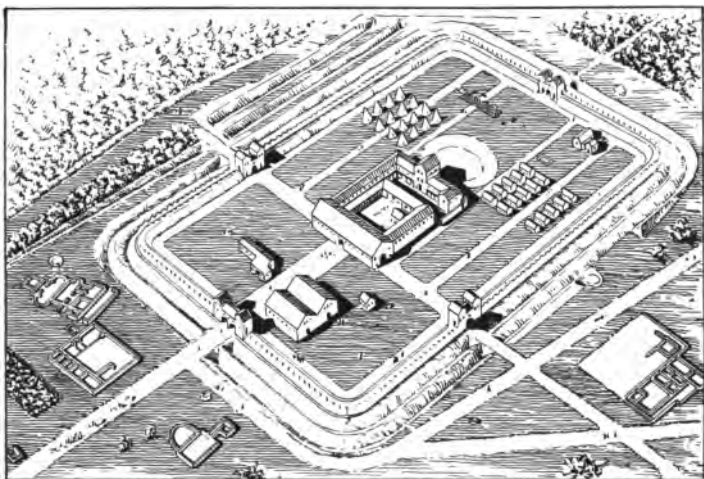
Caesar propter multitudinem hostium et propter opīniō-
nem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit, cottidiē tamen
equestribus proeliis quid² hostis virtūte posset et quid nos-
trī audērent periclitābātur.³ Nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs
intellēxit. Locus prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam erat
nātūrā idōneus, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, pau-
lulum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum⁴ adversus in lātitudinem
patēbat quantum locī aciēs instructa occupāre poterat. Ab⁵
utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit cir-
citer passuum quādringentōrum et ad⁶ extrēmās fossās
castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum
15 aciem instrūxisset, hostēs ab⁶ lateribus pugnantes suōs
circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās
proximē cōscripserat in castrīs relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs
prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex
castrīs ēductās⁷ instrūxerant.

CHAPTER IX

484. THE BELGAE TRY TO CROSS THE AXONA

20 Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exer-
citus. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant⁸;

¹ as; ut with the indicative means "as" or "when." ² quid . . . posset, what the enemy could do by their valor. ³ he tried to ascertain. ⁴ tantum patēbat quantum locī, spread over as much space as. ⁵ on. ⁶ ad extrēmās fossās, at the ends of the trenches. ⁷ See 311, 7. ⁸ were waiting to see.



A Roman Camp

(The lower view is based on a model of a reconstructed camp at Saalburg, Germany. The upper view is a sketch representing the same camp occupied by troops)



nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trāseundī fieret, ut¹ impeditōs aggredierentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trāseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre² equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs, prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōstrātum est. Ibi partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus³ potuissent, ut agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur⁴ commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.⁴

CHAPTER X

485. THE BELGAE ARE DEFEATED IN THE BATTLE THAT FOLLOWS

Caesar omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācrit̄er in eō locō pugnātum est. Nostrī hostēs impeditōs in flūmine aggressi¹⁵ magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs⁶ interfēcērunt. Hostēs, ubi et dē⁶ expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trāseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt²⁰ neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem⁷ prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt atque ubi ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere

¹ ut . . . aggredierentur, *to attack*, depending upon parātī erant. ² secundiōre . . . nostris, abl. absolute; *since the cavalry battle was more favorable to our men.* ³ not. ⁴ These subjunctives also express the purpose of trādūcere cōnātī sunt. ⁵ See 311, 7. ⁶ dē . . . spem sē fefellisse, *that they had been disappointed in the hope of . . .* (literally, *that hope had failed them about . . .*). ⁷ unfavorable

coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum¹ esse domum suam quemque reverti ad suōs finēs dēfendendōs, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam
 5 sententiam haec ratiō² eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cōgnōverant. His³ persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

CHAPTER XI

486. THE ROMANS PURSUE THE BELGAE AS THEY
DISPERSE

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac
 10 tumultū castrīs ēgressi nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō fēcērunt⁴ ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā⁵ dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce, cōn-
 15 firmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, qui novissimum agmen morārētur,⁶ praemisit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa millia passuum prōsecuti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt.
 20 Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum⁷ fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut⁸ erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

¹ optimum esse, *that it was best.* ² consideration. ³ His persuādēri nōn poterat, *these could not be persuaded* (literally, *it could not be persuaded these*). ⁴ fēcērunt ut . . . profectiō vidērētur, *they made their departure seem.* ⁵ quā dē causā, *why.* ⁶ See 364. ⁷ quantum . . . spatium, *as the length of the day allowed.* ⁸ as.

CHAPTER XII

487. CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST THE SUESSIONES, AND CAPTURES THE TOWN NOVIODUNUM

Postrīdiē eius diē Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit, et magnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuit. Celeriter vineīs¹ ad oppidum āctis,² aggere³ iactō, turribusque cōstitūtis, magnitudine operum et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti Suessiōnēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et petentibus⁴ Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

10

CHAPTER XIII

488. THE BELLOVACI ALSO SURRENDER TO CAESAR

Caesar obsidibus acceptis armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque cum ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter millia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs⁵ maiōrēs⁶ nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passis⁶ manibus²⁰ suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

¹ Wooden frames covered with hides, to protect the besiegers. ² moved, from agō. ³ The principal work for a formal siege. It was begun at a distance from the wall and gradually built up until it was equal to the height of the fortification. ⁴ petentibus Rēmīs, at the request of the Remi, abl. absolute. ⁵ For comparison, see 272. ⁶ pandō.

CHAPTER XIV

489. DIVICIACUS SPEAKS IN BEHALF OF THE BELLOVACI

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba : Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae fuisse : impulsōs ab suis prīncipibus ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Eōs quī eius cōnsili prīncipē¹ fuissent,² 5 quod³ intellegerent² quantam calamitatem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs utātur. Quod⁴ sī fēcērit,² Haedū-
 ōrum auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, 10 quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī⁵ qua bella inciderint,² sustentāre cōsuērint.²

CHAPTER XV

490. CAESAR'S REPLY. DESCRIPTION OF THE NERVII

Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haedūrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit ; quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritate⁶ atque hominū 15 multitudine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātis ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat : 20 nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus⁷ ; patī nihil vinī⁸ reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferrī : esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī⁹ sē populō Rōmānō dēdidis-

¹ authors. ² For the construction of these subjunctives, see 427. — cōnsuērint = cōnsuēverint. ³ because. ⁴ Quod . . . fēcērit, if he should do this.

⁵ sī . . . inciderint, whatever wars occurred. ⁶ For construction, see 303.

⁷ See 231. ⁸ See 251. ⁹ because.

sent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

CHAPTER XVI

491. THE NERVII AWAIT THE APPROACH OF CAESAR

Cum per eōrum finēs triduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius millia pas-
suū decem abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cō-
sēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā¹ cum
Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suis; exspectārī etiam
ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs
quique² per aetātem³ ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in
eum locum coniēcisse quō⁴ propter palūdēs exercitui⁵
aditus nōn esset.

CHAPTER XVII

492. THE NERVII PLAN TO TAKE CAESAR BY SURPRISE

Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit
quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum complūrēs ex
Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs Caesarem secūtī ūnā⁶ iter face-
rent, quīdam ex hīs nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnerunt. Hīs
dēmōstrāvērunt inter singulās⁷ legiōnēs impedimentōrum
magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam⁸
negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset, hanc sub sar-
cinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptīs futurum⁹
ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Nervīi autem
antiquitus, quō¹⁰ facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedirent,

¹ ūnā cum, along with. ² and those who. ³ Do not confuse this word with aestās, -ātis. ⁴ where. ⁵ Dative of possession, 231. ⁶ along with him. ⁷ inter singulās legiōnēs, between each two legions. ⁸ quicquam negōtī, any trouble. ⁹ futurum ut, the result would be that. ¹⁰ quō facilius, that they might the more easily.

fēcerant saepēs¹ quae instar mūrī mūnimenta praebērent. Hīs rēbus iter agminis nostrī impeditum² irī Nervii existimāvērunt.

CHAPTER XVIII

493. DESCRIPTION OF THE ROMAN CAMPING GROUND

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vēgēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus³ apertus, ab⁴ superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in
10 occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum⁵ flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

CHAPTER XIX

494. THE NERVII CARRY OUT THEIR PLAN OF ATTACK

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs. Sed quod ad hostēs appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā
15 Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque⁶ impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī, cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressi, cum hostium
20 equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, nostrī cēdentēs⁷ insequi nōn audēbant.

¹ *Hedges*, made by bending down young trees and allowing brambles and briars to grow among them. ² *impeditum irī*; future passive infinitive. ³ *at the foot*. ⁴ *ab superiōre parte, in the upper part*. ⁵ *along*. ⁶ See 294, 295. ⁷ Agrees with *hostēs* understood.

Interim legiōnēs sex, quae primae vēnerant, opere¹ dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, subito omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incēdibilī celeritātē ad flūmen dēcūcurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus² nostrīs hostēs viderentur. Eādem autem celeritātē adversō³ colle ad nostra castra atque ad eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

10

CHAPTER XX

495. QUICK WORK BY CAESAR. SPLENDID DISCIPLINE OF THE TROOPS

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda⁴: vēxillum prōpōnendum, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, aciēs īnstruenda, militēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērū magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediēbat. His difficultātibus duae⁵ rēs erant subsidiō⁶ — scientia⁶ atque ūsus⁶ mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī nōn minus commodē ipsī⁷ sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque⁸ legiōnibus singulōs⁹ lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil¹⁰ iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae¹¹ vidēbantur administrābant.

¹ opere dīmēnsō, *after laying out the work*. Dīmēnsō from dīmētiōr.
² in manibus nostrīs, *close upon us*. ³ adversō colle, *up the hill*. ⁴ See 438, 439. ⁵ See 294, 295. ⁶ in apposition with rēs. ⁷ ipsī sibi praescribere . . . poterant, *they could direct themselves on their own responsibility (ipsī)*. ⁸ his (respective). ⁹ each. ¹⁰ not . . . at all. ¹¹ quae vidēbantur, *whatever seemed best*.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

NOUNS

496. FIRST DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ā-

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	stella	-a	stellae	-ae
GEN.	stellae	-ae	stellārum	-ārum
DAT.	stellae	-ae	stellis	-is
ACC.	stellam	-am	stellās	-ās
ABL.	stellā	-ā	stellis	-is

497. SECOND DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -o-

SINGULAR

	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	hortus	-us	dōnum	-um
GEN.	horti	-i	dōni	-i
DAT.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō
ACC.	hortum	-um	dōnum	-um
ABL.	hortō	-ō	dōnō	-ō

PLURAL

NOM.	horti	-i	dōna	-a
GEN.	hortōrum	-ōrum	dōnōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	hortis	-is	dōnis	-is
ACC.	hortōs	-ōs	dōna	-a
ABL.	hortis	-is	dōnis	-is

a. The vocative singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension has a special form in **-e**: **horte**.

SINGULAR

NOM.	puer	ager	vir	filius
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī	fili, -ī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum	filium
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō	filiō

PLURAL

NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī	filiī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	filiōrum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	filiōs
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	filiīs

a. The vocative singular of **filius** is **fili**.

498.

THIRD DECLENSION

a. CONSONANT STEMS

SINGULAR

CASE ENDINGS FOR
CONSONANT STEMS
M. AND F. N.

NOM.	dux	miles	virtūs	caput	(-s)	
GEN.	ducis	militis	virtūtis	capitis	-is	-is
DAT.	duci	militi	virtūti	capiti	-i	-i
ACC.	ducem	militem	virtutem	caput	-em	
ABL.	duce	milite	virtute	capite	-e	-e

PLURAL

NOM.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
GEN.	ducum	militum	virtutum	capitum	-um	-um
DAT.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	ducēs	militēs	virtūtēs	capita	-ēs	-a
ABL.	ducibus	militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

SINGULAR				
NOM.	cōsul	homō	pater	corpus
GEN.	cōsulis	hominis	patris	corporis
DAT.	cōsuli	hominī	patri	corpori
ACC.	cōsulem	hominem	patrem	corpus
ABL.	cōsule	homine	patre	corpore
PLURAL				
NOM.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
GEN.	cōsulum	hominum	patrum	corporum
DAT.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus
ACC.	cōsulēs	hominēs	patrēs	corpora
ABL.	cōsulibus	hominibus	patribus	corporibus

b. -I- STEMS					CASE ENDINGS FOR -I- STEMS	
SINGULAR					M. AND F. N.	
NOM.	collis	caedēs	mōns	animal	(-s)	
GEN.	collis	caedis	montis	animālīs	-is	-is
DAT.	colli	caedi	monti	animālī	-ī	-ī
ACC.	collem	caedem	montem	animal	-em	
ABL.	colle	caede	monte	animālī	-e	-ī
PLURAL						
NOM.	collēs	caedēs	montēs	animālīa	-ēs	-īa
GEN.	collium	caedium	montium	animālīum	-ium	-ium
DAT.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālībus	-ibus	-ibus
ACC.	collis, ēs	caedis, ēs	montis, ēs	animālīa	-is, ēs	-īa
ABL.	collibus	caedibus	montibus	animālībus	-ibus	-ibus

499. FOURTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -u-

SINGULAR				
	MASC.	CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsus	-us	cornū	-ū
GEN.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
DAT.	cāsuī, ū	-uī, ū	cornū	-ū
ACC.	cāsum	-um	cornū	-ū
ABL.	cāsū	-ū	cornū	-ū

	MASC.	PLURAL CASE ENDINGS	NEUT.	CASE ENDINGS
NOM.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
GEN.	cāsuū	-uū	cornuū	-uū
DAT.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	cāsūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
ABL.	cāsibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

500. FIFTH DECLENSION OR STEMS IN -ē-

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	CASE ENDINGS	
					SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēi	-ērum
DAT.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

501. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

SINGULAR		
NOM.	vir	vis
GEN.	virī	—
DAT.	virō	—
ACC.	virum	vim
ABL.	virō	vi
PLURAL		
NOM.	virī	virēs
GEN.	virōrum	virium
DAT.	virīs	viribus
ACC.	virōs	virēs
ABL.	virīs	viribus
SINGULAR		
NOM.	senex	iter
GEN.	senis	itineris
DAT.	senī	itinerī
ACC.	senem	iter
ABL.	sene	itinere
		domus
		dēmūs
		domuī, ō
		domum
		domō, ū

PLURAL		
NOM.	senēs	itinera domūs
GEN.	senum	itinerum domuum, ōrum
DAT.	senibus	itineribus domibus
ACC.	senēs	itinera domōs, ūs
ABL.	senibus	itineribus domibus

ADJECTIVES

502.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM. NEUT.
NOM.	bonus	bona bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā bonō
PLURAL		
NOM.	bonī	bonae bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs bonīs
SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM. NEUT.
NOM.	liber	libera liberum
GEN.	liberī	liberae liberī
DAT.	liberō	liberae liberō
ACC.	liberum	liberam liberum
ABL.	liberō	liberā liberō
PLURAL		
NOM.	liberī	liberae libera
GEN.	liberōrum	liberārum liberōrum
DAT.	liberīs	liberīs liberīs
ACC.	liberōs	liberās libera
ABL.	liberīs	liberīs liberīs

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACC.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō
PLURAL			
NOM.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigris	nigris	nigris
ACC.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigris	nigris	nigris

503.

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
PLURAL			
NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācris, ēs	ācris, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

SINGULAR				
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	facilis	facile	ferāx	ferāx
GEN.	facilis	facilis	ferācis	ferācis
DAT.	facili	facili	ferāci	ferāci
ACC.	facilem	facile	ferācem	ferāx
ABL.	facili	facili	ferāci, e	ferāci, e

	PLURAL		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.
NOM.	facilēs	facilia	ferācēs
GEN.	facilium	facilium	ferācium
DAT.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus
ACC.	facilis, ēs	facilia	ferācis, ēs
ABL.	facilibus	facilibus	ferācibus

504.

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amanti	amanti	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantis, ēs	amantia
ABL.	amante, i	amānte, i	amantibus	amantibus
NOM.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
GEN.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
DAT.	eunti	eunti	euntibus	euntibus
ACC.	euntem	iēns	euntis, ēs	euntia
ABL.	eunte, i	eunte, i	euntibus	euntibus

505.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alii	aliae	alia
GEN.	alius	alius	alius	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
DAT.	alii	alii	alii	aliis	aliis	aliis
ACC.	alium	alam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliis	aliis	aliis
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria	
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium	
DAT.	ūni	ūni	ūni	tribus	tribus	
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tris, trēs	tria	
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus	

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	mille	millia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	millium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mille	millia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mille	millibus

506.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus (lāt-)	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, a, um
fortis (fort-)	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, a, um
vēlōx (vēlōc-)	vēlōcior, vēlōcius	vēlōcissimus, a, um
pulcher (pulchr-)	pulchrior, pulchrius	pulcherrimus, a, um
similis (simil-)	similior, similius	simillimus, a, um

507.

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
GEN.	lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
DAT.	lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
ACC.	lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs, is	lātiōra
ABL.	lātiōre, ī	lātiōre, ī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, is	plūra
ABL.	—	—	plūribus	plūribus

508.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, a, um	melior, melius	optimus, a, um
malus, a, um	peior, peius	pessimus, a, um
magnus, a, um	maior, maius	maximus, a, um
parvus, a, um	minor, minus	minimus, a, um
multus, a, um	—, plūs	plūrimus, a, um
multi, ae, a	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimi, ae, a
vetus, veteris	vetustior, vetustius	veterrimus, a, um
senex, senis	senior (maior nātū)	maximus nātū
iuvenis, e	iūnior (minor nātū)	minimus nātū
exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
inferus	inferior	infimus, imus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus
		postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus
		summus

(Lacking positive supplied
by adverb or preposition)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[cis, citrā, <i>this side</i>]	citerior	citimus
[in, intrā, <i>within</i>]	interior	intimus
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior	primus
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior	proximus
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior	ultimus

509.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārē (carus)	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē
male (malus)	peius	pessimē

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (*Continued*)

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
multum (multus)	plūs	plūrimum
parum, <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū, <i>long, for a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

510.

NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, a, um	primus, a, um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus (<i>or</i> alter)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecim
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
21. { vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus primus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsīmus
22. { vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	{ vīcēsīmus secundus <i>or</i> alter et vīcēsīmus

CARDINALS		ORDINALS	
28.	duodētrīgintā		duodētrīcēsīmus
29.	ūndētrīgintā		ūndētrīcēsīmus
30.	trīgintā		trīcēsīmus
40.	quadrāgintā		quadrāgēsīmus
50.	quīnquāgintā		quīnquāgēsīmus
60.	sexāgintā		sexāgēsīmus
70.	septuāgintā		septuāgēsīmus
80.	octōgintā		octōgēsīmus
90.	nōnāgintā		nōnāgēsīmus
100.	centum		centēsīmus
101.	{ centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus		{ centēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> centēsīmus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, ae, a		ducentēsīmus
300.	trecentī		trecentēsīmus
400.	quadringentī		quadringentēsīmus
500.	quīngentī		quīngentēsīmus
600.	sescentī		sēscentēsīmus
700.	septingentī		septingentēsīmus
800.	octingentī		octingentēsīmus
900.	nōngentī		nōngentēsīmus
1,000.	mille		millēsīmus
2,000.	duo millia		bis millēsīmus
100,000.	centum millia		centiēs millēsīmus

PRONOUNS

511. PERSONAL (AND REFLEXIVE)				REFLEXIVE (3D PERS.)		
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	—	—
GEN.	meī	{ nostrum, nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

512.

DEMONSTRATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	īdem	eādem	īdem	{ eīdem īdem	eaedem	eādem
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	{ eōrun- dem	eārun- dem	eōrun- dem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem īsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

513.

RELATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

514.

INTERROGATIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

515.

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

516. FIRST CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ā*PRIN. PARTS: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* — *love*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I love, am loving, do love</i>		PRESENT	<i>I am loved, am being loved</i>
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris, re	amāmini
amat	amant	amātur	amantur
<i>I was loving, loved, did love</i>		IMPERFECT	<i>I was loved, was being loved</i>
amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris, re	amābāmini
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur
<i>I shall love</i>		FUTURE	<i>I shall be loved</i>
amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis, re	amābimini
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur
<i>I have loved, loved</i>		PERFECT	<i>I have been loved, was loved</i>
amāvī	amāvimus	amātus sum	amātī sumus
amāvisti	amāvistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
amāvit	amāverunt	est	sunt
<i>I had loved</i>		PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been loved</i>
amāveram	amāverāmus	amātus eram	amātī erāmus
amāverās	amāverātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
amāverat	amāverant	erat	erant
<i>I shall have loved</i>		FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been loved</i>
amāverō	amāverimus	amātus erō	amātī erimus
amāveris	amāveritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
amāverit	amāverint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT			
amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris, re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

ACTIVE		IMPERFECT		PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur	amārēmur	amārēmini
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris, re	amārētur	amārēmini	amārentur
amāret	amārent	amārētur			
PERFECT					
amāverim	amāverimus	amātus sim	amātī sīmus	amātī sīmus	
amāveris	amāveritis	(a, um) sis	(ae, a) sitis	(ae, a) sitis	
amāverit	amāverint	sit	sint	sint	
PLUPERFECT					
amāvissem	amāvissēmus	amātus essem	amātī essēmus	amātī essēmus	
amāvissēs	amāvissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis	(ae, a) essētis	
amāvisset	amāvissent	esset	essent	essent	
IMPERATIVE					
PRESENT					
2. amā, love <i>thou</i>	2. amāte, love <i>ye</i>	2. amāre, be thou <i>loved</i>	2. amāmini, be <i>ye loved</i>		
FUTURE					
2. amātō, thou <i>shalt love</i>	2. amātōte, you <i>shall love</i>	2. amātor, thou <i>shalt be loved</i>	2. ———		
3. amātō, he <i>shall love</i>	3. amantō, they <i>shall love</i>	3. amātor, he <i>shall be loved</i>	3. amantor, they <i>shall be loved</i>		
INFINITIVE					
amāre, to love		PRESENT amārī, to be loved			
amātūrus (a, um) esse, to be <i>about to love</i>		FUTURE amātum irī, to be about to be <i>loved</i>			
amāvisse, to have loved		PERFECT amātus (a, um) esse, to have <i>been loved</i>			
PARTICIPLES					
amāns, antis, loving		PRESENT ———			
amātūrus, a, um, about to <i>love</i>		FUTURE GER. amandus, a, um, to be <i>loved</i>			
—————	—————	PERFECT amātus, a, um, having been <i>loved, loved</i>			
GERUND					
GEN. amandī, of loving		ACC. amandum, loving			
DAT. amandō, for loving		ABL. amandō, by loving			
SUPINE					
amātum			amātū		

517. SECOND CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *ē*PRIN. PARTS: *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus* — *advise*

ACTIVE		INDICATIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT			
<i>I advise, am advising, do advise</i>		<i>I am advised, am being advised</i>			
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur		
monēs	monētis	monēris, re	monēmini		
monet	monent	monētur	monentur		
<i>I was advising, advised, did advise</i>		IMPERFECT	<i>I was advised, was being advised</i>		
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur		
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, re	monēbāmini		
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur		
<i>I shall advise</i>		FUTURE	<i>I shall be advised</i>		
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur		
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, re	monēbimini		
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur		
<i>I have advised, advised</i>		PERFECT	<i>I have been advised, I was advised</i>		
monuī	monuimus	monitus sum	monitī sumus		
monuistī	monuistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis		
monuit	monuērunt	est	sunt		
<i>I had advised</i>		PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been advised</i>		
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus eram	monitī erāmus		
monuerās	monuerātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis		
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant		
<i>I shall have advised</i>		FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been advised</i>		
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus erō	monitī erimus		
monueris	monueritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis		
monuerit	monuerint	erit	erunt		

SUBJUNCTIVE

		PRESENT	
moneam	monēāmus	monear	monēāmur
moneās	monēātis	monēāris, re	monēāmini
moneat	monēant	monēātur	monēantur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
IMPERFECT			
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris, re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
PERFECT			
monuerim	monuerimus	monitus sim	moniti simus
monueris	monueritis	(a, um) sis	(ae, a) sitis
monuerit	monuerint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT			
monuissē	monuissēmus	monitus essem	moniti essemus
monuissēs	monuissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
monuisset	monuissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT			
2. monē, <i>ad- vise thou</i>	2. monēte, <i>ad- vise ye</i>	2. monēre, <i>be thou advised</i>	2. monēmini, <i>be ye advised</i>

FUTURE			
2. monētō, <i>thou shalt advise</i>	2. monētōte, <i>you shall advise</i>	2. & 3. monētor, <i>thou shalt (he shall) be ad- vised</i>	2. ——— 3. monentor, <i>they shall be advised</i>

INFINITIVE

PRESENT		PRESENT	
monēre, <i>to advise</i>	monitūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be about to advise</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised</i>	monitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised</i>
PERFECT		PERFECT	
monuisse, <i>to have advised</i>		monitus (a, um) esse, <i>to have been advised</i>	

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT		PRESENT	
monēns, <i>entis, advising</i>		GER. monendus, <i>a, um, to be advised</i>	
FUTURE		FUTURE	
monitūrus, <i>a, um, about to advise</i>		PERFECT monitus, <i>a, um, having been advised, advised</i>	

GERUND

GEN. monendi, <i>of advising</i>	ACC. monendum, <i>advising</i>
DAT. monendō, <i>for advising</i>	ABL. monendō, <i>by advising</i>

SUPINE

monitum

monitū

518. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *e*PRIN. PARTS: *dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus* — *lead*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

*I lead, am leading, do lead**Singular**Plural**dūcō dūcimus**dūcis dūcitis**dūcit dūcunt**I was leading, led, did lead**dūcēbam dūcēbāmus**dūcēbās dūcēbātis**dūcēbat dūcēbant**I shall lead**dūcam dūcēmus**dūcēs dūcētis**dūcet dūcent**I have led, led**dūxī dūximus**dūxistī dūxistis**dūxit dūxērunt**I had led**dūxeram dūxerāmus**dūxerās dūxerātis**dūxerat dūxerant**I shall have led**dūxerō dūxerimus**dūxeris dūxeritis**dūxerit dūxerint*

PASSIVE

*PRESENT I am led, am being led**Singular**Plural**dūcor dūcimur**dūceris, re dūcimini**dūcitur dūcuntur**IMPERFECT I was led, was being led**dūcēbar dūcēbāmur**dūcēbāris, re dūcēbāmini**dūcēbātur dūcēbantur*

FUTURE

*I shall be led**dūcar dūcēmur**dūcēris, re dūcēmini**dūcētur dūcentur**PERFECT I have been led, was led**ductus sum ducti sumus**(a, um) es (ae, a) estis**est sunt*

PLUPERFECT

*I had been led**ductus eram ducti erāmus**(a, um) erās (ae, a) erātis**erat erant**FUTURE PERFECT I shall have been led**ductus erō ducti erimus**(a, um) eris (ae, a) eritis**erit erunt*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*dūcam dūcāmus**dūcās dūcātis**dūcat dūcant**dūcar dūcāmur**dūcāris, re dūcāmini**dūcātur dūcantur*

IMPERFECT

*dūcerem dūcerēmus**dūcerēs dūcerētis**dūceret dūcerent**dūcerer dūcerēmur**dūcerēris, re dūcerēmini**dūcerētur dūcerentur*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PERFECT		PERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus sim	ducti simus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(a, um) sis	(ae, a) sitis
dūxerit	dūxerint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
dūxissem	dūxissemus	ductus essem	ducti essemus
dūxisseis	dūxisseitis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
dūxisset	dūxisset	esset	essent
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
2. dūc, ¹ <i>lead</i> <i>thou</i>	2. dūcite, <i>lead</i> <i>ye</i>	2. dūcere, <i>be</i> <i>thou led</i>	2. dūcimīnī, <i>be ye led</i>
FUTURE			
2. dūcitō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt lead</i>	2. dūcitōte, <i>ye</i> <i>shall lead</i>	2. dūcitor, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt be led</i>	2. ———
3. dūcitō, <i>he</i> <i>shall lead</i>	3. dūcuntō, <i>they</i> <i>shall lead</i>	3. dūcitor, <i>he</i> <i>shall be led</i>	3. dūcuntor, <i>they</i> <i>shall be led</i>
INFINITIVE			
dūcere, <i>to lead</i>	PRESENT	dūcī, <i>to be led</i>	
ductūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to lead</i>	FUTURE	ductum irī, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>led</i>	
dūxisse, <i>to have led</i>	PERFECT	ductus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been led</i>	
PARTICIPLES			
dūcēns, entis, <i>leading</i>	PRESENT	———	———
ductūrus, a, um, <i>about to lead</i>	FUTURE	GER. dūcendus, a, um, <i>to be</i> <i>led</i>	
———	PERFECT	ductus, <i>having been led, led</i>	
GERUND			
GEN. dūcendī, <i>of leading</i>	ACC. dūcendum, <i>leading</i>		
DAT. dūcendō, <i>for leading</i>	ABL. dūcendō, <i>by leading</i>		
SUPINE			
ductum		ductū	

¹ dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō, have as present imperatives dīc, dūc, fac, fer; the regular form of other verbs ends in -e, as gerō, imperative gere.

519. FOURTH CONJUGATION. VERBS IN I

PRIN. PARTS: **audiō, ire, audīvī, audītus** — *hear*

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i>		<i>I am heard, am being heard</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audiris, re	audimini
audit	audiunt	auditur	audiuntur
<i>I was hearing, heard, did hear</i>		<i>I was heard, was being heard</i>	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris, re	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur
<i>I shall hear</i>		<i>I shall be heard</i>	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris, re	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur
<i>I have heard, heard</i>		<i>I have been heard, I was heard</i>	
audīvī	audivimus	audītus sum	audītī sumus
audivistī	audivistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
audivit	audivērunt	est	sunt
<i>I had heard</i>		<i>I had been heard</i>	
audīveram	audiverāmus	audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audiverās	audiverātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
audiverat	audiverant	erat	erant
<i>I shall have heard</i>		<i>I shall have been heard</i>	
audiverō	audiverimus	audītus erō	audītī erimus
audiveris	audiveritis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
audiverit	audiverint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris, re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

ACTIVE		IMPERFECT		PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris, re	audirēmini	audirēris, re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur	audirētur	audirentur
PERFECT					
audiverim	audiverimus	auditus sim	auditi simus	auditus sim	auditi simus
audiveris	audiveritis	(a, um) sis	(ae, a) sitis	(ae, a) sitis	
audiverit	audiverint	sit	sint	sint	
PLUPERFECT					
audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus essem	auditi essēmus	auditi essēmus	
audivissēs	audivissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis	(ae, a) essētis	
audivisset	audivissent	esset	essent	essent	
IMPERATIVE					
PRESENT					
2. audi, <i>hear</i> <i>thou</i>	2. audite, <i>hear</i> <i>ye</i>	2. audire, <i>be</i> <i>thou heard</i>	2. audimini, <i>be</i> <i>ye heard</i>		
FUTURE					
2. auditō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt hear</i>	2. auditōte, <i>you</i> <i>shall hear</i>	2. auditor, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt be heard</i>	2. ———		
3. auditō, <i>he</i> <i>shall hear</i>	3. audiuntō, <i>they</i> <i>shall hear</i>	3. auditor, <i>he</i> <i>shall be heard</i>	3. audiuntor, <i>they shall be</i> <i>heard</i>		
INFINITIVE					
audire, <i>to hear</i>		PRESENT	audiri, <i>to be heard</i>		
auditurus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to hear</i>		FUTURE	auditum iri, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>heard</i>		
audivisse, <i>to have heard</i>		PERFECT	auditus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been heard</i>		
PARTICIPLES					
audiēns, ientis, <i>hearing</i>		PRESENT	———		
auditurus, a, um, <i>about to</i> <i>hear</i>		FUTURE	GER. audiendus, a, um, <i>to</i> <i>be heard</i>		
———	———	PERFECT	auditus, <i>having been heard,</i> <i>heard</i>		
GERUND					
GEN. audiendi, <i>of hearing</i>		ACC. audiendum, <i>hearing</i>			
DAT. audiendō, <i>for hearing</i>		ABL. audiendō, <i>by hearing</i>			
SUPINE					
auditum			auditū		

520. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN **iō**PRIN. PARTS: **capiō, ere, cēpi, captus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>I take, am taking, do take</i>		<i>I am taken, am being taken</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis, re	capimini
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

IMPERFECT

<i>I was taking, took, did take</i>		<i>I was taken, was being taken</i>	
capiebam	capiebāmus	capiebar	capiebāmur
capiebās	capiebātis	capiebāris, re	capiebāmini
capiebat	capiebant	capiebātur	capiebantur

<i>I shall take</i>		<i>I shall be taken</i>	
capiam	capiemus	capiar	capiemur
capies	capietis	capieris, re	capiemini
capiet	capient	capietur	capientur

PERFECT

<i>I have taken, took</i>		<i>I have been taken, I was taken</i>	
cēpi	cēpimus	captus sum	capti sumus
cēpisti	cēpistis	(a, um) es	(ae, a) estis
cēpit	cēperunt	est	sunt

<i>I had taken</i>		<i>I had been taken</i>	
cēperam	cēperāmus	captus eram	capti erāmus
cēperās	cēperātis	(a, um) erās	(ae, a) erātis
cēperat	cēperant	erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>I shall have taken</i>		<i>I shall have been taken</i>	
cēperō	cēperimus	captus erō	capti erimus
cēperis	cēperitis	(a, um) eris	(ae, a) eritis
cēperit	cēperint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam	capiamus	capiar	capiamur
capias	capiatis	capiaris, re	capiamini
capiat	capiant	capiatur	capiantur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
IMPERFECT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris, re	caperēmini
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur
PERFECT		PERFECT	
cēperim	cēperimus	captus sim	capti sīmus
cēperis	cēperitis	(a, um) sis	(ae, a) sītis
cēperit	cēperint	sit	sint
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
cēpisse	cēpissēmus	captus essem	capti essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	(a, um) essēs	(ae, a) essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent	esset	essent
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
2. cape, <i>take</i> <i>thou</i>	2. capite, <i>take</i> <i>ye</i>	2. capere, <i>bethou</i> <i>taken</i>	2. capimini, <i>be</i> <i>ye taken</i>
FUTURE			
2. capitō, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt take</i>	2. capitōte, <i>ye</i> <i>shall take</i>	2. capitor, <i>thou</i> <i>shalt be taken</i>	2. ——— <i>capiuntor,</i> <i>they shall be</i> <i>taken</i>
3. capitō, <i>he</i> <i>shall take</i>	3. capiuntō, <i>they</i> <i>shall take</i>	3. capitor, <i>he</i> <i>shall be taken</i>	
INFINITIVE			
capere, <i>to take</i>	PRESENT	capī, <i>to be taken</i>	
captūrus (a, um) esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to take</i>	FUTURE	captum iri, <i>to be about to be</i> <i>taken</i>	
cēpisse, <i>to have taken</i>	PERFECT	captus (a, um) esse, <i>to have</i> <i>been taken</i>	
PARTICIPLES			
capiens, <i>taking</i>	PRESENT	———	———
captūrus, a, um, <i>about to take</i>	FUTURE	GER. capiendus, a, um, <i>to</i> <i>be taken</i>	
———	PERFECT	captus, a, um, <i>having been</i> <i>taken, taken</i>	
GERUND			
GEN. capiendī, <i>of taking</i>	ACC. capiendum, <i>taking</i>		
DAT. capiendō, <i>for taking</i>	ABL. capiendō, <i>by taking</i>		
SUPINE			
captum		captū	

IRREGULAR VERBS

521. PRIN. PARTS : *sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be*

INDICATIVE

<i>Singular</i>	PRESENT	<i>Plural</i>
<i>sum, I am</i>		<i>sumus, we are</i>
<i>es, you are</i>		<i>estis, you are</i>
<i>est (he, she, it) is</i>		<i>sunt, they are</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>eram, I was</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
<i>erās, you were</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
<i>erat, he was</i>	<i>erant, they were</i>

FUTURE

<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, you will be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>

PERFECT

<i>fui, I have been, was</i>	<i>fuimus, we have been, were</i>
<i>fuisti, you have been, were</i>	<i>fuistis, you have been, were</i>
<i>fuit, he has been, was</i>	<i>fuērunt, they have been, were</i>

PLUPERFECT

<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fuerās, you had been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerat, he had been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fueris, you will have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
sit	sint	esset	essent
PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fuerim	fuerīmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerīs	fuerītis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerit	fuerint	fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT	FUTURE
es, <i>be thou</i>	estō, <i>thou shalt be</i>
este, <i>be ye</i>	estō, <i>he shall be</i>
	estōte, <i>ye shall be</i>
	suntō, <i>they shall be</i>

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	esse, <i>to be</i>	—
PERF.	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>	—
FUT.	futūrus esse (<i>fore</i>), <i>to be about to be</i>	futūrus, <i>about to be</i>

522. PRIN. PARTS : **possum, posse, potui, am able, can**

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES. <i>I am able, can</i>				
	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPF. <i>I was able, could</i>				
	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT. <i>I shall be able</i>				
	poterō	poterimus		

PERF. *I have been able, could*

potuī potuimus potuerim potuerimus

PLUP. *I had been able*

potueram potuerāmus potuissem potuissēmus

F. P. *I shall have been able*

potuerō potuerimus

INFINITIVE

PRES. posse, *to be able* PERF. potuisse, *to have been able*

PARTICIPLE

PRES. potēns (used as adjective), *powerful*

523.

PRIN. PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, benefit**

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES. <i>I benefit</i>				
	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsīmus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsīs	prōsitīs
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMPF. prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus	
FUT. prōderō	prōderimus			
PERF. prōfui	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus	
PLUP. prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus	
F. P. prōfuerō	prōfuerimus			

IMPERATIVE

PRES. prōdes, prōdeste FUT. prōdestō, prōdestōte

INFINITIVE

PRES. prōdesse PERF. prōfuisse
FUT. prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUT. prōfutūrus

524. PRIN. PARTS :

 Volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, will, wish*

 Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *be unwilling, will not*

 Mālō, mälle, māluī, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, ēs, etc.	nōlam, ēs, etc.	mālam, ēs, etc
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	—	nōlī	—
		nōlite	
FUT.	—	[nōlītō, etc.]	—

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
-------	--------	--------	---

525. PRIN. PARTS : eō, ire, iī, itum, go

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	eō is it	īmus itis eunt	eam	ī ite	
IMPF.	ibam, ibās, ibat, etc.		irem	{ itō itō	itōte euntō
FUT.	ibō, ibis, ibit, etc.		—		
PERF.	iī, istī, iit, etc.		ierim		
PLUP.	ieram		issem		
F. P.	ierō				
	INFINITIVE			PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	ire			iēns, euntis	
PERF.	isse			itum	
FUT.	itūrus esse			itūrus	
	GERUND			SUPINE	
GEN.	eundi				
DAT.	eundō				
ACC.	eundum			itum	
ABL.	eundō			—	

526.

 PRIN. PARTS : *fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made, become, happen*

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	fiō fis fit	— — fiunt	fiam	fi	fite
IMPF.	fiēbam		fierem		
FUT.	fiam, fiēs, etc.		—		
PERF.	factus sum		factus sim		
PLUP.	factus eram		factus essem		
F. P.	factus erō				

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	fieri	GER. faciendus
PERF.	factus esse	PERF. factus
FUT.	factum iri	

 527. PRIN. PARTS : *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry*

	INDICATIVE			
	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
PRES.	ferō fers fert	ferimus fertis ferunt	feror ferris, re fertur	ferimur feriminī feruntur

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
IMPF.	ferēbam	ferēbar
FUT.	feram, ēs, etc.	ferar, ēris, etc.
PERF.	tuli	lātus sum
PLUP.	tuleram	lātus eram
F. P.	tulerō	lātus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulisse	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	—
FUT.	lāturus	GER. ferendus
	—	PERF. lātus

GERUND

GEN.	ferendī
DAT.	ferendō
ACC.	ferendum
ABL.	ferendō

SUPINE

—
—
lātum
lātū

528.

DEPONENT VERBS

PRIN. PARTS : hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *urge, entreat*
 vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
 potior, potirī, potītus sum, *get possession of*

INDICATIVE

PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris, re	verēris, re	sequeris, re	potīris, re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potiminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
FUT.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potitum
hortatū	veritū	secūtū	potitū

529. FIRST OR ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love</i>
IMPF.	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i>
FUT.	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>
PERF.	amātūrus fui, <i>I have been or was about to love</i>
PLUP.	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>
F. P.	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	amātūrus sim
IMPF.	amātūrus essem
PERF.	amātūrus fuerim
PLUP.	amātūrus fuisset

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus esse
PERF.	amātūrus fuisse

. FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

PRES.	monitūrus sum, <i>I am about to advise</i>
	ductūrus sum, <i>I am about to lead</i>
	captūrus sum, <i>I am about to take</i>
	auditūrus sum, <i>I am about to hear, etc.</i>

530. SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

PRES.	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be, loved</i>
IMPF.	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>

INDICATIVE— *Continued*

- PERF. **amandus fui**, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
 PLUP. **amandus fueram**, *I had had to be loved*
 F. P. **amandus fuerō**, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. **amandus sim**
 IMPF. **amandus essem**
 PERF. **amandus fuerim**
 PLUP. **amandus fuisset**

INFINITIVE

- PRES. **amandus esse**, *to have to be loved*
 PERF. **amandus fuisse**, *to have had to be loved*

FOR THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS

- PRES. **monendus sum**, *I am to be, must be, advised*
 dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
 capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*
 audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard, etc*

SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

Nominative Case. — The subject of a finite verb is always in the nominative case. [34, 1.]

A predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the word to which it refers. — A predicate noun agrees in case (only) with the word to which it refers. [34, 2.]

Genitive Case. — The genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a noun. (This genitive is called the genitive of possessor when it denotes the owner or possessor.) [38.]

The genitive of the whole (partitive genitive), denoting the whole from which a part is (or is not) taken, is used with nouns, pronouns, adjectives (except numerals), and adverbs. The part taken is denoted by the noun, pronoun, etc., on which the genitive depends. [251.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus, maximus, summus, tantus*. [303.]

Dative Case. — The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case. [58, 2.]

The dative is used with adjectives denoting Likeness, Fitness, Nearness, Service, Inclination, and the like, and also with their opposites. [163.]

The dative is used with *est, sunt*, etc., to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. [231.]

The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end of the act or state expressed by the verb. Commonly there is combined with the dative of purpose another dative denoting the person interested in the purpose or end, or affected by it. [295.]

Most verbs signifying to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative case. [343.]

Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*, often govern the dative. [394.]

Accusative Case. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case. [46, 2.]

The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. [184, 1.]

Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the accusative without a preposition. [237, 2.]

Duration of time or extent of space is expressed by the accusative. [245.]

Ablative Case. — The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [94.]

Cause is expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition. [118.]

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. [131.]

The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. [142.]

Manner is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *cum*, but *cum* may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. [148.]

The ablative of specification tells in what respect the meaning of a verb, noun, or adjective applies. No preposition is used. [157.]

Verbs meaning to separate, remove, set free, deprive, lack, etc., are often followed by the ablative of the thing from which separation takes place. *Ab* or *ex* with the ablative is, however, often used with these verbs, regularly when the separation is literal and physical (not figurative) and the ablative denotes a person. But with *careō* a preposition is never used. [211.]

Place where is expressed by the ablative with *in*; but with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the locative. [237, 1.]

Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*; with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*, by the ablative without a preposition. [237, 3.]

In expressions involving a comparative with *quam* the same case is used after *quam* as before it. After comparatives without *quam* the ablative is used. [260.]

The degree of difference is expressed in connection with the comparative degree by the ablative without a preposition. [267.]

The ablative or the genitive of a noun, *if itself modified by an adjective or genitive*, may be used to describe a person or object. The genitive is less common in this use than the ablative; it occurs chiefly in expressions of measure or number, and in phrases consisting of nouns modified by *magnus*, *maximus*, *summus*, *tantus*. [303.]

The ablative is used with the deponent verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor*, and their compounds. [337.]

Locative Case.—Place where is expressed by the locative with names of towns, *domus*, *humus*, and *rūs*. [237, 1.]

Agreement.—A predicate noun agrees in case with the word to which it refers; in connection with a finite verb the predicate noun is called the predicate nominative. A predicate adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the word to which it refers. [34, 2.]

A verb agrees with its subject in number and person. [46, 1.]

An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits or explains. [58, 1.]

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. [65.]

A predicate adjective with a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the main verb. [184, 3.]

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands, not upon the case of its antecedent. [197.]

The Subjunctive.—Purpose may be expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with *ut* if the purpose clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *nē* if the purpose clause is negative. [351.]

Result is usually expressed by the subjunctive with *ut* if the result clause is affirmative, and by the subjunctive with *ut nōn* if the result clause is negative. [358.]

Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause in the subjunctive, especially after verbs of motion. [364.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

The subjunctive with *nē*, that, or *ut*, that not, is used as the object of verbs or expressions of fearing. [385.]

In a *cum* clause expressing time, the verb is usually subjunctive if the tense used is imperfect or pluperfect; otherwise, the indicative is used. [387, 1.]

In a *cum* clause expressing cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive. [387, 2.]

Wishes relating to the future are expressed by the present (or perfect) subjunctive, with or without *utinam*; wishes hopeless in present time by *utinam* with the imperfect subjunctive; wishes hopeless in past time by *utinam* with the pluperfect subjunctive. In wishes the negative is *nē*. [425.]

Indirect Discourse. — Simple statements, when quoted indirectly after verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving, are expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. [329.]

The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. [370.]

In indirect discourse the main verbs, if the clauses in which they stand make statements, are in the infinitive with subject accusative, and the subordinate (or dependent) verbs are in the subjunctive. [430.]

Supine. — The supine in *-um* is used to express purpose after verbs of motion. [435.]

Sequence of Tenses. — A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause; a secondary tense in the main clause is followed by a secondary tense in the dependent subjunctive clause. [374.]

SUPPLEMENT TO
ESSENTIALS OF LATIN
FOR BEGINNERS

(REVISED)

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON

PRINCIPAL OF THE HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE,
COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

BOSTON

CINCINNATI

ATLANTA

CHICAGO

**COPYRIGHT, 1919, BY
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY**

PEARSON. SUPP. TO ESSENTIALS.

W. P. 2

PREFACE

THE very definite requirements for the first two years of the study of Latin in Secondary Schools, as set forth in the Syllabus of the University of the State of New York, have made advisable the preparation of a Supplement to Pearson's *Essentials of Latin*.

To meet all the conditions of the course recommended for the first year the following matter has been included in the Supplement: certain new reading selections, five additional lessons on syntax, helps to the careful study of word formation and derivation, and a reprint of the vocabularies (about 500 words) listed in the Syllabus for memorizing in the first two half years.

The Reading Lessons are in addition to those on pages 209 to 247 of the *Essentials*, and are to be substituted for or used supplementary to them as the teacher deems wise. Since in this way more than enough material is provided to meet the requirements of the Regents the teacher will enjoy considerable latitude of choice. The new readings are the Story of Perseus from Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, and selections from Heatley's *Gradatim* and Eutropius's *Breviarium*, all in language carefully adapted to the needs of first year students.

The five Additional Lessons on Syntax cover the various uses of the genitive and ablative not treated in the *Essentials*: Predicate Genitive, Genitive with Adjectives, Subjective Genitive, Objective Genitive, and Ablative of Accompaniment, besides drill on compound verbs, and on vocabulary and word formation. These new Lesson Vocabularies and Drill Exercises have been made up largely from the new words of the Syllabus lists. The teacher can best determine at what places in the year's work to introduce these Additional Lessons on Syntax;

that it may be possible to introduce them early, if the teacher so wishes, the modal syntax in them has been kept simple. Furthermore, the relation of English to Latin is very fully treated in the pages (40 to 48) devoted to Word Formation; here likewise the suggestions of the Syllabus are followed. Important Latin words recommended for special study in derivation are listed and many of these are also indicated by an asterisk in the lesson vocabularies of the *Essentials*.

The Word Lists, on pages 49-64, give the words recommended by the New York State Syllabus of 1917, for mastery in the first two years. They have been rearranged, somewhat, in the interests of clearness. Compound verbs, for instance, have been put under the simple verbs of which they are compounds; this arrangement will, it is believed, aid in the accomplishment of one important purpose of the Syllabus — the study of derivation, both in Latin and in English. For the same reason, additional definitions, based on etymology, have been given for many words, and the order of definitions has been changed.

The general Latin-English vocabulary includes all the words given in the general vocabulary for the body of the book, as well as all new words in the Supplement and all words in the Syllabus lists.

It is believed that the material in the Supplement, if used judiciously by the teacher in connection with the main part of the book, will not only meet all the requirements of the new Syllabus of New York State but will also provide a first year Latin book thoroughly in harmony with current ideas of teaching the language.

Grateful acknowledgment is hereby made to Miss F. Rebecca Shove, Pelham Manor High School, Pelham Manor, N. Y., for assistance in the preparation of the Supplement, and to Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, for valuable suggestions.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

SUPPLEMENT TO PEARSON'S ESSENTIALS OF LATIN

SELECTIONS FOR READING

I

(From Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*)

PERSEUS

Acrisius, an ancient king of Argos, had been warned by an oracle that he would perish by the hand of his grandson. On discovering, therefore, that his daughter Danaë had given birth to a son, Acrisius endeavored to escape his fate by casting both mother and child adrift on the sea. They were saved, however, by the help of Jupiter; and Perseus, the child, grew up at the court of Polydectes, king of Seriphus, an island in the Aegean Sea. On reaching manhood, Perseus was sent by Polydectes to fetch the head of Medusa, one of the Gorgons. This dangerous task he accomplished with the help of Apollo and Minerva, and on his way home he rescued Andromeda (daughter of Cepheus) from a sea monster. Perseus then married Andromeda, and lived some time in the country of Cepheus. At length, however, he returned to Seriphus, and turned Polydectes to stone by showing him the Gorgon's head; he then

went to the court of Acrisius, who fled in terror at the news of his grandson's return. The oracle was duly fulfilled, for Acrisius was accidentally killed by a quoit thrown by Perseus.

I. THE ARK

Haec narrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus filius erat Iovis, maximī deōrum: avus eius Acrisius appellātus est. Acrisius volēbat Perseum nepōtem suum necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur 5 Perseum, adhūc infāntem, et cum mātē in arcā lignēā inclūsit. Tum arcam ipsam in mare coniēcit. Danaē, Perseī mātē, magnopere territa est, tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū¹ mātē dormiēbat.

2. CAST ON AN ISLAND

10 Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vidit, et filium suum servāre cōstituit. Fēcit² igitur mare tranquillum, et arcam ad insulam Serīphum perdūxit. Huius insulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa³ est, Danaē in arēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā 15 piscātōre quōdam reperta est, et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benīgnē excēpit, et domum tūtā in finibus suis dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgi grātiās ēgit.⁴

3. PERSEUS SENT ON HIS TRAVELS

20 Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitābat, et cum mātē suā vītā agēbat⁵ beātā. At Polydectēs Danaēn

¹ lap. ² Fēcit . . . mare tranquillum, quieted the sea. ³ From ad + pellō, drive ⁴ expressed. ⁵ spent.

magnopere amābat, atque eam in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē¹ grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōstituit. Tum iuvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est vītā hanc ignāvam agere; iamdūdum² tū adulēscēs es; quōusque hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī,³ et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

4. PERSEUS GETS HIS OUTFIT

Perseus, ubi haec audīvit, ex insulā discessit, et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū¹⁰ frūstrā quaerēbat; namque nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Grāiās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum, postquam¹⁵ tālāria pedibus⁴ induit, in āera⁵ ascendit. Diū per āera volābat: tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit, ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat: Gorgonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē⁶ horribilī, capita enim eārum squāmīs omnīnō contēcta sunt: manūs etiam ex aere²⁰ factae sunt.

5. THE GORGON'S HEAD

Rēs erat difficillima abscīdere caput Gorgonis, eius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum eī dederat. Perseus igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum inspiciēbat: hōc²⁵

¹ not at all. ² iamdūdum . . . es, for a long time now you have been. ³ Imperative. ⁴ See 394. ⁵ air: a Greek accusative singular form. ⁶ Abl. of description.

modō¹ ad locum vēnit, ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō concitātae sunt, et, ubi rem vidērunt, irā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum occidere volēbant²; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam magicam induit, et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum ēvāsīt.

6. THE SEA SERPENT

Post haec³ Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit: ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, ōlim offenderat: Neptūnus autem mōnstrum
 10 saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cottīdiē ē marī veniēbat, et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Ammōnis cōsultuit, atque ā deō iussus est filiam mōnstrō trādere. (Eius autem filia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō
 15 fōrmōsissima erat.) Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem sēnsit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō periculō extrahere: atque ob eam causam cōstituit imperāta Ammōnis facere.

7. A HUMAN SACRIFICE

Tum rēx diem certam dixit,⁴ et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea
 20 diēs yēnit, Andromeda ad litus dēducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem vincta (est). Omnēs fātum eius dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus accurrit; et, ubi lacrimās vidīt, causam dolōris quaerit. Illi rem tōtam expōnunt,
 25 et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus

¹ Abl. of manner. ² *tried*. ³ *these things, this*. A neuter substantive, rather than *rēs*, is used in the sense of "thing." ⁴ *named, appointed*

terribilis¹ auditur; simul mōnstrum, horribilī speciē,² procul cōspicitur. Eius cōspectus timōrem maximum omnibus³ iniēcit. At mōnstrum magnā celeritāte⁴ ad litus contendit, iamque locō appropinquābat, ubi puella stābat.

8. THE RESCUE

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit: et, 5 postquam tālāria induit, in āēra sublātus est. Tum dēsUPER in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit: et gladiō⁵ suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit, et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam mersit. Perseus, dum circum 10 litus volat, reditum eius exspectābat: mare autem intereā undique sanguine inficitur.⁶ Post breve tempus, bēlua⁷ rūsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub undās mersit, neque postea vīsa est.

15

9. THE REWARD OF VALOR

Perseus, postquam in litus dēscendit, primum tālāria exuit, tum ad rūpem vēnit, ubi Andromeda vinc̄ta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta est. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem 20 maximum gaudium sēnsit: meritās⁸ grātiās prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit⁹; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātirimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit, et puellam (uxōrem¹⁰) dūxit: paucōs annōs¹¹ cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud 25

¹ *terrifying*. ² Abl. of description. ³ See 394. ⁴ See 148. ⁵ See 94. ⁶ *is stained*. ⁷ = *mōnstrum*. ⁸ *fitting*; properly, *earned*, which had been earned, which he had earned. ⁹ From *referō*. ¹⁰ Appos. to *puellam*. ¹¹ See 245.

omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen cupiēbat mātrem suam rursus vidēre. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēphēi discessit.

10. TURNED TO STONE

Postquam Perseus ad insulam nāvem appulit,¹ sē ad locum contulit, ubi māter ōlim habitāverat: at domum invēnit vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam insulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē fūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus, ubi haec cōgnōvit, irā magnā com-
mōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit, et, ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium perrūpit. Polydectēs magnum timōrem sēnsit, et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit; ille autem, simul² atque hoc vidit, in saxum versus est.

11. THE ORACLE FULFILLED

15 Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Acrisī rediit: ille autem, ubi Perseum vidit, magnum terrōrem sēnsit: nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat³: in Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārīsam statim fūgit: frūstrā tamen; neque⁴ enim fātum suum
20 vitāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārīsae lūdōs magnōs fēcit: nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserat, et diem edixerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnerunt: ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conicit, avum suum cāsū⁵ occīdit, Acrisius
25 enim inter spectātōrēs eius certāminis forte⁶ stābat.

¹ From ad + pellō, drive. ² simul atque, as soon as. ³ See first story, p. 6.

⁴ neque enim, for . . . not.

⁵ by chance, accidentally.

⁶ by chance;

forte stābat = happened to be standing.

II

(From Heatley's *Gradatim*)

1. ORCHARD ROBBING

In Hispāniā ōlim vivēbat Nerō, puer improbus. Forte ¹ erat vicinō in hortō arbor magna, mātūrīs pōmīs gravis. Ubi puer arborem videt, magna cupiditās praedae animum occupat. "Num dominus mē vidēbit?" inquit puer cupidus. "Cūr arborem nōn statim ascendō?" ⁵ Itaque sine morā rārum capit et sē in arborem trahit. Iam inter pōma sedet; iam dextrā frūgēs grātās tenet.

At subitō raucum clāmōrem audit. Ecce ² sub arbore magnum saevumque canem videt. Frūstrā Nerō sē cēlat; ¹⁰ nam canis fūrem sentit completque agrōs clāmōre raucō. Dēnique sub arbore iacet expectatque puerum.

Diū puer in altā sedilī manet. Intereā cōnsilia multa et callida in animō volvit. "Nōnne saevus canis mox dormiet? Nōnne nox mē liberābit?" Dēnique, quod ¹⁵ canis praesidium nōn relinquit, puer dē salūte dēspērat.

At fortūna captivum iuvat. Taurus niger agrum intrat. Statim canem videt et saevā fronte inimicum antiquum petit. Nec recūsāt canis pugnam, sed dentibus modo ³ tergum, modo ³ frontem tauri temptat. ²⁰

Tum puer occāsiōnem nōn āmittit, at ex arbore dēsilit et fugam petit. Inimīcī nec fugam sentiunt nec pugnam relinquunt. Itaque Nerō ā tantō periculō tūtus prō salūte deīs grātiās agit. ⁴

¹ Forte erat, happened to be. ² See I ³ modo . . . modo, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another. ⁴ See *Perseus*, 2, note 4.

2. WAT TYLER

Ricardus, adhūc iuvenis, rēgnō Britannōrum succēdit. Mox erat gravis plēbis sēditiō. Vir rūsticus, nōmine Figulus, sēditiōsam turbam dūcēbat. Iamque multitudō ingēns urbem Londinium intrāverat et omnia spoliābat. 5 Inde,¹ dum cīvēs tabernās claudunt et fugam temptant, subitō rēx iuvenis cum paucīs equitibus adest. Figulus autem habēnās equī rēgis capit. Sine morā magister equitum gladium rapit et hominem audācem occīdit. Statim omnēs arma sūmunt tenduntque arcūs. Rēx 10 autem in medium prōcēdit. "Comitēs," inquit, "hīc iacet vester dux, numquam resurget. Dēpōnite tēla; ego posthāc vōbīs dux erō."

3. THE BABES IN THE WOOD

Duo ōlim erant frātrēs, Verrēs et Tīmōn. Hōrum alterum morbus gravis rapuerat. Hīc iam moribundus ² 15 frātre[m] ad lectum vocāvit, eīque parvōrum liberōrum cūram mandāvit. Ille multīs cum lacrimīs mandātum accipit, fidemque ūnum annum ³ integram servat. Secundō tamen annō,⁴ quod liberī agrīs nummīsque divitissimī erant, patruus ⁵ aurī ⁶ cupidus, insidiās nepōtibus 20 struēbat. Itaque duōs latrōnēs ad sēsē vocat. "Interficate," inquit, "clam hōs infāntēs; vōbīs magnum argenti pondus, pretium caedis, dabō."

4. THE BABES IN THE WOOD (CONTINUED)

Postridiē Tīmōn malā fraude nepōtēs ad sē convocāvit. "Hodiē," inquit, "vīcīnac urbis incolae fēriās agunt ⁷;

¹ *presently, by and by.* ² *on his death bed, dying.* ³ See 245. ⁴ See 131.
⁵ *(their) uncle.* ⁶ Genitive with adjective *cupidus*. ⁷ *are celebrating.*

hī igitur, ex meis servis fidissimī, dēliciārum¹ causā et voluptātis, vōs ad locum dūcent." Simul manū duo latrōnēs ostendit.

Liberī magnō cum gaudiō discēdunt, et iam animō mille laetitiās praecipuiunt. Mox autē viātōrēs ad dēnsam silvam, locum ad caedem idōneum, veniunt. Forte² ūnus ex latrōnibus³ alterō⁴ tenerior⁵ erat. Huius pectus grāta vōx liberōrum lēniverat. Hīc igitur, ubi ad locum veniunt, nōn modo⁶ factum recūsāvit, sed etiam suā manū comitem crudēliōrem interfēcit.

10

5. THE BABES IN THE WOOD (CONTINUED)

Liberī gladiīs et cruōre perterriti lacrimās effundunt. Victor tamen timōrem mulcet,⁷ eōsque in dēnsiōrem silvam dūcit. "Hīc," inquit, "manēte, dum ipse absum; mox vōbīs placentās lactisque cōpiam reportābō." Simul ē locō discēdit.

15

Ūnam hōram⁸ liberī sine timōre flōrēs silvestrēs undique carpēbant. Mox, quod famēs corpora premēbat, reditum latrōnis miserē cupiēbant. Frūstrā tamen hūc illūc currunt, et omne nemus miserō clāmōre complent, nēmō enim questūs eōrum audit. Tandem, fessī cursū et famē languidī, sēsē sub arbore dēciunt. Mors benigna celeriter labōrēs finit, nec deerat honor sepulcrī,⁹ parvae enim avēs corpora frondibus teneris tēxerunt.

6. CAUGHT BY THE TIDE

Canūtius, Britannōrum rēx, longē sapientior aliīs rēgibus¹⁰ erat. Huius ōlim opēs et auctōritātem ūnus ex assentā-

¹ a "treat." ² Forte . . . erat, happened to be. ³ See 250, b. ⁴ See 260.

⁵ gentler, more merciful. ⁶ nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.

⁷ quiets. ⁸ See 245. ⁹ of a tomb. ¹⁰ See 260.

tōribus hōc modō¹ laudābat. "Nōnne," inquit, "rēx magne, et mare vāstum et celerēs venī tuis mandātis² serviunt?" Rēx nihil respondit, sed posterō diē, iussū eius, servī ad lītus maritimum solium dēdūcunt. In hōc assentātōrem locat et ipse in rūpe propīnquā stat. Forte aestus ex altō sē agēbat. Tum rēx, "Recurrere," inquit, "mare superbum; nōnne tū meus servus es? Cūr igitur tuī fluctūs audācēs meum solium ita violant?" Fluctūs tamen surdī mandāta rēgia nōn audiēbant, sed sē in solium ipsum obiciunt. Tum rēx, "Nēmō nisi Deus imperium maris tenet."

7. A WONDERFUL DREAM

Trēs ōlim viātōrēs ā Galliā ad Ītaliā iter faciēbant. Via erat longa difficillimaque, quod undique montibus altissimis continēbātur. Saepe magnam cibī inopiam
 15 viātōrēs tolerābant³; tandem nihil illis⁴ supererat nisi ūnus pānis, haud ita magnus, quem omnēs diligentissimē servābant. Hunc sibi quisque vindicat. Dēnique fessī somnō sē dant, postquam pānem praemium⁵ somnī⁶ insignissimī prōposuērunt. Māne suum quisque comitibus
 20 somnium nārrat.

Prīmus ex viātōribus sic incipit: "Mihi in somniō appārebat rāpum ingentissimum; vix id trecentī virī ex agrō trahēbant. Num vōs aliquid hōc mirābilius vidēbātis? Mihi certē praemium dēbētur."⁷

¹ See 148. ² See 343. ³ *experienced*. ⁴ *illis supererat, nothing was left over for them, i. e., they had nothing left.* ⁵ Appositive to *pānem*. ⁶ Genitive singular of *somnium*. ⁷ *is owed, is due, belongs.*

8. A WONDERFUL DREAM (CONTINUED)

Tum secundus,¹ "Mīrum quidem somnium nārrāvistī; mīrābilius tamen aliquid mihi vīsum est. Nām vīdī in somniō vās ingentissimum, quod vix quīngentī hominēs tōtius annī spatiō² parāverant. Facillimē eō vāse istud rāpum continēbātur. Nōnne hoc somnium mīrābilius illō s iudicātis?"

At tertius, quī haec³ tacitē audīverat, "Certē," inquit, "uterque vestrum⁴ rem⁵ mīrābilem nārrāvit, pānemque bene meruit. Mihi tamen aliquid mīrum vīsum est. Nam in somnō (ut vidēbātur) ēsuriēbam; pānem igitur¹⁰ dēvorāvī."

9. THE LIGHTHOUSE

In eā parte Britanniae quae ad septentrionēs spectat, litus undique rūpibus asperrimīs continētur. Incolae igitur, quod ibi multae nāvēs naufragium fēcerant, turrī altissimam, quae pharus appellātur, quādam in rūpe aedificā-¹⁵ vērunt. Hanc turrī habitābant senex et filia eius parva, quī noctū semper lucernam incendēbant, cuius lūmen saepe nautās dē periculō monēbat. At nōnnumquam vīs tempestātis labōrēs nautārum superat, et nāvis infēlix aut undīs sē mergit aut scopulis crudēlibus⁶ afflīctātur. 20

10. THE LIGHTHOUSE (CONTINUED)

Erant ōlim multōs diēs tempestātēs continuāe; tandem diēs tranquillū succēdit. Iamque procul ē turri cūstōdēs⁷ magnam nāvem aspiciunt quae in scopulis haeret; mox etiam paucōs vident nautās quī manibus sīgna dant

¹ As verb, supply *incipit* or *inquit*.² See 131.³ See *Perseus*, 6, note 3.⁴ See 251.⁵ *dream*.⁶ See 394.⁷ (*his*) *guardians, keepers*.

auxiliumque petunt. Tum virgō animōsa cum patre parvam scapham dēdūcit, et rēmīs vēlisque nāvem ambō petunt. Undique ingentēs fluctūs adhūc surgēbant; nullō tamen periculō illi terrentur, sed ē morte nautās ēripiunt, 5 omnēsque tūtōs ad turrim reportant.

II. BIDE YOUR TIME

Fīdō,¹ parvus canis, quī dominum maximē amābat, quod nullō modō amōrem praestāre poterat, saepe dē suō cāsū dolēbat. Tandem Rollōnī,² magnō canī, rem³ ita indicāvit, “Ō fortunāte canis! quot modīs⁴ nostrō dominō⁵ prōdes: 10 tū domum cūstōdis, fūrēs ā limine lupōsque ab ovīlī arcēs; ego autem nihil facere possum.”

“At,” respondit Rollō sapiēns, “in officiō manē; sine dubiō occasiōnem tibi fortunā dabit.”

Paucīs post diēbus, dum dominus noctū dormit, Fīdō, 15 quī haud procul humī iacēbat, aspēxit latrōnem, quī clam domum intrāverat. Prōtinus lātrātū dominum ē somnō concitāvit et suā vigiliantiā eum ē periculō ēripiuit.

12. TOWN VERSUS COUNTRY

Urbānus mūs, quī rūš⁶ ad frātre m ierat, cibum rūsticum aegrē tulit atque edere nōluit. “Sī vīs,” inquit, 20 “domum⁶ mēcum redīre, sescentās deliciās habēbis.” Itaque illi, postquam tōtius diēi iter fēcērunt, mediā nocte mūrūm aedificiī splendidī rīmā angustā ineunt. Tum mūs urbānus magnificās dapēs fert et rūsticum in lectō purpureō locat. At subitō ingēns clāmōr auditur; portae 25 panduntur; decem servī nigerrimī irruunt. Fugit per-

¹ A name, *Fido*.

² *to Rollo*.

³ *rem ita indicavit, explained his case thus.*

⁴ See 148.

⁵ See 343.

⁶ See 237, 2.

terrītus mūs uterque, et vix in perfugium sē recipit. Deinde rūsticus, "Sōlus," inquit, "vitam urbānam carpe; ego certē salūtem et glandēs meās mālō."

13. WHO KILLED THE COCK?

Anus quaedam, quae haud procul Tarentō ab urbe habitāvit, suās ancillās ad galli cantum ē somnō concitāre solēbat. Hae igitur, quod ā primā lūce ūsque ad occāsum sōlis labōrem sustinēre coāctae sunt, gallum malōrum causam¹ occidere cōstituērunt. Posterō igitur diē sub vesperum, dum altera pedēs galli utrāque manū āversāta² retinet, altera, quae paulō audācior fuit, caput avis in-¹⁰ fēlicis secūrī percussit. Id tamen longē aliter ēvēnit ac³ putābant. Postquam enim gallus interfectus est, anus, quae ad id tempus cantum eius patienter exspectāre solēbat, ancillās nunc mediā nocte, nunc primā lūce, semper tamen mātūrius quam antea, ē somnō concitāvit. Ancillae igitur,¹⁵ quae ita sē fefellerant,⁴ prō tantō facinore dignās poenās persolvērunt.

14. TOO GOOD A DEFENSE

Anus quaedam, quae Capuae⁵ habitābat, pallium sibi ā nurū crēditum⁶ forte sciderat. Cuius⁷ iram verita⁸ pallium scissum inter vestēs aliquās integrās cēlāvit,²⁰ omnēsque eōdem tempore suae nurū reddidit. Haec⁹ autem, ubi fraudem perspēxit, quod id pallium maximī¹⁰ aestimābat, irā commōta causam¹¹ apud iūdicēs agēbat.

¹ Appositive to *gallum*. ² *turning away (from it)*. ³ *than*. ⁴ From *fallō*.

⁵ Locative.

⁶ = a rel. clause, *which had been lent*.

⁷ = *et huius*.

⁸ Perfect participle, from *vereor*; *fearing*.

⁹ *she*.

¹⁰ *at very great value*.

¹¹ *causam . . . agēbat, laid the case*.

Tum anus, ā iūdicibus interrogāta, purgandī¹ suī causā ita respondit:

“ Si aequi estis iūdicēs, multās ob causās nūllam poenam ā mē repetētis, primum enim nūllum pallium mihi umquam crēditum est; quō modō igitur id scindere potuī? Deinde nurus mea pallium ipsa sciderat ante quam id mihi crēdidit. Postremō id pallium, quod reddidī, integrum fuit. Nōne mē igitur laude digniōrem quam poenā habēbitis? ”

10 Hāc tamen ōrātiōne² ūsa³ iūdicibus⁴ nōn persuāsit.

15. SINON AND THE WONDERFUL ISLAND

Mercātor quīdam, nōmine Sinōn, quod eum⁵ cessandī et nihil agendī piguit, perīcula maris temptāre cōstituit. Nāvē igitur ad Indōs⁶ vectus, primō, quod tempestātēs fluctūs agitābant, gravī nausēā⁷ oppressus mortem optāvit.
 15 Mox autem, ubi vīs tempestātis concidēbat, morbum expulit. Paucīs post diēbus, dum apertō marī procul ā portū nāvigat, parvam īnsulam nigrō colōre haud multum super aquam ēminentem⁸ nautae vident. Tum omnēs, ē nāvē ēgressī, hūc illūc per tōtam īnsulam vagantur; tandem
 20 ignem accendere incipiunt. Subitō sub pedibus dirō sonitū īnsula in undās ēvānuī,⁹ omnēsque in gurgitem concidērunt. Mōnstrum enim marīnum,¹⁰ quod nautīs ob magnitudinem īnsula vīsum erat, ē somnō igne permōtum, in mare sē mērsit. Quō cāsū omnēs nautae periērunt;
 25 Sinōn autem, magnā sustentus trabe, quam forte ad ignem ferēbat, natandō ad terram ignōtam pervēnit.

¹ purgandī suī causā, for the purpose of clearing herself.

² See 337.

³ See 311, 6.

⁴ See 343.

⁵ eum cessandī . . . piguit, he was ashamed of being inactive.

⁶ toward the Indians, toward India.

⁷ seasickness.

⁸ projecting.

⁹ From ēvānēscō.

¹⁰ = maritimum.

16. SINON AND THE DIAMOND VALLEY

Sinōn quidem, tōtum diem per loca dēserta vagātus, omni spē reditiōnis dēiectus est. At noctū, dum dormit, ad vallem altissimīs montibus interclūsam ingentī avī raptus est. Tālī mīrāculō attonitus posterō diē aliquid etiam mīrābilius vidit, tōta enim vallēs gemmīs ōrnāta¹ est. Incolae huius terrae, quod in vallem dēscendī nōn potest, gemmās ita² colligere solent. Summīs³ dē montibus carnem⁴ dēiciunt, quam aquilae ab imā³ valle in nīdōs ferunt. Inde mercātōrēs magnō clāmōre avēs dēpellunt, gemmīsque⁵ carnī haerentibus ipsī potiuntur. 10

Quod⁶ ubi Sinōn cōgnōvit, postquam sēsē quam⁷ plūrimīs gemmīs onerāvit,⁸ suum corpus ad carnem vinxit tūtusque magnā aquilā ad nīdum lātus est, unde ad urbem propīnquam facile dēscendit, gemmāsque magnō pretiō vēdidit. 15

17. SINON AND THE GIANT'S CAVE

Idem Sinōn nē hīs quidem divitiīs contentus ōceanum iterum temptāre cōstituit; celerī igitur nāvi cum paucīs sociīs vectus, ventīs adversīs ad terram ignōtam pulsus est, quam hominēs barbarī advenīs⁹ inimicissimī incolēbant.

Hī, scaphīs¹⁰ nāvem aggressī, Sinōnem sociōsque dūxērunt²⁰ ad suum rēgem, ingentem gigantem,¹¹ speciē horribilī, quī unum modo oculum in mediā fronte positum habēbat.

Rēx, postquam captivōs omnēs manū ingentī tractāvit,¹² eum ex iīs quem optimum iūdicāvit igne tostum¹³

¹ adorned.² as follows.³ See p. 133, footnote 1.⁴ From *carō*, *carnis*.⁵ See 337.⁶ = *et hoc*.⁷ *quam plūrimīs*, as many as possible.⁸ had loaded.⁹ See 163.¹⁰ See 94.¹¹ From *gigās*, *antis*.¹² had dragged = had handled roughly¹³ From *torreō*.

dēvorāvit. Cēterī tamen, quod incautē ā barbarīs cūs-
tōdiēbantur, eōdem verū ¹ quō ² comes infēlix trānsfixus
erat oculum gigantis dormientis trānsfōdērunt, et vēlīs
rēmisque ā terrā inimicā fūgērunt.

18. SINON AND THE ROYAL SEPULCHER

5 Haud ita multō post, secundīs ventīs Sinōn sociique ad
insulam fertilem et opīmam vectī sunt. Quō in locō,
dum Sinōn studiō frūgum carpendārum longius ā nāvī
errat, ā sociīs infidēlibus relictus est. Rēx tamen huius
insulae hospitem benignē accēpit, suamque filiam virginem
10 pulcherrimam ei in mātīmōnium dedit. Id tamen minus ³
prosperē ⁴ ēvēnit, uxor enim Sinōnis proximō annō mortua
est.

Tum civēs, quod dūrā lēge virōs ūnā cum uxōribus
sepelīre solent, Sinōnem vīvum cum uxōre mortuā fūnibus
15 in puteum altum dēmittunt, quō sepulcrō ⁵ illius terrae
rēgēs ūtēbantur.

Huic tamen ab omnī spē salūtis interclūsō fortūna iter
patefēcit. Sinōn enim, fame sitiue iam moritūrus, volpem
vidit . . . Quam ⁶ per viās occultās diū secūtus, parvam
20 rīmam, quā ipsa puteum intrāverat, tandem invēnit. Inde
Sinōn, postquam magnā vī nīsus ⁷ lapidem ingentem sub-
mōvit, sē liberāvit, atque ad ōram maritimam ēvāsīt.

19. SINON PICKS COCONUTS

Tālī periculō ita liberātus Sinōn dum per silvam pedem
refert, mercātōribus ⁸ occurrit complūribus quī ad nūcēs

¹ *spit, stick.*
to quō.

² *by which.*
⁶ = et hanc.

³ = nōn.
⁷ *struggling* (from nitor).

⁴ = bene.

⁵ Appositive
⁸ See 394.

carpendās¹ ībant. Cum hīs sē iungere cōstituit. Nūcēs, quae summīs modo rāmīs dēpendent, mercātōrēs haud facile carpunt, quod lēvis arboris truncus ascendī nōn potest. Hunc tamen modum invēnērunt. Sīmiās, quae plūrimae silvās colunt, saxīs vexant: itaque illae irātae nūcēs ab arboribus dīreptās in mercātōrēs dēiciunt.

Sinōn, nūcibus multīs potītus, mercātōrēs sīmiās capere docuit. Iussū eius vāsa quaedam aquae plēna ad imās arborēs admōvērunt, quibus in vāsīs manūs multō cum fragōre lavābant. Inde vāsa eadem nigrā pice complēvērunt, et ē locō discessērunt. Sīmiae autem, hominēs ex cōsuētūdine imitātae, ubi manūs in vāsa imposuērunt, pice retentae facile capiuntur.

III

(From Eutropius's *Breviārium*²)

LIFE OF EUTROPIUS³

Of the life of Eutropius we know very little. Only once in his work does he mention himself (Bk. X, Ch. 16). He was proconsul in Asia in 371 A.D., and praetorian prefect 380-387 A.D. He is said to have been the secretary of the Emperor Constantine the Great.

The only one of his works that is extant is the Breviārium, a brief history of Rome from the founding of the city to the death of the Emperor Jovian, 364 A.D. He dedicated the work to the Emperor Valens, 364-378 A.D., composing it probably at the emperor's request. . . .

His style is simple and terse, and the diction is very good

¹ See 406, 3.

² *Brief History.*

³ From Hazzard's *Eutropius*.

for the age in which the book was written. As a historian his judgment is cool and impartial. He makes some blunders, but mostly in the matter of dates. . . .

THE PUNIC WARS

The three wars for world supremacy between Rome and Carthage (a Punic city in the northeast of the African continent) covered a period of nearly 120 years (264-241 B.C., 218-201 B.C., 149-146 B.C.). During this period first one and then the other seemed about to conquer. The story of the Second Punic War as told by Eutropius here follows, in which appear accounts of many noted men and famous battles. Reference books and maps should be constantly consulted in connection with this history.

I. THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

M. Minuciō Rūfō ¹ P. Cornēliō cōsulibus Histri bellum inlātum est, quia latrōcinātī nāvibus ² Rōmānōrum erant, quae frūmenta exhibēbant, ³ perdomitīque ⁴ sunt omnēs. Eōdem annō bellum Pūnicum secundum Rōmānīs inlātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, quī Saguntum, Hispāniae civitatem ⁵ Rōmānīs ⁶ amīcam, aggressus est, annum agēns ⁷ vicēsimum aetātis, cōpiīs congregātis CL millium. Huic Rōmānī per lēgātōs dēnūntiāvērunt ⁸ ut bellō abstinēret. Is lēgātōs accipere nōluit. Rōmānī etiam Carthāginem mīsērunt, ut mandārētur Hannibālī nē bellum contrā sociōs populi Rōmānī gereret. Dūra

¹ et is often thus omitted between proper names, especially when the names are used to give a date.

² Dative with *latrōcinor*; an unusual construction.

³ were furnishing.

⁴ vanquished.

⁵ city (often so in Eutropius).

⁶ See 163.

⁷ while passing.

⁸ warned.

respōnsa ā Carthāginiēnsibus data sunt. Saguntīnī¹ intereā famē victi sunt, captique ab Hannibale ultimis poenis adficiuntur. Bellum Carthāginiēnsibus indictum est.

2. HANNIBAL CROSSES THE ALPS

Tum P. Cornēlius Scīpiō cum exercitū in Hispāniam profectus est, Ti. Semprōnius in Siciliam. Hannibal, re-⁵ lictō in Hispāniā frātre Hasdrubale, Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Alpēs, adhūc eā parte² inviās, sibi patefēcit. Trāditur ad Ītaliā LXXX millia peditum, X millia equitum, VII et XXX elephantōs addūxisse. Intereā multī Ligurēs et Gallī Hannibalī sē coniūnxērunt. Semprōnius Gracchus,¹⁰ cōgnītō ad Ītaliā Hannibalis adventū, ex Siciliā exercitum Ariminum³ trāiēcit.

3. THE TREBIA, 218 B.C. TRASIMENUS, 217 B.C.

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Hannibalī⁴ prīmus⁵ occurrit. Commissō proeliō, fugātis suis ipse vulnerātus in castra rediit. Semprōnius Gracchus et⁶ ipse cōnfligit⁷ apud Trebiam¹⁵ flūmen. Is quoque vincitur. Hannibalī multī sē in Ītaliā dēdidērunt. Inde ad Tusciam veniēns Hannibal Flāminiō⁴ cōnsulī occurrit. Ipsum Flāminium interfēcit; Rōmānōrum XXV millia caesa sunt, cēterī fūgērunt. Missus adversus Hannibalem posteā ā Rōmānīs Q. Fabius²⁰ Maximus. Is eum differendō⁸ pugnam frēgit, mox inventā occāsiōne vīcit.

¹ the inhabitants of Saguntum. ² in may be omitted with *parte* or *locō*, especially when an adjective is used with the noun. ³ See 237, 2. ⁴ See 394.
⁵ *prīmus occurrit*, was the first to meet. ⁶ also. ⁷ Supply *cum Hannibale*.
⁸ *differendō pugnam*, by putting off battle.

4. BATTLE OF CANNAE, 216 B.C.

Quīngentēsīmō et quadrāgēsīmō annō ā conditā urbe L. Aemilius Paulus¹ P. Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mittuntur Fabiōque succēdunt, quī abiēns ambō cōsulēs monuit ut Hannibalem, callidum et impatientem ducem, nōn² aliter vincerent³ quam proelium differendō. Vērū cum impatientiā Varrōnis cōsulis, contrādicente⁴ alterō cōsule, apud vīcum, quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpūliā pugnātum esset, ambō cōsulēs ab Hannibale vincuntur. In eā pugnā tria millia Āfrōrum pereunt: magna pars
 10 exercitūs Hannibalis vulnerātur. Nullō tamen proeliō Pūnicō bellō Rōmānī gravius acceptī⁵ sunt. Periit enim in eō cōsul Aemilius Paulus, cōsulārēs aut praetōrii XX, senātōrēs captī aut occīsī XXX, nōbilēs virī CCC, militum XL millia, equitum III millia et quīngentī. In
 15 quibus malīs nēmō tamen Rōmānōrum pācis mentiōnem facere dignātus est. Servi, quod⁶ numquam ante, manū-missī⁷ et milītēs factī sunt.

5. IN SPAIN, 218 B.C.

Post eam pugnam multae Italiae civitatēs, quae Rōmānīs pāruerant, sē ad Hannibalem trānstulērunt. Hannibal Rōmānīs obtulit⁸ ut captīvōs redimerent, respōsumque⁹ est ā senātū eōs civēs nōn esse necessariōs quī, cum armātī essent, capī potuissent. Ille omnēs postea variis suppliciis interfēcit et trēs modiōs anulōrum aureōrum Carthāginem misit, quōs ex manibus equitum Rōmānōrum,
 25 senātōrum et milītum, detrāxerat. Interea in Hispāniā,

¹ See *Eutropius*, I, note 1. ² nōn aliter . . . quam, only. ³ try to conquer.

⁴ contrādicente . . . cōsule, against the advice of the other consul. ⁵ treated.

⁶ Understand accidit.

⁷ were liberated.

⁸ offered, proposed.

⁹ but.

ubi frāter Hannibalis Hasdrubal remānserat cum magnō exercitū, ut eam tōtam Āfrīs subigeret, ā duōbus Scīpiōnibus,¹ Rōmānīs ducibus, vincitur. Perdit in pugnā XXXV millia hominum; ex hīs capiuntur X millia, occiduntur XXV millia. Mittuntur eī ā Carthāginiēnsibus, ad reparandās² vīrēs XII millia peditum, IV millia equitum, XX elephantī.

6. BATTLES NEAR NOLA, 215 B.C.

Annō quārtō postquam ad Ītaliā Hannibal vēnerat, M. Claudius Mārcellus cōsul apud Nōlam, cīvitatē Campāniae, contrā Hannibalem bene pugnāvit. Hannibal multās cīvitatēs³ Rōmānōrum per⁴ Āpūliā, Calabriā, Bruttīōs occupāvit. Quō tempore etiam rēx Macedoniae Philippus ad eum lēgātōs misit, prōmittēns auxilia contrā Rōmānōs sub hāc condiciōne, ut dēlētis Rōmānīs ipse quoque contrā Graecōs ab Hannibale auxilia acciperet. Captīs igitur lēgātīs Philippi et rē cōgnitā, Rōmānī in Macedoniam M. Valerium Laevīnum ire iussērunt, in Sardiniam T. Mānlium Torquātum prōcōnsulem. Nam etiam ea⁵ sollicitāta ab Hannibale Rōmānōs dēseruerat.

7. WAR ON FOUR FRONTS

Ita ūnō tempore quattuor locīs pugnābātur: in Ītaliā contrā Hannibalem, in Hispāniā contrā frātre[m] eius Hasdrubalem, in Macedoniā contrā Philippum, in Sardinia contrā Sardōs⁶ et alterum Hasdrubalem Carthāginiēnsem.

¹ Publius and Gnaeus.

² *renewing.*

³ *cities.*

⁴ *per . . . Bruttīōs, throughout Apulia, Calabria, and the (land of the) Bruttii.*

⁵ = Sardinia.

⁶ *the inhabitants of Sardinia.*

Is ā T. Mānliō prōcōnsule, quī ad Sardiniam missus erat, vivus est captus, occisa duodecim millia, capti cum eō mille quīngenti, et ā Rōmānis Sardinia subācta. Mānlius victor captīvōs et Hasdrubalem Rōmam reportāvit. In-
 s tereā etiam Philippus ā Laevīnō in Macedoniā vincitur et in Hispāniā ab Scīpiōnibus Hasdrubal et Māgō, tertius frāter Hannibalis.

8. IN SICILY, 214-210 B.C.

Decimō annō postquam Hannibal in Ītaliā vēnerat, P. Sulpiciō Cn. Fulviō cōsulibus Hannibal ūsque ad
 10 quārtum milliārium urbis accessit, equitēs eius ūsque ad portam. Mox cōsulum ¹ cum exercitū venientium ² metū ³ Hannibal ad Campāniam sē recēpit. In Hispāniā ā frātre eius Hasdrubale ambō Scīpiōnēs, quī per ⁴ multōs annōs victōrēs erant, interficiuntur, exercitus tamen integer mān-
 15 sit, cāsū enim magis erant quam virtūte dēcepti. Quō tempore etiam ā cōsule Mārcellō magna Siciliae pars capta est, quam tenēre Āfrī coeperant, et nōbilissima urbs Syrācūsae; praeda ingēns Rōmam perlāta est. Laevīnus in Macedoniā cum Philippō et multis Graeciae populis
 20 et rēge Asiae Attalō amīcitiam fēcit, et, ad Siciliam profectus, Hannōnem quendam, Āfrōrum ducem, apud Agrigentum civitātem cum ipsō oppidō cēpit eumque Rōmam cum captivīs nōbilissimīs misit. XL civitatēs in dē-
 ditionem accēpit, XXVI expugnāvit. Ita omnis Sicilia
 25 recepta ⁵ est; ingentī glōriā Rōmam regressus est. Hannibal in Ītaliā Cn. Fulvium cōsulem subitō aggressus cum octō millibus hominum interfēcit.

¹ Depends on *metū*.

² *who were coming.*

³ Abl. of cause.

⁴ *throughout.*

⁵ *recovered.*

9. IN SPAIN, 210-206 B.C.

Intereā ad Hispāniās,¹ ubi occisis duobus Scipionibus, nullus Rōmānus dux erat, P. Cornēlius Scipio mittitur, filius P. Scipionis, qui ibidem bellum gesserat, annos² natus quattuor et viginti, vir Rōmānorum omnium et suā aetate et posteriore tempore ferē primus. Is Carthāginem³ Hispāniae capit, in quā omne aurum, argentum et bellī apparātum Āfri habēbant, nobilissimos quoque obsides, quos ab Hispānis accēperant. Māgōnem etiam, frātre Hannibalis, ibidem capit, quem Rōmam cum aliis mittit. Rōmae ingens laetitia post hunc nūntium fuit. Scipio Hispānorum obsides¹⁰ parentibus reddidit; quārē omnēs ferē Hispāni unō animō ad eum trānsiērunt. Post quae Hasdrubalem, Hannibalis frātre, victum⁴ fugat et praedam maximam capit.

10. TARENTUM, 209 B.C.

Intereā in Italiā cōsul Q. Fabius Maximus Tarentum recēpit, in quā ingentēs cōpiae Hannibalis erant. Ibi¹⁵ etiam ducem Hannibalis Carthalōnem occidit, XXV millia hominum captivōrum vēdidit, praedam militibus distribuit, pecūniam hominum⁵ vēditōrum ad fiscum rettulit. Tum multae civitatēs Rōmānorum, quae ad Hannibalem trānsierant anteā, rursus sē Fabio Maximō dēdidērunt.²⁰ Insequentī annō Scipio in Hispāniā ēgregiās rēs ēgit et per sē et per frātre suum L. Scipionem; LXX civitatēs recēpērunt. In Italiā tamen male pugnātum est, nam Claudius Mārcellus cōsul ab Hannibale occisus est.

¹ *Spain*. For administrative purposes the Romans divided the province of Spain into two parts; hence the plural here. ² *annos . . . viginti, twenty-four years of age* (lit., *born twenty-four years*). ³ The other Carthage was in Africa. ⁴ *victum fugat*: translate as if *vincit et fugat* stood in the text. ⁵ *hominum vēditōrum, obtained from selling the captives*.

II. SCIPIO

Tertiō annō postquam Scipiō ad Hispāniās profectus erat, rūsus rēs inclutās gerit. Rēgem Hispāniarum magnō proeliō victum in amicitiam accēpit et primus omnium ā victō obsidēs nōn poposcit.

12. METAURUS, 207 B.C.

5 Dēspērāns Hannibal Hispāniās contrā Scipiōnem diūtius posse retinērī, frātre suum Hasdrubalem ad Italiam cum omnibus cōpiīs ēvocāvit.¹ Is, veniēns eōdem itinere quō¹ etiam Hannibal vēnerat, ā cōsulibus Ap. Claudiō Nerōne et M. Liviō Salinātōre apud Sēnam, Picēnī civitātem, in
10 insidiās compositās² incidit. Strēnuē tamen pugnāns occīsus est; ingentēs eius cōpiae captae aut interfectae sunt, magnum pondus aurī atque argentī Rōmam relātum est. Post haec Hannibal diffidere³ iam dē bellī ēventū coepit. Rōmānīs ingēns animus accessit; itaque et⁴ ipsī
15 ēvocāvērunt ex Hispāniā P. Cornēlium Scipiōnem. Is Rōmam cum ingentī gloriā vēnit.

13. THE BRUTII SURRENDER

Q. Caeciliō L. Valeriō cōsulibus omnēs civitātēs, quae in⁵ Bruttīs ab Hannibale tenēbantur, Rōmānīs sē trādidērunt.

14. SCIPIO IN AFRICA, 204 B.C.

20 Annō quārtō decimō postquam in Italiam Hannibal vēnerat, Scipiō, quī multa bene in Hispāniā ēgerat, cōsul est factus et in Africam missus. Cui virō⁶ dīvinum quid-

¹ by which.
up hope.

⁴ also.

² (which had been) made ready, prearranged.

⁵ in Bruttīs, among the Bruttii.

³ to give
⁶ With inesse.

dam inesse exīstimābātur, ut putārētur etiam cum nūminibus habēre¹ sermōnem. Is in Āfricā contrā Hannōnem, ducem Āfrōrum, pugnat; exercitum eius interficit. Secundō proeliō castra capit cum quattuor millibus et quīngentīs militibus, XI millibus occīsīs. Syphācem,⁵ Numidiaē rēgem, quī sē Āfrīs coniūn_xerat, capit et castra eius invādit. Syphāx cum nōbilissimīs Numidīs et infīnītīs spoliīs Rōmam ā Scīpiōne mittitur. Quā rē audītā omnis ferē Ītalia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus redire in Āfricam iubētur, quam Scīpiō vāstābat. 10

15. PEACE NEGOTIATIONS

Ita annō septimō decimō ab Hannibale Ītalia liberāta est. Lēgātī Carthāginiēnsium pācem ā Scīpiōne petivērunt; ab eō ad senātum Rōmam missī sunt. Quadrāgintā et quīnque diēbus hīs indūtiae datae sunt, dum² ire Rōmam et regredi possent³; et trigintā millia⁴ pondō argentī ab hīs accepta sunt. Senātus ex⁵ arbitriō⁶ Scīpiōnis pācem iussit cum Carthāginiēnsibus fieri. Scīpiō hīs conditionibus dedit⁷: nē amplius⁸ quam trigintā nāvēs habērent,⁹ ut quīngenta millia⁴ pondō argentī darent,¹⁰ captīvōs et perfugās redderent.

20

16. HOSTILITIES RENEWED

Interim Hannibale veniente ad Āfricam pāx turbāta est, multa hostilia ab Āfrīs facta sunt. Lēgātī tamen eōrum ex urbe veniētēs ā Rōmānīs captī sunt, sed iubente Scīpiōne dīmissī. Hannibal quoque frequentibus proeliīs

¹ habēre sermōnem, to hold discourse.

² until.

³ they should be able.

⁴ Understand librārum. pondō is instr. abl., by (in) weight with.

⁵ in accordance

⁶ the judgment.

⁷ granted; supply pācem.

⁸ more.

⁹ they

should not have.

¹⁰ they should give.

victus ā Scīpiōne petit etiam ipse pācem. Cum ventum esset ¹ ad conloquium, isdem condiciōnibus pāx data est quibus ² anteā, additis ³ quīngentīs millibus ⁴ pondō argenti centum millibus librārum propter novam perfīdiam. Carthāginiēnsibus condiciōnēs displicuērunt ⁵ iussēruntque Hannibalem pugnāre. Infertur ā Scīpiōne et Masinissā, aliō rēge Numidārū, quī amicitiam cum Scīpiōne fēcerat, Carthāgini ⁶ bellum. Hannibal trēs explōrātōrēs ad Scīpiōnis castra misit, quōs ⁷ captōs Scīpiō circumducī per ¹⁰ castra iussit ostendique hīs tōtum exercitum, mox etiam prandium darī eōsque dīmitti, ut Hannibalī renūtiārent quae apud Rōmānōs vīdissent.

17. ZAMA, 202 B.C. PEACE, 201 B.C.

Intereā proelium ab utrōque duce instrūctum est, quāle vix anteā fuit, cum peritissimī virī cōpiās suās ad bellum ¹⁵ ēdūcerent. Scīpiō victor recēdit, paene ipsō Hannibale captō, quī primum cum multis equitibus, deinde cum vīgintī, postrēmō cum quattuor ēvāsīt. Inventa in castrīs Hannibalis argenti pondō vīgintī millia, ⁸ aurī octōgintā, cētera supellectilis ⁹ cōpiōsa. Post id certāmen pāx cum ²⁰ Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit, atque Āfricānus ex eō appellārī coeptus est. ¹⁰ Finem ¹¹ accēpit secundum Pūnicum bellum postquam annō undēvicēsīmō coeperat.

¹ *they had come.*

² *as.*

³ *with the addition of (to be taken with*

centum millibus).

⁴ *Dat. with additis.*

⁵ *were unsatisfactory to.*

⁶ *Dat. with infertur.*

⁷ *quōs . . . iussit = but they were captured and Scipio ordered them to be conducted, etc.*

⁸ *Understand librārum.*

⁹ *From supellex.*

¹⁰ *began.*

¹¹ *Finem accēpit, came to an end.*

ADDITIONAL LESSONS

LESSON I

PREDICATE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

(1) RULE. — **Predicate Genitive.** — *The genitive of the possessor (38) is sometimes found in the predicate, i.e. in connection with a verb, regularly est or sunt. For example:*

1. **Liber est Mārci**, *the book is Mark's.*
2. **Haec domus est patris mei**, *this house is my father's.*
3. **Est ducis exercitum dūcere**, *it belongs to the general (i.e. it is the general's duty) to lead the army.*

(2) RULE. — **Ablative of Accompaniment.** — *Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. For example:*

1. **Cum tēlō it**, *he goes with a weapon.*
2. **Iit mēcūm**, *he went with me.*
3. **Cum suīs liberīs venit**, *he comes with his children.*
4. **Cum hostibus pugnat**, *he is fighting with the enemy.*

(3)

VOCABULARY

exemplum, ī, n., *example.*

vīlla, ae, f., *farmhouse.*

officium, ī, n., *courtesy, service, duty.*

exitus, ūs, m., *a going forth, departure, outcome.*

nāvigium, ī, n., *boat.*

nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum, *sail.*

porta, ae, f., *gate (of a city).*

ostendō, **tendere**, **ostendī**,

lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language.*

ostentus, *show, exhibit, point out.*

permaneō, manēre, per-	immortālis, e, immortal.
mānsī, permānsūm, stay,	levis, e, light (in weight).
remain, hold out.	sescentī, ae, a, six hundred.
redigō, igere, redēgī, red-	tālis, e, such, of such a kind.
actus, drive back, reduce,	amplē, adv., fully, freely.
render.	septendecim, indecl. num.,
ēgregius, a, um, eminent, un-	seventeen.
usual.	duodēvigintī, indecl. num.,
familiāris, re, of the house-	eighteen.
hold; as noun, plur., inti-	undēvigintī, indecl. num.,
mate (friends), friends.	nineteen.

(4)

EXERCISES

I. 1. Virtūtis est fortiter cum hostibus prō patriā pugnāre.
 2. Sescentī ex sociīs in officiō manēre cōstituērunt.
 3. Nāvigium quō nāvigāvit erat hostium. 4. Linguā Latinā nōn amplē ūtitur, nam nōn omnis est linguā Latinā bene ūtī. 5. Cum familiāribus ad portam mānsit.
 6. Ostendit villās quae extrā portam urbis sint esse suī patris. 7. Patriam amāre bonī cīvis est. 8. Virtūtem sēquī sapientis est.

II. 1. He determined to sail with his intimate (friends).
 2. He fully explained their duties to his men. 3. Six hundred light javelins were captured with the other weapons.
 4. The plan to sail with you is his. 5. Nineteen of the men had remained. 6. They saw seventeen or eighteen boats at one time. 7. It is (the part) of a young man to fight long and bravely. 8. The spear and the arrows are the soldier's. 9. It is (the part) of prudence to consider all parts of a subject (rēs).

LESSON II

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

(5) **RULE.** — **Genitive with Adjectives.** — *A genitive may be used to show the application of adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, skill, guilt, etc. For example :*

1. *Cupīdī laudis omnēs sunt, all men are desirous of praise.*
2. *Īnscius alicuius iniūriæ fuit, he was unaware of any wrong.*
3. *Plēnus fidēi vir fortis est, the brave man is full of confidence.*
4. *Perītus iūris Cicerō fuit, Cicero was skilled in law.*

(6)

VOCABULARY

prōvideō, vidēre, provīdī,	recēns, recentis, fresh, new,
provisus, provide, foresee.	recent.
barbarus, a, um, barbarous,	singulāris, e, single, unusual.
foreign.	vērus, a, um, true, truthful.
commūnis, e, common.	iūs, iūris, n., justice, right,
necessārius, a, um, neces-	law.
sary, urgent.	indūcō, dūcere, indūxī, in-
praesēns, praesentis, present,	ductus, lead in, lead
in person.	against, induce.
propīnquus, a, um, near ;	dēspērō, āre, āvi, ātum, lose
as noun, a relative.	hope, despair.
pedester, tris, tre, pedestrian,	anteā, adv., before.
on foot ; infantry (adj.).	certē, adv., certainly, at least.
plēnus, a, um, full.	

(7)

EXERCISES

- I. 1. Numquam antea cōnsciū periculī tantī fuerat.
 2. Imperātor, quī rei militāris perītus erat, pedestrīs cōpiās ē castrīs statim ēdūxit. 3. Commūnī salūtī prōvisum est.
 4. Caesar praesēns, scūtō militī ēreptō, cōpiās in barbarōs indūxit. 5. Plēnus spei impetum in propinquōs hostīs fēcit.
 6. Dē victōriā dēspērantes ex urbe excēdunt.

- II. 1. A brave man is always eager for battle.
 2. Caesar was skilled in military matters. 3. The recent victory was Caesar's, not the enemy's. 4. A true report (fāma) of the disaster rendered the soldiers eager for flight. 5. The soldiers were full of hope because they had at least not been conquered before.

LESSON III

SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVES

(8) RULE. — **Subjective Genitive.** — *The subjective genitive is used with a noun of action, feeling, or quality to indicate the subject of the action, feeling, or quality, i.e. the person who does the act, experiences the feeling, or possesses the quality.*

(Note that the subjective genitive is very like the possessive genitive (38) but that, strictly speaking, the latter indicates actual ownership of an object.) For example :

1. Cupiditās scientiae¹ puerī patrī placet, *the boy's desire for knowledge pleases his father.*
2. Amor liberōrum patris¹ matrī placet, *the children's love of (for) their father pleases their mother.*

¹ See Rule (9), p. 35.

(9) RULE. — **Objective Genitive.** — *The objective genitive is used with a noun of action, agency, or feeling to indicate the receiver or object of the action, etc., suggested by the noun. For example :*

1. **Cupiditās laudis saepe mala est,** *eagerness for praise is often bad.*
2. **Laus militis iūsta est,** *praise of the soldier is just.*
3. **Metus tantī periculī sapiēns est,** *fear of so great a danger is wise.*

(10) Note that the same genitive is capable of being interpreted sometimes as a subjective and sometimes as an objective genitive, according to the meaning of the sentence as a whole. For example :

1. **Amor parentis,** *love of a parent,* may be interpreted to mean either the love felt by a parent or the love felt for a parent.

2. **Laus ducis,** *praise of a leader,* may be interpreted as meaning either the praise given by a leader, or the praise given to the leader.

(11)

VOCABULARY

cupiditās, ātis, f., <i>desire,</i>	reficiō, ficere, refēcī, re-
<i>greed.</i>	<i>fectus, renew, restore.</i>
dolor, ōris, m., <i>grief.</i>	crēber, bra, brum, <i>frequent,</i>
fāma, ae, f., <i>report, reputation.</i>	<i>thick.</i>
laus, laudis, f., <i>praise.</i>	integer, gra, grum, <i>whole,</i>
salūs, ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i>	<i>unimpaired, fresh.</i>
servitūs, ūtis, f., <i>slavery.</i>	tardus, a, um, <i>slow, late.</i>
sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēn-	nōtus, a, um, <i>known, noted.</i>
<i>sus, think, feel, realize.</i>	quattuordecim, indecl. num.,
putō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>think.</i>	<i>fourteen.</i>

(12)

EXERCISES

I. 1. Crēbrae fāmae proelī animōs oppidānōrum re-
ficiēbant. 2. Praemium virtūtis est laudārī. 3. Bene-
ficiō populi Rōmānī hostēs servātī sunt. 4. Dē supplicio
frātris Dīviciācus anxius erat. 5. Salūs nāvīgī sociīs est
nūntiāta. 6. Adventū Caesaris, militēs quasī integrīs
vīribus proelium incipiunt. 7. Scientiā rei militāris summus
erat Caesar. 8. Hostium iniūriae bellī causa fuērunt.

II. 1. Desire of power has been the causē of many wars.
2. Led on by a desire for royal power, he formed a conspiracy.
3. They tried to get possession of the commonwealth of
Rome. 4. They hastened because of their leader's praise.
5. The hope of victory was stronger than the fear of defeat.
6. His knowledge of the art of war was very great. 7. The
praise of their leader pleased the soldiers. 8. All thought
that their noted leader was about to begin battle. 9. The
barbarians now despaired of victory.

LESSON IV

DRILL ON COMPOUND VERBS

(13)

VOCABULARY

exstruō, struere, exstrūxī,	cōnfidō, fidere, confisus
exstrūctus, <i>pile up, erect.</i>	sum, <i>trust, feel sure.</i>
oppōnō, pōnere, opposuī, op- positus, <i>put against, op- pose.</i>	invidēō, vidēre, invidī, in- vīsus, <i>envy, look askance at.</i>
satisfaciō, satisfacere, satis- fēcī, satisfactum, <i>satisfy, do enough.</i>	ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>call out.</i> admoneō, monēre, admonuī, admonitus, <i>remind.</i>

premō, premere, pressī,
pressus, *press, oppress.*

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *doubt,*
hesitate.

ōdī, ōdisse, —, *hate* (de-
fective, with perfect used
in sense of present, plup.
in sense of imperf., and
fut. perf. in sense of
future).

incipiō, cipere, —,¹ —,
begin.

intercipiō, cipere, intercēpī,
interceptus, *intercept, cut*
off.

excipiō, cipere, excēpī, ex-
ceptus, *take, accept.*

praecipīō, cipere, praecēpī,
praeceptus, *order, instruct,*
advise; anticipate, fore-
tell.

praedicō, dicere, praedīxī,
praedictus, *foretell.*

abdūcō, dūcere, abdūxī, ab-
ductus, *lead away.*

prōdūcō, dūcere, prodūxī,
productus, *lead forward.*

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus,
laugh, laugh at.

adiciō, icere, adiēcī, ad-
iectus, *throw to, add.*

obiciō, icere, obiēcī, ob-
iectus, *throw against, op-*
pose.

reiciō, icere, reiēcī, reiectus,
throw back, reject.

antecēdō, cēdere, antecessī,
antecessum, *go before, pre-*
cede.

excēdō, cēdere, excessī, ex-
cessum, *go out.*

intermittō, mittere, inter-
mīsī, intermissus, *inter-*
rupt, discontinue.

remittō, mittere, remīsī, re-
missus, *send back.*

nec . . . nec, *neither . . . nor.*
aut, conj., *or.*

nē . . . quidem, *not even.*
vīvus, a, um, *living, alive.*

(14)

EXERCISES

I. Exstruet, exstruit, exstrūxit. 2. Oppōnit, oppōnet,
opposuit, oppōnēbat. 3. Adicere, cōnātur, adiēcīt, anteces-
sērunt, excēdet, reiēcīt, pressī. 4. Praecēpit, incipiunt,

¹ coepī, etc. is used for the perfect tenses of incipiō

excēpit, ēvocāvit. 5. Abdūcet, prōductūrus est, prodūxit, prolūxī. 6. Invidet, inviderit, invidēbat, invidēoit, invidit. 7. Ōlit, ōdērunt, ōderam, ōderō, rīsī, rīdet. 8. Praedixerat, praedicam, praedixit.

II. 1. Nec timor deōrum immortalīum nec amor hominum eum continet. 2. Caesar aut Labiēnus antecēdet. 3. Spectat hostēs pressōs. 4. Videt hostēs premi. 5. Māter filiā ē domō saepe ēvocāvit. 6. Adventū ducis omnēs cōfīsī sunt. 7. Rei publicae satisfēcīt.

LESSON V

VOCABULARY DRILL AND WORD FORMATION

(15)

VOCABULARY

iūdex, iūdīcis, m., <i>juror.</i>	legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus,
modus, i, m., <i>manner, way.</i>	<i>pick, gather, read.</i>
ascendō, scendere, ascendī,	locō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>place.</i>
ascēsus, <i>climb, mount.</i>	perterreō, terrēre, perter-
concitō, āre, āvī, ātus,	ruī, perterritus, <i>terrify;</i>
<i>arouse, excite.</i>	perterritus, <i>panic-stricken.</i>
dēiciō, icere, dēiēcī, dēiectus,	removeō, movēre, remōvī,
<i>throw down.</i>	remōtus, <i>move back, remove.</i>
dormiō, ire, dormīvī (ii),	serviō, servīre, servīvī (ii),
dormītum, <i>sleep.</i>	servītum, <i>be a slave to,</i>
ēiciō, icere, ēiēcī, ēiectus,	<i>serve (with dat.).</i>
<i>throw out.</i>	spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>watch,</i>
exclūdō, clūdere, exclūsī,	<i>look at.</i>
exclūsus, <i>shut out.</i>	temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, <i>test,</i>
interclūdō, clūdere, inter-	<i>try, attempt.</i>
clūsī, interclūsus, <i>shut off,</i>	trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus,
<i>cut off, stop.</i>	<i>drag.</i>

(16) (a) Give at least two English derivatives, with meanings, from each of the following words :

iūdex	ēiciō	removeō	temptō
ascendō	dormiō	serviō	trahō
dēiciō	exclūdō	spectō	legō

(b) Name other Latin words, with meanings, to which the following words are related :

modus	perterreō
iūdex	serviō
locō	spectō

(c) In the general vocabulary find all the other compounds of the simple verbs appearing in the following verbs :

ascendō	dēiciō	remo eō	praedicō
---------	--------	---------	----------

Give the meanings of these compounds.

(d) From what verbs in this lesson are the following nouns derived? What is the meaning of each noun?

ascēsus	ēiectiō	locātiō
dēiectiō	exclūsiō	servitium
dēiectus	lēgātiō	praedictiō

WORD FORMATION — FIRST HALF YEAR

A. PREFIXES

(1) Learn the following prefixes with their meanings :

a, ab, *away from, away.*

ad, *to, toward, near.*

con (**com, col, cor**, etc.), *with, together, strongly.*

dē, *down from, down, from.*

ē, ex (**ef, ec**, etc.), *out from, out of, out.*

in, *to, into, toward, against.*

prō, *forth, forward.*

re, *again, back.*

trāns, trā, *across, over.*

(2) By means of such prefixes compound verbs can be formed from simple verbs. For example :

dūcō , <i>lead</i>	+ ab	= abdūcō , <i>lead away.</i>
" "	+ ad	= addūcō , <i>lead to</i> (adduce). ¹
" "	+ con	= condūcō , <i>lead together</i> (conduce, conduct).
" "	+ dē	= dēdūcō , <i>lead down</i> (deduce, deduct).
" "	+ ē	= ēdūcō , <i>lead out</i> (educate).
" "	+ in	= indūcō , <i>lead into</i> (induce, induct).
" "	+ prō	= prōdūcō , <i>lead forth</i> (produce, product).
" "	+ re	= redūcō , <i>lead back</i> (reduce, reduction).
" "	+ trā(ns)	= trādūcō , <i>lead across.</i>

(3) As in (2) form Latin compounds from the following simple verbs, testing such compounds by the general

¹ The words in parentheses here give English derivatives.

vocabulary or by a Latin dictionary, and indicate easy English derivatives :

dō	moveō	parō
petō	sum	pugnō
portō	videō	agō
capīō	vocō	moneō
dūcō	servō	habeō
cēdō	locō	scribō
mittō	teneō	dīcō

B. SUFFIXES

(1) Certain Latin abstract nouns are derived from other Latin nouns by the addition to their stems of such suffixes as **-tūs, -tās**. For example :

virtūs, manliness = **vir, man** + **tūs**.

servitūs, slavery = **servus, slave** + **tūs**.

cīvitās, citizenship = **cīvis, citizen** + **tās**.

(2) Other Latin abstract nouns are derived from Latin adjectives by means of such suffixes as **-tia, -tās**. For example :

amīcitia, friendship = **amīcus, friendly** + **tia**.

dignitās, worthiness = **dignus, worthy** + **tās**.

diligentia, carefulness = **diligēns, careful** + **tia**

(3) Show the derivation of the following abstract nouns :

auctōritās	vēlōcitās	nōbilitās
libertās	potestās	ūtilitās
celeritās	potentia	fidēlitās
cupiditās	lēnitās	senectūs
difficultās		

C. DERIVATION

(1) To find the English derivatives of a Latin verb, first write its principal parts and mark off the three stems (86). Then search the English dictionary for derivatives from each of these three stems. Next look for English derivatives having the prefixes given in A. Test every word which seems to be a derivative by the etymologies given in parenthesis in the dictionary, for sometimes two words very much alike may come from quite different sources.

These lists of English derivatives should be kept in a special notebook. Three types of exercise are possible :

Type 1, merely the list.

Type 2, the list with a definition of each derivative, in which the definition should be so worded as to show the meaning of the Latin original.

Type 3, the list with each word used in a sentence. For example :

Type 1 (without definitions)

locō, locā|re, locāv|i, locāt|us, place (cf. **locus**)

local, localism, locality, localization, localize, locally ; locate, location, locative ; collocate, collocation, dislocate, dislocation ; locomobile, locomotive, locomotion, locus, locomotor.

Type 2 (with definitions)

vocō, vocā|re, vocāv|i, vocāt|us, call (cf. **vōx**)

vocabulary — list of *words*.

vocal — pertaining to *voice*.

vocative — case of *calling*, case of address.

vocation — a *calling*, occupation.

vocational — pertaining to a *calling* or vocation.

vocalism — use of the *voice*.

vocalist — one who uses the *voice*.

(vocality)¹

vocally — uttered with the *voice*.

(vociferant)

vociferate — *call* loudly.

vociferous — with a large *calling* power, in loud tones.

(advocacy)

advocate — *speak* in favor of.

advocate — one who *speaks* in favor of (properly, one *called* in).

advocation — act of *speaking* in favor of.

(advoke)

convocation — a *calling* together.

convoke — *call* together.

(evocable)

(evocate)

(evocation)

(evocative)

evoke — *call* out.

invocable — capable of being *called* upon.

invoke — *call* upon in prayer.

¹ The least common derivatives have been set in parenthesis.

invocation — a *calling* upon, prayer.

invocatory — *calling* upon in prayer.

invoke — *call* upon, ask for.

provocable — capable of being *called* forth.

provocation — act of *calling* forth anger.

provocative — *calling* forth anger.

(provocatively)

(provocativeness)

(provocatory)

provoke — *call* forth anger.

provoking — *calling* forth anger.

provokingly — (adv.)

revocable — capable of being *called* back.

irrevocable — incapable of being *called* back.

revocation — act of *recalling* or revoking.

revoke — *call* back.

Type 3 (used in sentences or phrases)

mittō, mitte|re, mīs|ī, miss|us, send.

missile — Stones were the missiles of early warfare.

mission — He was sent on a mission to Europe.

missionary — He was sent as a missionary to China.

missive — The letter was a formidable missive.

admissibility — admissibility of an argument.

admissible — admissible evidence.

PARTIAL LIST OF DERIVATIVES (TYPE 1) FROM *mittō*

admission	emissary	remit
admissive	(emission)	remittance
admit	emit	remitter
admittance	—	—
admitted	omissible	submission
admittedly	omission	submissive
—	omit	submissively
commissary	—	submissiveness
commission	permissible	submit
commit	permission	submitter
committal	permit	—
committee	—	transmissible
—	remiss	transmission
dismiss	remissible	transmit
dismissal	remission	transmitter
—		

The student is not expected to list any but the most important English derivatives. The lists printed above include many uncommon words which are given only with the intention of showing what a large number of English words may come from a Latin verb.

(2) The following verbs may be used for such study. (The numbers refer to the paragraphs in which the words first occur.)

<i>Required</i>	<i>Optional</i>
<i>servō</i> (53)	<i>iūdicō</i> (436)
<i>locō</i> (Supp. Lesson V)	<i>pācō</i> (283)
<i>vocō</i> (47)	<i>parō</i> (89)
<i>putō</i> (Supp. Lesson III)	<i>pugnō</i> (47)

<i>Required</i>	<i>Optional</i>
videō (108)	spectō (Supp. Lesson V)
moveō (108)	habeō (108)
dūcō (174)	moneō (108)
mittō (174)	teneō (375)
dīcō (185)	agō (281)
capiō (179)	cōgnōscō (204)

SECOND HALF YEAR

A. PREFIXES

(1) Learn the following prefixes with their meanings :

inter, *among, between.*

per, *through ; thoroughly.*

prae, *at the head of, in front of ; beforehand.*

prō, *forward, forth ; in front of, in behalf of.*

sub (suc, suf, sus, etc.), *under, below, from beneath.*

(2) By means of the prefixes in (1) and those given for the first half year on page 40, form Latin compounds of the following simple verbs :

cēdō	faciō
sum	iaciō
mūniō	veniō
terreō	mittō
dīcō	timeō
dūcō	scribō
claudō	dō
pōnō	maneō
pellō	

B. SUFFIXES

(1) Certain Latin nouns are derived from *verbs* by means of such suffixes as **-tus**, **-tiō**, **-ium**. For example :

adventus , <i>arrival</i>	= adveniō , <i>arrive</i>	+ tus .
oppugnātiō , <i>attack</i>	= oppugnō , <i>attack</i>	+ tiō .
praesidium , <i>garrison</i>	= praesideō , <i>guard</i>	+ ium .
iūdicium , <i>judgment</i>	= iūdicō , <i>judge</i>	+ ium .

(2) Some Latin nouns are derived from *nouns* and *adjectives* by means of such suffixes as **-ia**, **-tās**, **-tūdō**. For example :

pecūnia , <i>wealth</i>	= pecus , <i>herd</i>	+ ia .
potestās , <i>ability, power</i>	= potēns , <i>able</i>	+ tās .
altitūdō , <i>height, depth</i>	= altus , <i>high, deep</i>	+ tūdō .

(3) Show the derivation of the following Latin nouns :

adventus	beneficium	memoria
exitus	imperium	auctōritās
aditus	nāvigium	cupiditās
auxilium	ōrātiō	lātītūdō
initium	ratio	multitūdō
iūdicium	nāvigātiō	amplitūdō
supplicium	grātia	turpitūdō

C. DERIVATION

Find the most important English derivatives from the following simple Latin verbs, following the directions given for this work for the first half year (page 42). Use the prefixes given for both halves of the year.

<i>Required</i>	<i>Optional</i>
nāvigō (Supp. Lesson I)	dō (59)
doceō (<i>Gradatim</i> , 19)	veniō (218)
timeō (388)	fīdō
sedeō (450)	pōnō (192)
scrībō (324)	terreō (108)
vincō (174)	trahō (<i>Gradatim</i> , 1)
sūmō (<i>Gradatim</i> , 2)	pellō (338)
faciō (179)	cōnsulō
iaciō (179)	audeō (359)
audiō (218)	mūniō (218)

WORD LISTS

These lists are to be memorized. About 250 words are given for each half year and they are arranged alphabetically in classified groups, with the exception of the compound verbs, which are listed under the simple verb. It is recommended that at regular intervals the words encountered in the *Essentials* be checked on these lists and that a thorough drill be held on the words thus checked.

FIRST HALF YEAR

VERBS

1	agō	<i>drive, do</i>
2	cōgō	<i>drive together, collect, compel</i>
3	nāvigō	<i>sail</i>
4	redigō	<i>drive back, reduce, render</i>
5	amō	<i>love</i>
6	appellō	<i>name, call</i>
7	audeō	<i>dare, venture</i>
8	capiō	<i>take</i>
9	accipiō	<i>accept, receive</i>
10	incipiō	<i>begin, undertake</i>
11	intercipiō	<i>(take between two forces), intercept, cut off</i>
12	occupō	<i>seize, occupy</i>
13	suscipiō	<i>undertake</i>
14	cēdō	<i>go</i>
15	discēdō	<i>go away, depart</i>
16	excēdō	<i>go out (of), go forth</i>
17	prōcēdō	<i>go forward, advance</i>
18	cōgnōscō	<i>learn, ascertain</i>
19	cōfirmō	<i>strengthen, encourage, affirm</i>
20	cōnsulō	<i>consult (with acc.); later, take counsel for (with dat.)</i>
21	dēfendō	<i>defend</i>
22	dīcō	<i>say</i>
23	dō	<i>give</i>
24	dūcō	<i>lead</i>

25	abdūcō	<i>lead away</i>
26	addūcō	<i>lead to, influence</i>
27	ēdūcō	<i>lead out</i>
28	indūcō	<i>lead in, induce</i>
29	perdūcō	<i>lead through, extend</i>
30	prōdūcō	<i>lead forward</i>
31	redūcō	<i>lead back</i>
32	existimō	<i>think, consider</i>
33	gerō	<i>carry on, accomplish</i>
34	habeō	<i>have, hold</i>
35	adhibeō	<i>hold (apply) to, apply, employ</i>
36	dēbeō	<i>(hold from, withhold), owe, ought</i>
37	prōhibeō	<i>hold forth (= away), prohibit, prevent</i>
38	iubeō	<i>order</i>
39	labōrō	<i>labor, suffer</i>
40	liberō	<i>set free</i>
41	locō	<i>place, put, set</i>
42	mittō	<i>send</i>
43	āmittō	<i>send away, lose</i>
44	committō	<i>commit, intrust; (w. proelium = begin)</i>
45	dīmittō	<i>send away</i>
46	intermittō	<i>interrupt, discontinue</i>
47	permittō	<i>permit, grant, intrust</i>
48	praemittō	<i>send ahead</i>
49	remittō	<i>send back</i>
50	moneō	<i>advise, warn</i>
51	admoneō	<i>remind</i>
52	moveō	<i>move</i>
53	commoveō	<i>move strongly, alarm</i>
54	permoveō	<i>move thoroughly, arouse</i>
55	removeō	<i>move back, remove</i>
56	nūntiō	<i>announce, declare</i>
57	oportet	<i>it is fitting</i>
58	pācō	<i>pacify, subdue</i>
59	parō	<i>get ready, prepare for</i>
60	comparō	<i>get together, provide</i>

61	petō	<i>seek</i>
62	portō	<i>carry</i>
63	properō	<i>hurry, hasten</i>
64	pugnō	<i>fight</i>
65	expugnō	<i>capture by assault</i>
66	oppugnō	<i>fight against, attack</i>
67	putō	<i>think</i>
68	relinquō	<i>leave behind, abandon</i>
69	respondeō	<i>answer</i>
70	scribō	<i>write</i>
71	cōscribō	<i>write in a list, enroll</i>
72	servō	<i>save, protect</i>
73	cōservō	<i>save fully, preserve</i>
74	spectō	<i>look at</i>
75	expectō	<i>look out for, expect, wait, await</i>
76	sum	<i>be</i>
77	absum	<i>be away</i>
78	adsum	<i>be near, be present</i>
79	possum	<i>be able</i>
80	teneō	<i>hold, keep</i>
81	contineō	<i>hold together, contain, confine</i>
82	obtimeō	<i>take hold upon, hold, have, b' in</i>
83	pertimeō	<i>hold (itself) through to, reach, extend, pertain</i>
84	retineō	<i>hold back, retain</i>
85	sustineō	<i>hold up, sustain</i>
86	timeō	<i>fear</i>
87	videō	<i>see</i>
88	prōvideō	<i>see beforehand, foresee</i>
89	vocō	<i>call</i>
90	convocō	<i>call together, summon</i>
91	ēvocō	<i>call out</i>

NOUNS

1	aestās	<i>summer</i>
2	ager	<i>farm land, field</i>
3	agricola	<i>farmer</i>

4	amīcītia	<i>friendship</i>
5	animus	<i>spirit, life, soul</i>
6	annus	<i>year</i>
7	arma	<i>arms</i>
8	auctōritās	<i>influence</i>
9	auxilium	<i>aid, help</i>
10	bellum	<i>war</i>
11	caput	<i>head</i>
12	castra	<i>camp</i>
13	celeritās	<i>speed, swiftness</i>
14	cīvitās	<i>citizenship, state</i>
15	cōnsilium	<i>advice, plan</i>
16	cōnsul	<i>consul</i>
17	deus	<i>god</i>
18	dignitās	<i>worth, position</i>
19	diligentia	<i>painstaking, care</i>
20	dux	<i>leader</i>
21	eques	<i>horseman</i>
22	equus	<i>horse</i>
23	exemplum	<i>example, precedent</i>
24	factum	<i>thing done, act, deed</i>
25	fāma	<i>talk (about some one or something), report, reputation</i>
26	filia	<i>daughter</i>
27	filius	<i>son</i>
28	flūmen	<i>river</i>
29	fortūna	<i>fortune, wealth</i>
30	frāter	<i>brother</i>
31	frūmentum	<i>grain</i>
32	fuga	<i>flight</i>
33	hiems	<i>winter</i>
34	homō	<i>man</i>
35	impedīmentum	<i>hindrance (pl., baggage)</i>
36	iniūria	<i>wrong doing, wrong (suffered)</i>
37	insula	<i>island</i>
38	iūdex	<i>juror</i>

39	iūdicium	<i>trial, judgment</i>
40	lēx	<i>law</i>
41	liber	<i>book</i>
42	libertās	<i>freedom</i>
43	lingua	<i>tongue, language</i>
44	locus	<i>place</i>
45	lūx	<i>light</i>
46	māter	<i>mother</i>
47	memoria	<i>memory</i>
48	mīles	<i>soldier</i>
49	nātūra	<i>nature</i>
50	negōtium	<i>business, trouble</i>
51	nōmen	<i>name</i>
52	numerus	<i>number</i>
53	officium	<i>service, courtesy, duty</i>
54	oppidum	<i>(walled) town</i>
55	pater	<i>father</i>
56	pāx	<i>peace</i>
57	pecūnia	<i>money</i>
58	periculum	<i>trial, danger</i>
59	poena	<i>penalty</i>
60	populus	<i>people</i>
61	porta	<i>gate (of a city)</i>
62	praemium	<i>reward</i>
63	praesidium	<i>garrison, guard</i>
64	prīnceps	<i>first man, leader, chief</i>
65	proelium	<i>battle</i>
66	puella	<i>girl</i>
67	puer	<i>boy</i>
68	rēgina	<i>queen</i>
69	rēgnum	<i>kingdom</i>
70	rēx	<i>king</i>
71	salūs	<i>safety</i>
72	servitūs	<i>slavery</i>
73	servus	<i>slave</i>
74	sīgnum	<i>sign, signal, standard (of an army)</i>

75	<i>silva</i>	<i>forest</i>
76	<i>socius</i>	<i>ally, comrade</i>
77	<i>soror</i>	<i>sister</i>
78	<i>supplicium</i>	<i>punishment</i>
79	<i>tempus</i>	<i>time</i>
80	<i>terra</i>	<i>land, earth</i>
81	<i>via</i>	<i>highway, road</i>
82	<i>victōria</i>	<i>victory</i>
83	<i>villa</i>	<i>farmhouse</i>
84	<i>vir</i>	<i>man, hero</i>
85	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>manliness, courage</i>
86	<i>vīta</i>	<i>life</i>
87	<i>vōx</i>	<i>voice, speech, remark</i>

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

1	<i>ā, ab</i>	<i>away from, by</i>
2	<i>ac, atque</i>	<i>and also, and in fact</i>
3	<i>ad</i>	<i>to, towards</i>
4	<i>ante</i>	<i>before (prep. and adv.)</i>
5	<i>anteā</i>	<i>before (adv.)</i>
6	<i>aut</i>	<i>or</i>
7	<i>aut . . . aut</i>	<i>either . . . or</i>
8	<i>certē</i>	<i>certainly, at least</i>
9	<i>cum</i>	<i>with (prep.)</i>
10	<i>cūr</i>	<i>why</i>
11	<i>dē</i>	<i>down from, concerning</i>
12	<i>ē, ex</i>	<i>out from, out of</i>
13	<i>et</i>	<i>and, also, even</i>
14	<i>etiam</i>	<i>even, also</i>
15	<i>iam</i>	<i>by this time, already</i>
16	<i>in</i>	<i>in, on (w. abl.); into (w. acc.)</i>
17	<i>longē</i>	<i>far, by far</i>
18	<i>-ne</i> (sign of a certain type of question)	
19	<i>nec, neque</i>	<i>and not, nor</i>
20	<i>nec . . . nec</i>	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
21	<i>neque . . . neque</i>	<i>neither . . . nor</i>

22	nōn	<i>not</i>
23	nunc	<i>now</i>
24	per	<i>through</i>
25	post	<i>after, behind (prep.)</i>
26	postea	<i>afterwards (adv.)</i>
27	prō	<i>in front of, on behalf of, in place of</i>
28	quam	<i>than (conj.); how? (adv. of degree)</i>
29	-que	<i>and</i>
30	sed	<i>but</i>
31	trāns	<i>across</i>
32	tum	<i>then</i>
33	ubi	<i>where, when</i>

PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1	aequus	<i>level, even, just, fair</i>
2	altus	<i>high, deep</i>
3	amicus	<i>friendly; friend (as noun)</i>
4	amplus	<i>large, distinguished</i>
5	barbarus	<i>foreign, barbarous</i>
6	bonus	<i>good</i>
7	certus	<i>fixed, assured, certain</i>
8	crēber	<i>frequent, thick</i>
9	decem	<i>ten</i>
10	decimus	<i>tenth</i>
11	duo	<i>two</i>
12	ēgregius	<i>eminent, unusual</i>
13	finitimus	<i>neighboring</i>
14	hīc	<i>this (as adj.); he (as pron.); here (as adv.)</i>
15	īdem	<i>the same</i>
16	ille	<i>that, he</i>
17	inimicus	<i>hostile; enemy (as noun)</i>
18	inīquus	<i>uneven, unfavorable, unjust</i>
19	integer	<i>untouched, unimpaired, whole</i>
20	ipse	<i>self, the very</i>
21	is	<i>this, that (as adj.); he (as pron.)</i>
22	liber	<i>free</i>

23	longus	<i>long</i>
24	magnus	<i>large</i>
25	medius	<i>middle, middle of</i>
26	meus	<i>my, mine</i>
27	nōnus	<i>ninth</i>
28	noster	<i>our</i>
29	nōtus	<i>known</i>
30	novem	<i>nine</i>
31	novus	<i>new</i>
32	octāvus	<i>eighth</i>
33	octō	<i>eight</i>
34	parvus	<i>small</i>
35	pauci	<i>few</i>
36	primus	<i>first</i>
37	pūblicus	<i>belonging to the state, official, public</i>
38	pulcher	<i>beautiful</i>
39	quārtus	<i>fourth</i>
40	quattuor	<i>four</i>
41	quīnque	<i>five</i>
42	quīntus	<i>fifth</i>
43	quis	<i>who (interrog.)</i>
44	reliquus	<i>the rest, remaining, remainder of</i>
45	sacer	<i>sacred</i>
46	secundus	<i>second</i>
47	septem	<i>seven</i>
48	septimus	<i>seventh</i>
49	sex	<i>six</i>
50	sextus	<i>sixth</i>
51	tardus	<i>slow, late</i>
52	tertius	<i>third</i>
53	timidus	<i>fearful</i>
54	trēs	<i>three</i>
55	tuus	<i>your</i>
56	ūnus	<i>one</i>
57	vērus	<i>true</i>
58	vester	<i>your</i>

SECOND HALF YEAR

VERBS

1	appropinquō	<i>draw near to, approach</i>
2	audiō	<i>hear</i>
	(capiō) ¹	<i>(take)</i>
3	excipiō	<i>take, accept</i>
4	praecipiō	<i>instruct, advise, order</i>
5	recipiō	<i>take back, receive; se recipere, withdraw</i>
	(cedō) ¹	<i>(go, yield)</i>
6	antecedō	<i>go before, precede</i>
7	succedō	<i>come up to, succeed</i>
8	claudō	<i>close, confine</i>
9	excludō	<i>shut out</i>
10	intercludō	<i>shut off, cut off, stop</i>
11	coepi	<i>began</i>
12	concitō	<i>arouse, excite</i>
13	cōnfidō	<i>trust</i>
14	cupiō	<i>desire</i>
15	dēmōnstrō	<i>point out, show</i>
	(dicō) ¹	<i>(say)</i>
16	praedicō	<i>foretell</i>
17	dō	<i>give, put</i>
18	abdō	<i>put away, hide</i>
19	addō	<i>put to, put beside, add</i>
20	circumdō	<i>put around, surround</i>
21	reddō	<i>give back</i>
22	trādō	<i>hand over</i>
23	doceō	<i>teach, show</i>
24	dormiō	<i>sleep</i>
25	dubitō	<i>be in doubt, doubt, hesitate</i>
	(ducō) ¹	<i>(lead)</i>
26	trādūcō	<i>lead across</i>
27	ēripiō	<i>snatch away</i>

¹ Given in List for First Half Year.

28	faciō	<i>do, make</i>
29	cōficiō	<i>finish, exhaust</i>
30	dēficiō	<i>fail, revolt, rebel</i>
31	interficiō	<i>kill</i>
32	perficiō	<i>accomplish</i>
33	praeficiō	<i>put in charge of</i>
34	reficiō	<i>repair</i>
35	satisfaciō	<i>satisfy</i>
36	inaciō	<i>throw, hurl</i>
37	adiciō	<i>throw to, add</i>
38	coniciō	<i>throw violently, hurl</i>
39	dēiciō	<i>throw down</i>
40	ēiciō	<i>throw out</i>
41	obiciō	<i>throw against, oppose</i>
42	prōiciō	<i>throw forward</i>
43	reiciō	<i>throw back</i>
44	trāiciō	<i>throw across, pierce</i>
45	ignōrō	<i>be ignorant of</i>
46	impediō	<i>hinder</i>
47	incendō	<i>set on fire</i>
48	legō	<i>pick, gather, read</i>
49	dēligō	<i>pick out, select, choose</i>
50	licet	<i>it is lawful, it is permitted</i>
51	maneō	<i>remain</i>
52	permaneō	<i>remain, hold out</i>
53	remaneō	<i>remain, stay behind</i>
	(mittō) ¹	(<i>send</i>)
54	submittō	<i>send to the assistance of; sē submittere, yield (one's self) to, yield</i>
55	mūniō	<i>fortify</i>
56	noceō	<i>injure</i>
57	ōdī	<i>hate</i>
	(parō) ¹	(<i>get ready, prepare for</i>)
58	imperō	<i>command, order</i>
59	pellō	<i>drive, defeat</i>

¹ Given in List for First Half Year.

60	expellō	<i>drive out</i>
61	impellō	<i>drive on, excite, incite</i>
62	repellō	<i>drive back, repulse</i>
63	persuādeō	<i>urge strongly, persuade</i>
64	pōnō	<i>put, place</i>
65	dēpōnō	<i>put down, put aside</i>
66	expōnō	<i>put forth, set forth, explain</i>
67	oppōnō	<i>put against, oppose</i>
68	prōpōnō	<i>put before, propose</i>
69	premō	<i>press, oppress</i>
70	quaerō	<i>seek, inquire</i>
71	rideō	<i>laugh</i>
	(scandō) ¹	(climb)
72	ascendō	<i>climb, ascend, mount</i>
73	dēscendō	<i>climb down, descend</i>
74	sciō	<i>know</i>
75	sedeō	<i>sit</i>
76	obsideō	<i>sit (over) against, sit before, besiege</i>
77	sentiō	<i>feel, realize</i>
78	serviō	<i>be a slave to, serve</i>
79	sistō	<i>cause to stand, bring to a stop, stop</i>
80	cōnsistō	<i>take a stand together, take one's place, stop</i>
81	dēsistō	<i>cease, desist from</i>
82	resistō	<i>set one's self against, resist</i>
83	spērō	<i>hope</i>
84	dēspērō	<i>lose hope, despair</i>
	(struō) ¹	(erect)
85	exstruō	<i>pile up, erect</i>
86	instruō	<i>arrange</i>
	(sum) ²	(be)
87	dēsum	<i>be lacking</i>
88	praesum	<i>be in command of</i>
89	sūmō	<i>take, assume</i>

¹ Given here only to show source of compounds; not required in Syllabus for First Year.

² Given in List for First Half Year.

90	superō	<i>overcome, excel, surpass</i>
91	temptō (tendo) ¹	<i>test, try, attempt (stretch)</i>
92	contendō	<i>strain one's self, struggle, hasten</i>
93	ostendō	<i>show</i>
94	terreō	<i>frighten</i>
95	perterreō	<i>alarm</i>
96	trahō	<i>drag</i>
97	veniō	<i>come</i>
98	circumveniō	<i>come around, surround</i>
99	conveniō	<i>come together</i>
100	inveniō	<i>come upon, find</i>
101	pervenīō (videō) ²	<i>come through (to a place), arrive (at), come (see)</i>
102	invidēō	<i>envy</i>
103	vincō	<i>conquer</i>
104	vulnerō	<i>wound</i>

NOUNS

1	aciēs	<i>line of battle</i>
2	adventus	<i>a coming (to), arrival</i>
3	aetās	<i>age</i>
4	altitūdō	<i>height, depth</i>
5	beneficium	<i>kindness</i>
6	cīvis	<i>citizen</i>
7	cohors	<i>cohort</i>
8	condiciō	<i>condition, terms</i>
9	cōnsuetūdō	<i>custom, habit</i>
10	cōpia	<i>supply; pl. forces</i>
11	cornū	<i>horn, wing (of an army)</i>
12	corpus	<i>body</i>
13	cupiditās	<i>desire, greed</i>
14	diēs	<i>day</i>

¹ Given here only to show source of compounds; not required in Syllabus for First Year.

² Given in List for First Half Year.

15	<i>difficultās</i>	<i>difficulty</i>
16	<i>dolor</i>	<i>grief</i>
17	<i>domus</i> (f.)	<i>home, house</i>
18	<i>equitātus</i>	<i>cavalry</i>
19	<i>exercitus</i>	<i>army</i>
20	<i>exitus</i>	<i>a going forth, outgoing, outcome, departure</i>
21	<i>fidēs</i>	<i>good faith, protection</i>
22	<i>finis</i>	<i>end; pl. boundaries, territory</i>
23	<i>genus</i>	<i>race, kind</i>
24	<i>hostis</i>	<i>enemy (of the state)</i>
25	<i>imperātor</i>	<i>commander in chief, general</i>
26	<i>imperium</i>	<i>command, power</i>
27	<i>inopia</i>	<i>need, lack</i>
28	<i>iter</i>	<i>journey</i>
29	<i>iūs</i>	<i>justice, right</i>
30	<i>laus</i>	<i>praise</i>
31	<i>magnitūdō</i>	<i>size, importance</i>
32	<i>manus</i> (f.)	<i>hand; handful, hence group, force</i>
33	<i>mare</i>	<i>sea</i>
34	<i>mēns</i>	<i>mind</i>
35	<i>modus</i>	<i>measure, manner</i>
36	<i>mōns</i>	<i>mountain</i>
37	<i>mors</i>	<i>death</i>
38	<i>multitūdō</i>	<i>multitude, crowd</i>
39	<i>nāvigium</i>	<i>boat</i>
40	<i>nāvis</i>	<i>ship</i>
41	<i>nox</i>	<i>night</i>
42	<i>ōrātiō</i>	<i>speaking, speech</i>
43	<i>ōrdō</i>	<i>rank, class</i>
44	<i>pars</i>	<i>part</i>
45	<i>passus</i>	<i>properly, stretch (of the feet to full length apart), pace (about five feet)</i>
46	<i>pōns</i>	<i>bridge</i>
47	<i>potestās</i>	<i>power, authority, opportunity</i>
48	<i>ratio</i>	<i>account, theory, manner</i>
49	<i>rēs</i>	<i>thing</i>

50	rēs frūmentāria	<i>grain supplies</i>
51	rēs militāris	<i>military affairs, art of war</i>
52	rēs pūblica	<i>commonwealth, government</i>
53	senātus	<i>senate</i>
54	spatium	<i>space, time, distance</i>
55	spēs	<i>hope</i>
56	timor	<i>fear</i>
57	turris	<i>tower</i>
58	urbs	<i>city</i>
59	vīs	<i>force, violence; pl. strength</i>
60	vulnus	<i>wound</i>

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

1	ācritēr	<i>sharply, fiercely</i>
2	amplē	<i>fully</i>
3	apud	<i>among, at the home of</i>
4	autem (postpositive),	<i>moreover, on the other hand</i>
5	bene	<i>well</i>
6	celeriter	<i>swiftly, quickly</i>
7	diligenter	<i>lovingly, with care</i>
8	enim (postpositive),	<i>for</i>
9	facile	<i>easily</i>
10	fortiter	<i>bravely</i>
11	graviter	<i>heavily, weightily, seriously</i>
12	inter	<i>between, among</i>
13	interim	<i>meanwhile</i>
14	magnopere	<i>greatly</i>
15	multum	<i>much</i>
16	nam	<i>for</i>
17	nē . . . quidem	<i>not even</i>
18	ob	<i>on account of</i>
19	propter	<i>on account of</i>
20	quidem (postpositive),	<i>indeed, certainly, at least</i>
21	quod	<i>because</i>
22	satis	<i>enough, quite</i>

23	sī	<i>if</i>
24	sine	<i>without</i>
25	vērō	<i>in truth, but</i>

PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

1	ācer	<i>sharp, keen</i>
2	celer	<i>swift</i>
3	centum	<i>hundred</i>
4	commūnis	<i>common</i>
5	cupidus	<i>desirous, eager</i>
6	dexter	<i>right (hand)</i>
7	difficilis	<i>difficult</i>
8	ducentī	<i>two hundred</i>
9	duodecim	<i>twelve</i>
10	duodēvigintī	<i>eighteen</i>
11	ego	<i>I</i>
12	equester	<i>cavalry, (adj.), of the cavalry</i>
13	facilis	<i>easy</i>
14	familiāris	<i>of the household, familiar, intimate, (as noun, intimate friend, friend)</i>
15	fortis	<i>brave</i>
16	frūmentārius	<i>pertaining to grain</i>
17	gravis	<i>heavy, serious</i>
18	idōneus	<i>fit, suitable</i>
19	immortālis	<i>without death, undying, immortal</i>
20	incolumis	<i>unharmcd, safe</i>
21	levis	<i>light (in weight)</i>
22	militāris	<i>military</i>
23	mille	<i>one thousand</i>
24	multus	<i>much, many</i>
25	necessārius	<i>necessary, urgent</i>
26	nōbilis	<i>(knowable), well-known, noble, famous</i>
27	omnis	<i>every; pl. all</i>
28	pār	<i>equal</i>
29	pedester	<i>infantry (adj.)</i>
30	peritus	<i>skilled, experienced</i>

31 plēnus	<i>full</i>
32 praesēns	<i>present in person</i>
33 propīnquus	<i>near; (as noun, a near relative, relative, kinsman)</i>
34 quadringentī	<i>four hundred</i>
35 quattuordecim	<i>fourteen</i>
36 quī	<i>who</i>
37 quindecim	<i>fifteen</i>
38 recēns	<i>fresh, new, recent</i>
39 sēdecim	<i>sixteen</i>
40 septendecim	<i>seventeen</i>
41 sescentī	<i>six hundred</i>
42 similis	<i>like</i>
43 singulāris	<i>single, singular, unusual</i>
44 sinister	<i>left (hand)</i>
45 suī	<i>himself, herself, themselves</i>
46 suus	<i>his (her, its, their) own</i>
47 tālis	<i>such, of such a sort or kind</i>
48 trecentī	<i>three hundred</i>
49 tredecim	<i>thirteen</i>
50 tū	<i>you</i>
51 ūndecim	<i>eleven</i>
52 ūndēvigintī	<i>nineteen</i>
53 vīgintī	<i>twenty</i>
54 vīvus	<i>alive</i>

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abl.</i>	ablative.	<i>intr.</i>	intransitive.
<i>acc.</i>	accusative.	<i>m.</i>	masculine.
<i>adj.</i>	adjective.	<i>n., neut.</i>	neuter.
<i>adv.</i>	adverb.	<i>neg.</i>	negative.
<i>comp.</i>	comparative.	<i>part.</i>	participle.
<i>conj.</i>	conjunction.	<i>pass.</i>	passive.
<i>dat.</i>	dative.	<i>perf.</i>	perfect.
<i>def.</i>	defective.	<i>pers.</i>	personal.
<i>dem.</i>	demonstrative.	<i>pl., plur.</i>	plural.
<i>dep.</i>	deponent.	<i>poss.</i>	possessive.
<i>determ.</i>	determinative.	<i>prep.</i>	preposition.
<i>dim.</i>	diminutive.	<i>pres.</i>	present.
<i>f.</i>	feminine.	<i>pron.</i>	pronoun.
<i>fut.</i>	future.	<i>refl.</i>	reflexive.
<i>gen.</i>	genitive.	<i>rel.</i>	relative.
<i>impers.</i>	impersonal.	<i>subjv.</i>	subjunctive.
<i>indecl.</i>	indeclinable.	<i>subst.</i>	substantive.
<i>indef.</i>	indefinite.	<i>sup.</i>	superlative.
<i>inf.</i>	infinitive.	<i>tr.</i>	transitive.
<i>intens.</i>	intensive.	<i>w.</i>	with.
<i>interrog.</i>	interrogative.		

VOCABULARY

LATIN-ENGLISH

[Words marked with an asterisk are those emphasized by the
New York State Syllabus.]

A

- ***ā**, **ab**, *prep. w. abl.*, by, from, away from, with.
- abditus**. See **abdō**.
- ***abdō**, **abdere**, **abdidī**, **abditus** (**ab** + **dō**), *tr.*, put away, hide, conceal.
- ***abdūcō**, **dūcere**, **abdūxī**, **abductus** (**ab** + **dūcō**), *tr.*, lead away.
- abeō**, **abire**, **abii**, **abitus** (**ab** + **eō**), *intr.*, go away.
- abiciō**, **ere**, **abiēcī**, **abiectus** (**ab** + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw away, throw, hurl.
- ablātus**. See **auferō**.
- abscidō**, **cidere**, **abscidī**, **abscisus** (**ab**, **abs** + **caedō**), *tr.*, cut off, cut away.
- abstineō**, **tinēre**, **abstinui**, **abstentus** (**ab**, **abs** + **teneō**), *tr.*, hold from, keep from, refrain from.
- ***absum**, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfuturus** (**ab** + **sum**), *intr.*, be away, be distant, be absent.
- ***ac**. See **atque**.
- Acca**, **ae**, *f.*, **Acca Larentia**, foster mother of Romulus and Remus.
- accēdō**, **ere**, **accessi**, **accessurus** (**ad** + **cēdō**), *intr.*, go near, come near, come to, approach; *w. ad and acc.*
- accendō**, **ere**, **accendi**, **accensus** (**ad** + **candeō**, glow), *tr.*, make glow, set on fire; **accensus**, burning.
- accidō**, **ere**, **accidi**, — (**ad** + **cadō**), *intr.*, happen.
- acciō**, **ire**, **accivi**, **accitus** (**ad** + **cieō**, set in motion), *tr.*, summon, invite.
- ***accipiō**, **ere**, **accēpi**, **acceptus** (**ad** + **capiō**), *tr.*, accept, receive; suffer, undergo.
- acclāmō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**ad** + **clāmō**, cry), *tr.*, shout, cry out.
- acclivis**, **e** (**ad** + **clivus**, slope), rising.
- acclivitas**, **ātis** (**acclivis**), *f.*, ascent, slope.
- accurrō**, **ere**, **accurri**, **accursus** (**ad** + **currō**, run), *intr.*, run up to, hasten to.
- accūsō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, accuse, reproach.
- ***ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, sharp, keen, eager, fierce.
- ācerrimē**. See **ācritēr**.

***aciēs, aciēs, f.**, edge; line of battle.
Acrisius, i, m., Acrisius, grandfather of Perseus.

***ācriter (ācer), adv.**, sharply, eagerly, fiercely; *comp.* **ācrius**; *sup.* **ācerimē**.

actus. See **agō**.

***ad, prep. w. acc.**, to, up to, toward, at, near, against; according to; *w. numerals*, about.

***addō, addere, addidī, additus (ad + dō, place), tr.**, put to, put beside, add.

***addūcō, ere, addūxi, adductus (ad + dūcō), tr.**, lead to, lead, influence.

adeō, adire, adiī, aditum (ad + eō), intr. and tr., go to, approach.

adfiō, ere, adfēcī, adfectus (ad + faciō), tr., affect; **poenā adficere**, punish.

adhaereō, haerēre, adhaesi, adhaesum (ad + haereō), intr., stick to, hang on.

***adhibeō, ēre, adhibui, adhibitus (ad + habeō), tr.**, hold to, apply (to), employ, call in, use.

adhūc, adv., to this place, hitherto, up to this time, thus far, still.

***adiciō, icere, adieci, adiectus (ad + iaciō), tr.**, throw to, add.

aditus, ūs (adeō), m., approach, access.

administrō, āre, āvi, ātus (ad + ministrō, manage), tr., manage, direct, administer.

***admoneō, monēre, admonui, admonitus (ad + moneō), tr.**, remind.

admoveō, movēre, admōvi, admōtus (ad + moveō), tr., move to.

adolēscō, ere, adolēvi, adultus (ad + olēscō, grow), intr., grow up.

adorior, iri, adortus sum (ad + orior), tr., attack.

adōrnō, āre, āvi, ātus (ad + ōrnō), tr., equip, adorn.

***adsum, adessē, adfui, adfuturus (ad + sum), intr.**, be present, be near, appear, aid.

Aduatuci, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

adolēscēns, entis (adolēscō), young; as subst., young man, youth.

advena, ae, m. and f., stranger.

adveniō, ire, advēni, adventum (ad + veniō), intr., come to, arrive, reach.

***adventus, ūs (adveniō), m.**, a coming to, arrival, approach.

adversus, a, um (advertō, turn to), in front, opposite; unfavorable; adversō colle, up the hill.

adversus (adversus), prep. w. acc., opposite, against, facing.

aedificium, i (aedificō), n., building.

aedificō, āre, āvi, ātus (aedis + faciō), tr., build, construct.

aedis or aedēs, is, f., temple; *pl.*, **aedēs rēgiae**, palace.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.

aegrē (aeger), adv., scarcely, with difficulty.

aegritūdō, inis (aeger), f., sickness, vexation, mortification.

Aemilius, i, m., a Roman clan name.

aequāliter (aequālis, equal), adv., uniformly, equally.

***aequus, a, um**, level, even; equal, fair, just; favorable.

aër, aëris, *acc.* aëra, *m.*, air.
 aes, aeris, *n.*, copper, bronze.
 *aestās, ātis, *f.*, summer.
 aestimō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, think, estimate.
 aestus, ūs, *m.*, heat; surge, sea.
 *aetās, ātis, *f.*, age.
 Aethiopēs, *um, m. pl.*, the Ethiopians.
 afflītō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, dash against.
 Afrī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Africans.
 Africa, *ae, f.*, the region about Carthage.
 Africānus, ī, *m.*, a name given to Scipio.
 *ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land, territory.
 agger, aggeris (ad + gerō), *m.*, mound, agger.
 aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum (ad + gradior, go), *tr.*, go against, attack.
 agitō, āre, āvi, ātus (agō), *tr.*, move to and fro, toss.
 agmen, agminis (agō), *n.*, army on the march; primum agmen, van; novissimum agmen, rear.
 āgnōscō, ere, āgnōvī, āgnitus (ad + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, recognize.
 *agō, ere, ēgi, āctus, *tr.*, drive, lead, move forward; do, perform, accomplish, treat; grātiās agere, express one's thanks, give thanks, thank; triumphum agere, celebrate a triumph; vitam agere, spend one's days, pass one's life.
 *agricola, *ae* (ager + colō), *m.*, farmer.
 Agrigentum, ī, *n.*, a city of Sicily.
 aiō, ais, ait, aiunt, *def.*, say.

Alba or Alba Longa, *ae, f.*, an ancient Latin town.
 Albānus, *a, um* (Alba), Alban; *as subst.*, Albānus, ī, *m.*, an Alban.
 albus, *a, um*, white.
 aliēnus, *a, um* (alius), another's, unfavorable, strange.
 aliquis and aliqui, aliqua, aliquid and aliquod, *indef. pron. and adj.*, some one, any one; something, anything.
 aliter, *adv.*, otherwise.
 alius, alia, aliud, other, another; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; alii . . . alii, some . . . some, some . . . others; alii aliam in partem, some in one direction, some in another.
 Allobrogēs, *um, m. pl.*, a Celtic tribe of Gaul.
 alō, ere, alui, altus, *tr.*, nourish, strengthen.
 Alpēs, ium, *f. pl.*, the Alps.
 altāria, ium, *n. pl.*, altar.
 alter, altera, alterum, one (of two), the other (of two), another, second.
 *altitūdō, inis (altus), *f.*, height, depth.
 *altus, *a, um* (alō), high, deep.
 alveus, ī, *m.*, basket, trough.
 Ambianī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Belgian tribe.
 ambō, *ae, ō*, both.
 *amicitia, *ae* (amicus), *f.*, friendship, alliance.
 *amicus, *a, um*, friendly.
 amicus, ī (amō), *m.*, friend, ally.
 *āmittō, ere, āmisi, āmissus (ā + mittō), *tr.*, send away, lose.
 Ammōn, ōnis, *m.*, highest divinity of the Ethiopians.

*amō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, love, like.
 amor, ōris, *m.*, love.
 āmoveō, ēre, āmovi, āmōtus (ā + moveō), *tr.*, take away, remove.
 *amplē, *adv.*, fully, freely.
 amplificō, āre, āvi, ātus (amplus + faciō), *tr.*, increase, extend.
 amplitūdō, inis (amplus), *f.*, width.
 *amplus, a, um, large, extensive, ample, distinguished.
 Amūlius, i, *m.*, king of Alba Longa.
 ancile, is, *n.*, a small oval shield.
 ancilla, ae, *f.*, slave girl, maidservant.
 Andromeda, a (ē, es), *f.*, Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus, rescued by Perseus.
 angustiae, ārum (angustus), *f. pl.*, narrowness, narrow pass.
 angustus, a, um, narrow, contracted; steep.
 animadvertō, ere, animadverti, animadversus (animus + advertō, turn toward), *tr.*, turn one's mind to, notice; animadvertere in, punish.
 animal, ālis (anima, life), *n.*, animal.
 animōsus, a, um (animus), full of courage, brave.
 *animus, i, *m.*, life, soul; mind, disposition, courage, spirit; in animō esse, in animō habēre, have in mind, intend, plan.
 *annus, i, *m.*, year.
 *ante, *adv.*, and *prep. w. acc.*, before.
 *anteā, *adv.*, before.
 *antecēdō, cedere, antecessi, antecessus (ante + cēdō), *tr. and intr.*, go before, precede.
 antepōnō, ere, anteposui, antepositus (ante + pōnō), *tr.*, put before.

antequam, *conj.*, before, until.
 antiquitus (antiquus), *adv.*, in former times, anciently.
 antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.
 ānulus, i, *m.*, ring.
 anus, ūs, *f.*, an old woman.
 anxious, a, um (angō, bind tight, vex), troubled, anxious.
 Ap. = Appius.
 aperio, ire, aperui, apertus, *tr.*, open.
 apertus, a, um (aperio), opened, open.
 Apollō, inis, *m.*, Apollo.
 apparātus, ūs (apparō, prepare), *m.*, preparation(s), supplies, equipment.
 appāreō, pāre, pāui, — (ad + pāreō), *intr.*, appear; serve.
 *appellō, āre, āvi, ātus, *tr.*, call, name.
 appellō, ere, appuli, appulsus (ad + pellō), *tr.*, drive to.
 Appius, i, *m.*, a Roman clan name.
 apprehendō, ere, apprehendi, apprehēsus (ad + prehēdō, seize), *tr.*, lay hold of, seize.
 *appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum (ad + propinquus), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, approach, draw near to, come near.
 *apud, *prep. w. acc.*, near, before, in the presence of, among, at the home of.
 Āpūlia, ae, *f.*, Apulia, a coast region in southeast Italy.
 aqua, ae, *f.*, water.
 aquila, ae, *f.*, eagle.
 Aquilēia, ae, *f.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.
 aquilō, ōnis, *m.*, the north wind.
 Aquitānia, ae, *f.*, a division of southern Gaul.
 Aquitānus, i, *m.*, an Aquitanian.
 āra, ae, *f.*, altar.

Arar, Araris, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.

arbiter, arbitri, m., witness.

arbitrium, i (arbiter), n., judgment.

arbitror, ari, ātus sum (arbiter), intr., think, consider, suppose.

arbor, oris, f., tree.

arca, ae, f., chest, ark.

arceō, ēre, arcui, —, tr., shut up, shut off, keep away, hinder, prevent.

arcus, ūs, m., bow.

arēna, ae, f., sand, arena.

argentum, i, n., silver.

Ariminum, i, n., a town in northern Italy.

Ariovistus, i, m., a German king.

***arma, ōrum, n. pl.,** arms, weapons.

armilla, ae, f., armlet, bracelet.

armō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., arm, equip.

arō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., plow.

ars, artis, f., art.

artūs, artuum, m. pl., joints.

arx, arcis (arceō), f., stronghold, citadel.

***ascendō, scendere, ascendī, ascēnsus (ad + scandō, climb), tr.,** ascend, climb, mount.

ascēnsus, ūs (ascendō), m., ascent.

Asia, ae, f., Asia.

asper, aspera, asperum, rough, fierce.

aspiciō, spicere, aspēxi, aspectus (ad + speciō, look at), tr., look at, watch, behold, observe.

assentātor, ōris (adsentior, agree with), m., flatterer.

āstūtia, ae (āstūtus, cunning), f., shrewdness, cunning.

asylum, i, n., asylum, place of refuge.

at, conj., but, yet.

Athēnae, ārum, f. pl., Athens.

***atque, ac, conj.,** and, and also.

Atrebās, ātis, m., one of the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe.

ātrium, i, n., court, hall.

Attalus, i, m., name of a king in Asia Minor.

attingō, ere, attigī, attāctus (ad + tangō, touch), tr., touch, join, border on.

attonitus, a, um, thunderstruck, astounded.

auctor, ōris (augeō), m., author, promoter.

***auctoritās, ātis (augeō), f.,** authority, power, influence, reputation.

audācter (audāx), adv., boldly, courageously; **comp. audācius; sup. audācissimē.**

audāx, bold, daring.

Audecumborius, i, m., an ambassador of the Remi.

***audeō, ēre, ausus sum, intr.,** dare.

***audiō, īre, audivī, auditus, tr.,** hear.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (ab + ferō), tr., take away, carry off.

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, tr., increase.

augurium, i (augur, soothsayer), n., divination, augury.

aureus, a, um (aurum), golden.

aurum, i, n., gold.

auspiciū, i (avis + speciō, look at), n., divination by noting the cries or flight of birds.

ausus. See audeō.

***aut, conj.,** or; **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.

***autem, conj.,** but, moreover, however, on the other hand.

***auxilium, i, n.,** help, aid.

Aventinus, a, um, of the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.

aversor, āri, āversātus sum (āvertō), *intr.*, turn away, turn aside.

āvertō, ere, āverti, āversus (ab + vertō), *tr.*, turn away, remove.

avis, is, *f.*, bird.

avus, i, *m.*, grandfather, ancestor.

Axona, ae, *f.*, a river of Gaul, the modern Aisne.

B

Baleāris, e, Balearic.

***barbarus**, a, um, foreign, barbarous, savage.

beātus, a, um, happy, blest.

Belgae, ārum, *m. pl.*, Belgians, a tribe of northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, a, um (bellum), warlike.

Bellovacī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

***bellum**, i, *n.*, war; bellum inferre, make war on, take the offensive against; bellum gerere, wage war.

bēlua, ae, *f.*, beast, huge beast.

***bene** (bonus), *adv.*, well; *comp.* melius; *sup.* optimē.

***beneficium**, i (bene + faciō), *n.*, favor, service, kindness.

benignē (benignus), *adv.*, kindly.

benignus, a, um, kind.

bibō, ere, bibi, —, *tr.*, drink.

Bibrax, Bibractis, *n.*, a town of the Remi.

Bōi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetii.

***bonus**, a, um, good.

Bratuspantium, i, *n.*, a town of the Bellovacī.

brevis, e, short, brief.

brevitās, ātis (brevis), *f.*, shortness.

Britanni, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Britons.

Britannia, ae, *f.*, Britain.

Bruttii, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Bruttii, a people in southern Italy.

C

C. = Gāius, *m.*, a Roman name.

cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsūrus, *intr.*, fall, die, perish.

Caecilius, i, *m.*; **Quintus Caecilius Metellus**, consul 206 B.C.

caedēs, is (caedō), *f.*, slaughter, murder.

caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus, *tr.*, cut to pieces, slay.

caelum, i, *n.*, sky, heavens.

Caesar, aris, *m.*, a family name of the Julian gens; **Gāius Iūlius Caesar**, 100-44 B.C., the conqueror of Gaul.

Calabria, ae, *f.*, Calabria, a region in southeastern Italy.

calamitās, ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat.

callidus, a, um, crafty, cunning.

Campānia, ae, *f.*, the coast region of Italy, south of Latium.

campus, i, *m.*, plain.

canis, is, *m.*, dog.

Cannae, ārum, *f. pl.*, Cannae, in Apulia, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in a famous battle.

cantus, ūs, *m.*, singing, crowing.

Canūtius, i, *m.*, Canute, king of the Britons.

***capiō**, ere, cēpi, captus, *tr.*, take, capture, seize; form (a plan).

Capitōlium, i, *n.*, the Capitol, a great temple of Jupiter at Rome, and the hill on which it stood.

captīvus, ī (capiō), *m.*, captive.
 Capua, *ae, f.*, chief city of Campania.
 *caput, capitī, *n.*, head.
 cārē (cārus), *adv.*, dearly.
 careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, *intr., w.*
 abl., be without, be in need of,
 lack.
 carō, carnis, *f.*, meat.
 carpentum, ī, *n.*, two-wheeled car-
 riage.
 carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptus, *tr.*,
 pluck, pick, gather; enjoy.
 carrus, ī, *m.*, wagon, cart.
 Carthāginiēnsis, *e*, Carthaginian;
 as subst. m. pl., the Carthaginians.
 Carthāgō, inis, *f.*, a great Phoenician
 city on the northern coast of Africa.
 Carthalō, ōnis, *m.*, a leader of the
 Carthaginians who was slain by
 Fabius.
 cārus, a, um, dear.
 casa, *ae, f.*, hut.
 Cassius, ī, *m.*, a Roman clan name.
 castellum, ī (*dim. of castra*), *n.*,
 fort, redoubt.
 Casticus, ī, *m.*, a Sequanian chief.
 *castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp.
 cāsus, ūs (cadō), *m.*, falling, fall, mis-
 fortune, chance.
 catulus, ī, *m.*, cub.
 causa, *ae, f.*, reason, cause, case;
 quā dē causā, why, for this reason;
 causā, *w. gen.*, for the sake of, for,
 with a view to, for the purpose of;
 causam dicere, plead a case.
 cavea, *ae* (cavus, hollow), *f.*, cage.
 cecidi. See cadō.
 *cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *intr., go*,
 yield, retire, retreat.
 *celer, celeris, celere, swift, quick.

*celeritās, ātis (celer), *f.*, speed,
 quickness, swiftness.
 *celeriter (celer), *adv.*, quickly,
 swiftly; *comp. celerius*; *sup.*
 celerrimē.
 cēlō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, hide.
 Celtae, ārum, *m. pl.*, Celts, one of
 the three great peoples of Gaul.
 cēna, *ae, f.*, meal, dinner.
 *centum, *indecl. adj.*, hundred.
 centuria, *ae* (centum), *f.*, a division
 of the people, or army, containing
 one hundred; century.
 centuriō, ōnis (centuria), *m.*, centu-
 rion, commander of a century.
 Cēpheus, ī, *m.*, Cepheus, king of
 Ethiopia.
 certāmen, inis (certō, contend), *n.*,
 contest, struggle.
 *certē, *adv.*, certainly, at least.
 *certus, a, um (cernō, separate,
 perceive), fixed, appointed, certain;
 certiōrem facere, inform.
 cessō, āre, āvī, ātum, *intr.*, be at a
 standstill, be inactive, be idle.
 cēterī, *ae, a, pl.*, the rest, the
 others.
 cibus, ī, *m.*, food.
 Cimbri, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Germanic
 tribe.
 circā, *prep. w. acc.*, around, about.
 circiter, *prep. w. acc.*, about, nearly.
 circum, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, about,
 around.
 *circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī,
 circumdatus (circum + dō), **tr.*,
 put around, surround.
 circumducō, dūcere, circumdūxī,
 circumductus (circum + dūcō),
 tr., lead around, surround.

**circumciō, ere, circumciēci, circum-
iectus** (circum + iaciō), *tr.*, throw
about, place around.

***circumveniō, ire, circumveni, cir-
cumventus** (circum + veniō), *tr.*,
come or go around, surround.

cis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

citerior, citerius, hither, nearer.

citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.

civicus, a, um (civis), civic.

***civis, is, m. and f.**, citizen.

***civitas, ātis (civis), f.**, citizenship,
group of citizens, state.

clādēs, is, f., disaster, destruction.

clam, adv., secretly.

**clāmitō, āre, āvi, ātus (clāmō, cry
out), tr.**, cry out, shout.

clāmor, ōris (clāmō, cry out), m.,
shouting, cry, noise.

classis, is, f., fleet.

Claudia, ae, f., sister of Appius
Claudius Pulcher.

Claudius, i, m., a Roman clan
name; **Appius Claudius Pulcher**,
consul 249 B.C.

***claudō, ere, clausi, clausus, tr.**,
shut, close, confine.

clēmētia, ae (clēmēns, mild), f.,
kindness, mildness.

cliēns, clientis, m. and f., depend-
ent, vassal.

Cn. = Gnaeus, i, m., a Roman name.

***coepi, coepisse, coepturus sum, def.**,
began.

***cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvi, cōgnitus**
(con + [g]nōscō, know), *tr.*, learn,
discover, ascertain, recognize.

***cōgō, ere, coēgi, coactus (con +
agō), tr.**, drive together, collect,
force, compel.

***cohors, cohortis, f.**, cohort (the tenth
part of a legion).

**cohortor, āri, ātus sum (con +
hortor), tr.**, exhort, encourage.

colligō, ligere, collēgi, collēctus
(con + legō, choose, gather), *tr.*,
gather, collect, draw together.

collis, is, m., hill.

collum, i, n., neck.

colō, ere, colui, cultus, tr., cultivate,
worship; dwell in, live in.

color, ōris, m., color.

comes, itis (con + eō), m. and f.,
companion, comrade.

commeātus, ūs, m., provisions, sup-
plies.

comminus (con + manus), adv.,
hand to hand.

***committō, ere, commisi, commissus**
(con + mittō), *tr.*, commit, in-
trust; join, begin (battle).

commodē (commodus, useful), adv.,
advantageously, easily.

***commoveō, ēre, commōvi, com-
mōtus (con + moveō), tr.**, to move,
move strongly, alarm, disturb.

***commūnis, e**, common.

**compār, comparis (con + pār), fit-
ting, suitable.**

***comparō, āre, āvi, ātus (con +
parō), tr.**, get together, prepare,
provide.

**compleō, complēre, complēvi, com-
plētus (con + pleō, fill), tr.**, fill, fill
up, complete.

complūrēs, a, many, very many, a
great many.

compōnō, ere, composui, compositus
(con + pōnō), *tr.*, put (set) to-
gether, prepare, make ready.

comprehendō, ere, comprehendi, comprehēnsus (con + prehēdō, seize), *tr.*, seize, arrest.

con. See **cum**.

concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum (con + cēdō), *intr.*, yield, grant, allow, permit.

concidō, ere, concidi, — (con + cadō), *intr.*, fall, tumble; be killed; subside.

concidō, ere, concidi, concisus (con + caedō), *tr.*, cut down, kill.

conciliō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., gain, win, procure.

concilium, i, n., assembly, council.

***concitō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr.**, arouse, excite.

condemnō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + damnō), *tr.*, condemn.

***condiciō, ōnis** (condicō, agree), *f.*, condition, agreement, proposal, terms.

condō, ere, condidi, conditus (con + dō), *tr.*, found, establish.

condūcō, ere, condūxi, conductus (con + dūcō), *tr.*, bring together, hire.

cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, conlātus (con + ferō), *tr.*, bring together, gather; **sē cōnferre**, betake one's self, go.

cōnferus, a, um (cōnferciō, stuff, crowd), crowded, dense.

***cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēci, cōnfectus** (con + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete, furnish, exhaust.

***cōnfidō, cōnfidere, cōnfishus sum, tr. and intr.**, trust, feel sure.

***cōnfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus** (con + firmō, strengthen), *tr.*, strengthen,

establish, assure, affirm, encourage.

cōnfigō, ere, cōnfixi, cōnfectum (con + figo, strike down), *intr.*, contend, fight.

cōnfugiō, ere, cōnfūgi, — (con + fugiō), *intr.*, flee.

congregō, āre, āvi, ātus (grex, herd), *tr.*, gather into a flock, assemble.

congressus, ūs (concredior, meet), *n.*, meeting.

congruō, ere, congrui, —, intr., agree, tally.

***coniciō, ere, conieci, coniectus** (con + iaciō), *tr.*, throw, hurl.

coniungō, ere, coniūnxī, coniūctus (con + iungō), *tr.*, join, attach.

coniūnx, coniugis (coniungō), *f.*, wife.

coniūrāti, ōrum (coniūrō), *m. pl.*, conspirators.

coniūrātiō, ōnis (coniūrō), *f.*, conspiracy.

coniūrō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + iūrō, swear), *intr.*, conspire, plot.

conlātus. See **cōnferō**.

conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus (con + locō), *tr.*, place, put, station.

conloquium, i (conloquor), *n.*, interview, conference.

conloquor, conloqui, conlocūtus sum (con + loquor, speak), *intr.*, speak together, confer. [try.

cōnōr, āri, ātus sum, tr., attempt, **cōnsanguineus, i** (con + sanguis), *m.*, relative, kinsman.

cōnscius, a, um (con + sciō), conscious.

***cōnscribō, ere, cōnscripti, cōnscriptus** (con + scribō), *tr.*, write in a list, levy, enroll.

- cōsecrō, āre, āvī, ātus** (con + sacrō, set apart), *tr.*, consecrate, deify.
- cōsentiō, īre, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēsum** (con + sentiō), *intr.*, agree, conspire.
- cōsequor, cōsequī, cōsecūtus sum** (con + sequor), *tr.*, pursue, overtake, obtain.
- cōserō, ere, cōseruī, cōsertus** (con + serō, bind), *tr.*, join (battle).
- *cōservō, āre, āvī, ātus** (con + servō), *tr.*, keep safe, preserve, save fully.
- cōsiderō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.**, consider, examine, look at closely.
- cōsidō, ere, cōsēdī, cōsēsum** (con + sidō, seat), *intr.*, settle, take up an abode.
- cōsiliū, ī, n.**, planning, deliberation, plan, advice, prudence.
- cōsimilis, e** (con + similis), very like.
- *cōsistō, ere, cōstitī, —** (con + sistō), *intr.*, take a stand together, take one's place, hold a position, stop.
- cōspectus, ūs** (cōspiciō), *m.*, sight, view.
- cōspiciō, ere, cōspēxī, cōspectus** (con + speciō, look at), *tr.*, see, perceive.
- cōstantia, ae** (cōnstō, stand), *f.*, firmness.
- cōstitūō, ere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus** (con + statuō), *tr.*, place, erect, construct, station, determine, appoint.
- cōnsuēscō, ere, cōnsuēvī, consuētus** (con + suēscō, be accustomed), *tr.*, accustom; *intr.*, be accustomed.
- *cōnsuētūdō, inis** (cōnsuēscō), *f.*, custom, habit.
- *cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.**, consul.
- cōnsulāris, e**, consular; *as subst., m.*, ex-consul.
- *cōsulō, ere, cōsului, cōsultus**, *tr., w. acc.*, consult; *w. dat.*, take counsel for.
- contegō, ere, contēxī, contēctus** (con + tegō), *tr.*, cover, cover up.
- *contendō, ere, contēdī, contentum** (con + tendō), *intr.*, strive, struggle; hasten, hurry; march.
- contentiō, ōnis** (contendō), *f.*, contest, controversy.
- contentus, a, um**, satisfied.
- continēns, continentis, f.**, continent, mainland (*properly an adj.: sc. terra*).
- continenter** (contineō), *adv.*, continually, constantly.
- *contineō, ēre, continui, contentus** (con + teneō), *tr.*, hold in, hold together, restrain, contain, confine, keep.
- contingō, tingere, contigī, contāctus** (con + tangō, touch), *tr. and intr.*, touch, happen.
- continuus, a, um** (contineō), continuous, successive.
- cōntiō, ōnis** (conveniō), *f.*, meeting.
- contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc.**, against, opposite.
- contrādicō, ere, contrādicī, contrādictus** (contrā + dicō), *tr.*, speak against, advise against.
- contulī. See cōnferō.**
- cōnūbium, ī** (con + nūbō, marry), *f.*, marriage.

*conveniō, īre, convēnī, conventum (con + veniō), *intr.*, come together, assemble; *impers.*, convenit, it is agreed.

convertō, ere, converti, conversus (con + vertō), *tr.*, turn (about), change; signa convertere, face about.

*convocō, āre, āvī, ātus (con + vocō), *tr.*, call together, summon.

coorior, iri, coortus sum (con + orior), *intr.*, rise, break out.

*cōpia, ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.

cōpiōsus, a, um, copious, abundant.

Corinthus, ī, *f.*, Corinth.

Cornēlius, ī, *m.*, a Roman clan name.

See Cossus, Scipiō.

*cornū, ūs, *n.*, horn; (of an army) flank, wing.

corōna, ae, *f.*, crown.

*corpus, corporis, *n.*, body.

corruō, ere, corruī, — (con + ruō, fall), *intr.*, fall, be slain.

Cossus, ī, *m.*; Aulus Cornēlius Cossus, consul 343 B.C.

cottidiānus, a, um (cottidiē), daily.

cottidiē, *adv.*, daily.

*crēber, bra, brum, frequent, numerous, thick.

crēdō, ere, crēdidi, crēditum, *intr.*, *w. dat.*, believe, trust; *tr.*, intrust, lend.

cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, burn.

creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, appoint, choose.

Crētēs, Crētum, *m. pl.*, Cretans.

crūdēlis, e, cruel.

cruur, ōris, *m.*, blood.

crux, crucis, *f.*, cross, gallows.

culpō, āre, āvī, ātus (culpa, fault), *tr.*, blame.

cultus. See colō.

*cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with; *in composition*, con-, co-; *conj.*, when, since, although, because.

*cupiditās, ātis (cupidus), *f.*, desire, eagerness, greed.

*cupidus, a, um (cupiō), desirous, eager, greedy.

*cupiō, ere, cupiui or cupii, cupitus, *tr.*, wish, desire, be eager for.

*cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, ae, *f.*, care, pains.

Curēs, Curium, *f. pl.*, a Sabine town.

cūria, ae, *f.*, senate house, senate.

currō, currere, cucurri, cursum, *intr.*, run.

cursus, ūs (currō), *m.*, course, running.

curūlis, e (currus, chariot), curule.

cūstōdia, ae (cūstōs, guard), *f.*, guard.

cūstōdiō, ire, cūstōdivi, cūstōditus (cūstōs, guard), *tr.*, watch, guard.

D

damnātiō, ōnis (damnō), *f.*, condemnation.

damnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *tr.*, condemn, sentence.

Danaē, ēs, *f.*, Danaë, daughter of Acrisius and mother of Perseus.

Dāni, ōrum, *m. pl.*, Danes.

daps, dapis, *f.*, feast.

*dē, *prep. w. abl.*, from, down from; concerning, in regard to, for; about.

dea, ae, *f.*, goddess.

***dēbeō**, ēre, **dēbui**, **dēbitus** (dē + habeo), *tr.*, hold from, withhold, owe; *with inf.*, ought.

***deceni**, *indecl. adj.*, ten.

dēcernō, ere, **dēcrēvi**, **dēcrētus** (dē + cernō, separate), *tr.*, decide, decree.

dēcertō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum** (dē + certō, contend), *intr.*, fight, contend.

***decimus**, a, um (decem), tenth.

dēcipiō, cipere, **dēcēpi**, **dēceptus** (dē + capiō), *tr.*, deceive, beguile, catch, entrap.

Decius, i, *m.*; **Pūblius Decius Mūs**, consul 340 B.C.

dēclivis, e (dē + clivus, slope), sloping.

dēcrēvi. See **dēcernō**.

dēcurreō, ere, **dē(cu)curri**, **dēcursum** (dē + curro), *intr.*, run down, hasten down.

dēditō, ōnis (dēdō), *f.*, surrender.

dēdō, dēdere, **dēdidi**, **dēditus** (dē + dō), *tr.*, give up, surrender.

dēducō, dūcere, **dēdūxi**, **dēductus** (dē + dūcō), *tr.*, lead away, bring down.

***dēfendō**, ere, **dēfendi**, **dēfēnsus**, *tr.*, defend, protect.

dēfēnsor, ōris (dēfendō), *m.*, defender.

dēferō, dēferre, **dētuli**, **dēlātus** (dē + ferō), *tr.*, carry off; bestow, confer.

***dēficiō**, ere, **dēfēcī**, **dēfectus** (dē + faciō), *tr. and intr.*, fail, be lacking, revolt, rebel.

***dēiciō**, icere, **dēiēcī**, **dēiectus** (dē + iaciō), *tr.*, throw down, deprive.

dēiectiō, ōnis (dēiciō), *f.*, ejection, dispossession.

dēiectus, ūs (dēiciō), *m.*, throwing down, fall.

deinceps, *adv.*, successively, next, thereafter.

deinde (dē + inde), *adv.*, afterwards, next.

dēlābor, **dēlābi**, **dēlāpsus sum** (dē + labor, slip), *intr.*, glide or fall down.

dēlectō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, please, delight.

dēleō, **dēlāre**, **dēlēvi**, **dēlētus**, *tr.*, destroy, wipe out.

dēliciae, ārum, *f. pl.*, delights, pleasures, good things.

***dēligō**, ere, **dēlēgi**, **dēlēctus** (dē + legō, choose), *tr.*, select, choose.

Delphī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, Delphi.

dēmittō, ere, **dēmisi**, **dēmissus** (dē + mittō), *tr.*, send down, let down; sē dēmittere, jump.

***dēmōnstrō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātus** (dē + mōnstrō), *tr.*, point out, show, mention.

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally.

dēns, **dentis**, *m.*, tooth.

dēnsus, a, um, thick, dense.

dēnūntiō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus** (dē + nūntiō), *tr.*, warn.

dēpellō, ere, **dēpuli**, **dēpulsus** (dē + pellō), *tr.*, drive away, dislodge.

dēpendeō, ēre, —, — (dē + pendeō, hang), *intr.*, hang from.

dēplorō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus** (dē + plorō, wail), *tr.*, weep, bewail.

***dēpōnō**, ere, **dēposui**, **dēpositus** (dē + pōnō), *tr.*, put down, put aside, lay down, give up.

dēpopulor, āri, **ātus sum** (dē + populor), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

dēprecātor, ōris (dēprecor, mediate), *m.*, intercessor; **eō dēprecātore**, through his mediation.

***dēscendō**, ere, dēscendi, dēscēsum (dē + scandō, climb), *intr.*, descend.

dēscribō, ere, dēscripsi, dēscriptus (dē + scribō), *tr.*, describe.

dēsērō, serere, dēsēruī, dēsertus (dē + serō, join), *tr.*, forsake, desert.

dēsiliō, silire, dēsiliuī, dēsultum (dē + saliō, leap), *intr.*, leap down.

***dēsistō**, ere, dēstiti, — (dē + sistō), *intr.*, cease, desist from, leave off.

***dēspērō**, āre, āvi, ātus (spēs), *intr.*, give up hope, lose hope, despair.

***dēsum**, deesse, dēfui, dēfuturus (dē + sum), *intr.*, be lacking, fail.

dēsūper, *adv.*, from above.

dētrahō, trahere, dētrāxi, dētrāctus (dē + trahō), *tr.*, draw off, pull down.

***deus**, ī, *m.*, god.

dēvincō, ere, dēvici, dēvictus (dē + vincō), *tr.*, subdue, conquer.

dēvorō, āre, āvi, ātus (dē + vorō, devour), *tr.*, eat, devour.

dēvoeō, ēre, dēvovi, dēvōtus (dē + voveō), *tr.*, vow, devote.

***dexter**, dextra, dextrum, right; **dextra**, ae, *f.*, right hand.

di-. See **dis-**.

Diāna, ae, *f.*, Diana, sister of Apollo and daughter of Jupiter and Latona.

***dicō**, ere, dixi, dictus, *tr.*, say, tell, speak; impose (a fine); plead.

***diēs**, ēi, *m.* and *f.*, day.

differō, differre, distuli, dilatus (dis + ferō), *tr.*, scatter, postpone, put off.

***difficilis**, e (dis + facilis), difficult, hard.

***difficultās**, ātis (difficilis), *f.*, difficulty.

diffidō, ere, diffisus sum (dis + fidō), *intr.*, give up hope, despair.

***dignitās**, ātis (dignus), *f.*, merit, worth, dignity, worthiness.

dignor, āri, ātus sum (dignus), *intr.*, deem worth while, deign.

dignus, a, um, worthy, deserving, fitting.

diligēns, diligentis (diligō, esteem), careful.

***diligenter** (diligō, esteem), *adv.*, carefully, attentively, with care.

***diligentia**, ae (diligō, esteem), *f.*, painstaking, care, carefulness, diligence, industry.

dimētiōr, iri, dimēnsus sum (dis + mētiōr, measure), *tr.*, measure.

dimicō, āre, āvi, ātum, *intr.*, fight, contend.

***dimittō**, ere, dimisi, dimissus (dis + mittō), *tr.*, send off, send away, dismiss, let go.

diripiō, ere, diripui, direptus (dis + rapiō), *tr.*, lay waste, tear away, pillage, ravage.

dīrus, a, um, fearful, direful.

dis-, di-, inseparable neg. prefix, apart, not, un-.

***discēdō**, ere, discessi, discessum (dis + cēdō), *intr.*, go away, depart, withdraw, leave.

discipulus, ī (discō), *m.*, pupil.

discō, ere, didici, —, *tr.*, learn.

- discurrō, ere, dis(cu)currī, discursum** (dis + currō), *intr.*, run in different directions.
- discus, ī, m.**, discus, quoit.
- displicēō, ēre, displicuī, displicitum** (dis + placeō, please), *intr.*, be unsatisfactory to, displease.
- dissimilis, e** (dis + similis), unlike, dissimilar.
- dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātus** (dissimilis), *tr.*, conceal, disguise.
- distineō, ēre, distinuī, distentus** (dis + teneō), *tr.*, keep apart.
- distribuō, ēre, distribuī, distribūtus** (dis + tribuō, assign), *tr.*, distribute, divide.
- diū, adv.**, long, for a long time; *comp.* diūtius; *sup.* diūtissimē.
- dīves, itis**, rich.
- Diviciācus, ī, m.**, a chief of the Haedui.
- dividō, ere, divisi, divīsus, tr.**, divide, separate.
- divīnus, a, um**, godlike, divine.
- divitiae, ārum** (dīves), *f.*, riches.
- *dō, dare, dedi, datus, tr.**, give, put (*especially in compound verbs*); **poenās dare**, suffer punishment.
- *doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus, tr.**, teach, inform, show.
- doleō, ēre, doluī, —, intr.**, feel pain, grieve.
- *dolor, ōris, m.**, grief, distress.
- dolōsē** (dolus, trick), *adv.*, craftily, by trickery.
- domesticus, a, um** (domus), domestic; from their own country.
- dominus, ī, m.**, master (of slaves), lord.
- *domus, ūs or ī, f.**, house, home; **domī**, at home; **domum**, (to) home, homeward.
- dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus** (dōnum), *tr.*, present, give.
- dōnum, ī** (dō), *n.*, gift.
- *dormiō, ire, dormivī or dormiī, dormitum, intr.**, sleep.
- *dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, intr.**, be in doubt, doubt, hesitate.
- dubius, a, um**, doubtful; **sine dubiō**, certainly.
- *ducentī, ae, a** (duo + centum), two hundred.
- *dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, tr.**, lead, bring.
- Duilius, ī, m.**; **Gāius Duilius**, a Roman general, victor over the Carthaginians in a naval battle, 260 B.C.
- dum, conj.**, while, until.
- Dumnorix, igis, m.**, brother of the Haeduan Diviciacus.
- *duo, duae, duo**, two.
- *duodecim, indecl. adj.**, twelve.
- *duodēviginti, indecl. adj.**, eighteen.
- dūrus, a, um**, harsh, hard.
- *dux, ducis** (dūcō), *m.*, guide, leader, general.

E

***ē. See ex.**

ecce, adv., behold! see! lo!

ēdicō, dicere, ēdixī, ēdictus (ex + dicō), *tr.*, proclaim.

ēditus, a, um (ēdō), high, elevated.

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus (ex + dō), *tr.*, give out, give birth to, bear.

edō, edere or ēsse, ēdi, ēsus, tr., eat.

***ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxī, ēductus** (ex + dūcō), *tr.*, lead out, lead.

offerō, offerre, extulī, ēlātus (ex + ferō), *tr.*, carry out.

effugiō, ere, effūgī, — (ex + fugiō), *tr. and intr.*, escape.

effundō, ere, effūdī, effūsus (ex + fundō, pour), *tr.*, pour forth, spread out, overflow.

Ēgeria, ae, f., a nymph reputed to give revelations to Numa.

ēgī. See **agō**.

***ego, meī, pers. pron.**, I.

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum (ex + gradior, go), *intr.*, go out, come forth.

***ēgregius, a, um** (ex + grex, herd), eminent, unusual.

***ēiciō, icere, ēiēcī, ēiectus** (ex + iaciō), *tr.*, throw out.

ēiectiō, ōnis, f., banishment.
eius. See **is**.

elephantus, ī, m., elephant.

ēliciō, ere, elicui, elicitus (ex + laciō, allure), *tr.*, lure forth, bring out, call down.

ēligō, ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus (ex + legō, choose), *tr.*, select, pick out, choose.

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum (ex + migrō, migrate), *intr.*, emigrate, remove.

***enim, conj.**, for.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + nūntiō), *tr.*, announce, reveal.

eō, ire, īi, itum, intr., go.

eō (is), adv., to that place, thither.

***eques, equitis (equus), m.**, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry, cavalrymen.

***equester, equestris, equestre (eques)**, of the cavalry, equestrian.

***equitātus, ūs (eques), m.**, cavalry.

***equus, ī, m.**, horse.

***ēripiō, ere, ēripiui, ēreptus** (ex + rapiō), *tr.*, snatch away, save.

erō, eris, etc. See **sum**.

errō, āre, āvī, ātum, intr., err, wander.

ēruptiō, ōnis (ērumpō, break forth), *f.*, breaking out, sally.

esse. See **sum**.

ēsse. See **edō**.

ēsuriō, ire, —, ēsuritūrus (edō), intr., want to eat, be hungry.

***et, conj.**, and, also, even; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.

***etiam, conj.**, still, also, besides, even.
Eurōpa, ae, f., Europe.

ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum (ex + vādō, go), *intr.*, go out, escape.

ēvānēscō, ere, ēvānuī, —, intr., vanish, disappear.

ēveniō, venīre, ēvēnī, ēventum (ex + veniō), *intr.*, come out, result, turn out.

ēventus, ūs, m., outcome, result.

***ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātus** (ex + vocō), *tr.*, call out, summon.

***ex or ē, prep. w. abl.**, out of, from, out from, of; **ūnā ex parte**, on one side; **ex itinere**, on the march.

exanimātus, a, um (exanimō, slay, exhaust, tire), lifeless.

***excēdō, cēdere, excessī, excessum** (ex + cēdō), *intr.*, go out, depart.

***excipiō, cipere, excēpī, exceptus** (ex + capiō), *tr.*, take, accept, receive.

***exclūdō, clūdere, exclūsī, exclusus** (ex + claudō), *tr.*, shut out.

exclūsio, ōnis, f., a shutting out.

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + cōgitō, think), *tr.*, think out, contrive.

***exemplum, ī, n.**, example, precedent.

exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus (ex + eō), *intr.*, go out, depart, leave.
exercitō, āre, āvi, ātus (exercēō, train), *tr.*, exercise, train.
***exercitus, ūs** (exercēō, train), *m.*, army.
exhibeō, ēre, exhibuī, exhibitus (ex + habeō), *tr.*, furnish.
exiguus, a, um, scanty, slight.
***existimō, āre, āvi, ātus** (ex + aestimō, value, rate), *tr.*, think, suppose, believe.
***exitus, ūs** (exeō), *m.*, a going forth, outcome, departure.
expeditus, a, um (expediō, free), unincumbered, without baggage.
***expellō, ere, expulī, expulsus** (ex + pellō), *tr.*, drive out, drive away, expel.
explōrator, ōris (explōrō), *m.*, scout.
explōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., search, ascertain, reconnoiter.
***expōnō, ere, exposuī, expositus** (ex + pōnō), *tr.*, put forth, set forth, explain, expose, abandon.
expositiō, ōnis (expōnō), *f.*, exposure, abandonment.
***expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus** (ex + pugnō), *tr.*, capture by assault, take by storm, storm.
***expectō, āre, āvi, ātus** (ex + spectō), *tr.*, look, wait for, await, expect, wait to see.
e.stinguō, ere, exstīnxī, exstinctus (ex + stinguō, put out), *tr.*, extinguish, destroy, kill.
***exstruō, struere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus** (ex + struō), *tr.*, pile up, erect.
exsulō, āre, āvi, ātum (exsul, exile), *intr.*, live in exile.

exterus, externa, exterum, outer; *comp.* exterior; *sup.* extrēmus, last, end of.
extrā, prep. w. acc., outside of, beyond.
extrahō, ere, extrāxī, extrāctus (ex + trahō), *tr.*, extricate, release.
extrēmus. See *exterus*.
exuō, uere, exuī, exūtus, tr., draw off.

F

faber, fabri, m., mechanic, workman, artisan.
Fabius, i, m., a clan name; **Q. Fabius Maximus**, consul and originator of the "Fabian policy."
fabricō, āre, āvi, ātus (faber), *tr.*, make, construct, build.
fābula, ae (for, speak), *f.*, story.
***facile** (facilis), *adv.*, easily; *comp.* **facilior**; *sup.* **facillimē**.
***facilis, e** (faciō), easy.
facinus, oris, n., misdeed, crime.
***faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, tr.**, make, do, form, build; **certiōrem facere**, inform; **imperāta facere**, obey the commands; **verba facere**, speak; **proelium facere**, fight a battle.
***factum, i** (faciō), *n.*, thing done, deed, act.
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus, tr., deceive; **spem sē fefellisse**, hope had tricked them.
falx, falcis, f., hook, scythe.
***fāma, ae** (for, speak), *f.*, reputation, report.
famēs, is, f., hunger.
familia, ae (famulus, slave), *f.*, household, vassals; clan, race.

***familiāris**, e, of the household, familiar, intimate; *as subst.*, friend.

fāstus, a, um (fās, right), legal, court-.

fātum, i (for, speak) *n.*, fate, lot.

Faustulus, i, *m.*, the shepherd who brought up Romulus and Remus.

fefelli. See **fallō**.

fēmina, ae, *f.*, woman.

ferāx, ferācis (ferō) fertile, productive.

ferē, *adv.*, nearly, about, almost.

fēriae, ārum, *f. pl.*, festivals, holidays.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; **lēgem ferre**, propose, institute a law.

ferreus, a, um (ferrum, iron), (of) iron; **manūs ferreae**, grappling irons.

fertilis, e (ferō), fruitful, fertile.

fertilitās, ātis (fertilis), *f.*, fertility.

ferus, a, um, fierce, wild, barbarous.

fessus, a, um, wearied, tired.

fidēlitās, ātis (fidēlis, faithful), *f.*, fidelity.

***fidēs**, eī (fidō), *f.*, faith, confidence, trust, good faith, protection, pledge; **in fidem venīre**, put one's self under the protection of.

Fidō, ōnis, *f.*, Fido, name of a dog.

fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, *intr.*, trust, rely on.

fīdus, a, um, faithful, loyal.

Figulus, i, *m.*, a Roman family name.

figūra, ae, *f.*, form, appearance.

***filia**, ae, *f.*, daughter.

***filius**, i, *m.*, son.

finiō, ire, finīvi or finīi, finītus (finis), *tr.*, finish.

***finis**, is, *m.*, limit, end, boundary; *pl.*, territory, country.

***finitimus**, a, um (finis), adjoining, neighboring; *as subst.*, finitimus, i, *m.*, neighbor.

fiō, fieri, factus sum (*used as passive of faciō*), be made, become; **certior fieri**, be informed.

fiscus, i, *m.*, treasury (of the state).

flāmen, flāminis, *m.*, Flamen, a priest devoted to the worship of one special god.

Flāminius, i, *m.*; **C. Flāminius**, a consul 223, 217 B.C.

flamma, ae, *f.*, flame, fire.

flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower.

fluctus, ūs (fluō), *m.*, flood, wave.

***flūmen**, flūminis (fluō), *n.*, river.

fluō, ere, flūxī, —, *intr.*, flow.

foculus, i (*dim. of focus*, hearth), *m.*, fire pan, brazier.

fōns, fontis, *m.*, fountain, spring.

fore = futūrum esse.

foret = esset.

fōrma, ae, *f.*, (beautiful) shape, form.

fōrmōsus, a, um (fōrma), beautiful, shapely.

fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; **forte**, by chance; **forte erat effūsus**, happened to have overflowed.

***fortis**, e, brave.

***fortiter** (fortis), *adv.*, bravely.

***fortūna**, ae (fors), *f.*, fortune, good fortune, wealth.

fortūnātus, a, um, prosperous, lucky.

forum, i, *n.*, market place, forum.

fossa, ae (fodiō, dig), *f.*, ditch, trench.

fragor, ōris (frangō), *m.*, crash, noise.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, *tr.*, break; subdue, tire out.

***frāter, frātris, m.**, brother.
fraus, fraudis, f., trick, fraud.
fremitus, ūs, m., roaring, loud noise.
frequēns, frequentis, frequent, numerous.
frōns, frondis, f., leaf, foliage.
frōns, frontis, f., forehead, brow.
***frūmentārius, a, um (frūmentum)**, of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies of grain, provisions.
***frūmentum, i (fuor)**, *n.*, grain; *in pl.*, growing grain.
fuor, fruī, fructus sum, intr., w. abl., enjoy.
frūstrā, adv., in vain.
frūx, frūgis, f., fruit, produce.
***fuga, ae, f.**, flight; *in fugam dare*, put to flight.
fugiō, ere, fūgī, —, intr., flee, run away.
fugō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., rout, drive.
fulmen, inis (fulgeō, flash), n., lightning, thunderbolt.
Fulvius, i, m., a Roman clan name; **Cn. Fulvius**, consul 211 B.C.
fūmus, i, m., smoke.
fūnāle, is (fūnis), n., torch.
funditor, ōris (funda, sling), m., slinger.
fūnis, is, m., rope, line.
fūr, is, m. and f., sneak thief.
furor, ōris (furō, rage), m., rage, madness.
fūrtum, i (fūr), n., sneak thievery, theft.
futūrus. See sum.

G

Galba, ae, m.: (1) a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) a king of the Suessiones.

galea, ae, f., helmet.
Gallia, ae, f., Gaul.
Gallus, a, um, Gallic; as subst., **Gallus, i, m.**, a Gaul.
gallus, i, m., cock, rooster.
Garumna, ae, m., a river of Gaul, modern Garonne.
gaudium, i, m., joy.
Gaurus, i, m., a mountain of Campania.
geminus, a, um, twin, two-headed; as subst., **geminī, ōrum, m. pl.**, twins.
gemma, ae, f., bud, gem, jewel.
Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, modern Geneva.
gēns, gentis (gignō, bear), f., clan, tribe, nation, race.
***genus, generis (gēns), n.**, race, kind, class, species.
Germānus, i, m., a German.
***gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, tr.**, bear, carry, carry on, wage, accomplish; *pass.*, go on, take place; **mātrēm sē gessit**, bore herself, or acted like, a mother.
gigās, gigantis, m., a giant.
gladius, i, m., sword.
glāns, glandis, f., acorn, nut.
glōria, ae, f., glory, fame, renown.
Gorgō (Gorgon), onis, f., a Gorgon; one of three sisters, with snaky hair and terrifying aspect, which turned the beholder to stone.
Gracchus, i, m., a family name.
gracilis, e, slender.
Graecia, ae, f., Greece.
Graecus, i, m., a Greek.
Grāiae, ārum, f. pl., the Graiae, watchers for the Gorgons.

grātia, ae (grātus), *f.*, favor, influence; kindness; **grātiās agere**, express one's thanks; **grātiā**, *w. gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of. **grātulor**, āri, ātus sum (grātus), *intr.*, congratulate.
grātus, a, um, pleasing, acceptable, agreeable.
***gravis**, e, heavy, hard, serious, severe.
***graviter** (gravis), *adv.*, heavily, weightily, seriously, severely.
gurgēs, gurgitis, *m.*, whirlpool.

H

habēna, ae (habeo), *f.*, rein, bridle.
***habeo**, ēre, habui, habitus, *tr.*, have, hold; consider; consult (*auspicia*).
habitō, āre, āvi, ātus, *intr.*, dwell, live, inhabit.
Haedus, ī, *m.*, a Haeduan.
haereō, haerere, haesi, haesum, *intr.*, cling to, stick.
Hannibal, alis, *m.*: (1) a Carthaginian commander defeated by Duilius; (2) a Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar, 247-183 B.C., defeated by Scipio at Zama, 202 B.C.
Hannō, ōnis, *m.*, name of two Carthaginian generals of the Second Punic War.
Hasdrubal, alis, *m.*, name of two Carthaginian leaders of the Second Punic War.
hasta, ae, *f.*, spear.
haud, *adv.*, not.
Helvētius, a, um, Helvetian; *as subst.*, Helvētī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, Helvetians.
hiberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters.
hic, *adv.*, here, in this place.

***hic**, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this; the latter; he, she, it.
hiemō, āre, āvi, ātum (hiems), *intr.*, winter, pass the winter.
***hiems**, hiemis, *f.*, winter.
hinc (hic), *adv.*, hence; hinc . . . hinc, in one place . . . in another, here . . . there.
Hispani, ōrum, *m. pl.*, Spaniards.
Hispania, ae, *f.*, Spain.
Histri, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the people of Histria, a district at the north-eastern end of the Adriatic Sea.
hodiē (hic + diēs), *adv.*, to-day.
***homō**, hominis, *m. and f.*, man, human being.
honor, ōris, *m.*, honor.
hōra, ae, *f.*, hour.
horribilis, e, horrible, awful.
hortor, āri, ātus sum, *tr.*, urge, encourage.
hortus, ī, *m.*, garden.
hospes, hospitīs, *m. and f.*, guest, stranger, host.
hospitium, ī (hospes), *n.*, hospitality, refuge.
hostilis, e (hostis), unfriendly, hostile; *as subst.*, hostilia, *n. pl.*, hostilities.
Hostilius, ī, *m.*, the name of a Roman clan; **Hostus Hostilius**, a general in the time of Romulus; **Tullus Hostilius**, third king of Rome.
***hostis**, is, *m.*, enemy (of the state).
Hostus. See **Hostilius**.
hūc (hic), *adv.*, hither, to this place.
humilis, e (humus), low.
humus, ī, *f.*, ground; **humī**, on the ground.

I

iaceō, ēre, iacui, iacitum, intr., lie (down), lie dead.

***iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus, tr.,** throw, hurl; construct (*aggerem*).

iactiō, āre, —, — (iactō, boast), intr., boast, brag.

***iam, adv.,** by this time, now, already, soon; **iamdūdum,** for some time (already).

Iāniculum, i, m., one of the hills of Rome, west of the Tiber.

Iānuārius, i (Iānus), m., January.

Iānus, i, m., Janus, an old Latin divinity, represented with two faces.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

ibidem (ibi + dem), adv., in the same place.

Iccius, i, m., one of the Remi.

ictus, ūs (icō, strike), m., blow.

***idem, eadem, idem (is + dem), dem. pron. and adj.,** the same.

identidem, adv., again and again.

***idōneus, a, um,** suitable, fit.

Idūs, Iduum, f. pl., the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October, 13th of the other months).

igitur, conj., therefore, thereupon, then.

ignāvus, a, um, lazy, inactive.

ignis, is, m., fire.

ignōminia, ae, f., dishonor, disgrace.

***ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātus (ignārus, ignorant), tr.,** be ignorant of, be unaware of.

ignōtus, a, um, unknown.

***ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. and adj.,** that; he, she, it; the former.

illūc (ille), adv., to that place, thither.

imāgō, inis, f., likeness, semblance.

imbellis, e (in neg. + bellum), unwarlike, cowardly.

imbuō, ere, imbui, imbūtus, tr., wet, tinge; inspire.

imitor, āri, ātus sum, tr., imitate.

immineō, ēre, imminui, —, intr., overhang.

immittō, ere, immisi, immissus (in + mittō), tr., send into, let into, hurl.

***immortālis, e (in neg. + mortālis, mortal),** without death, immortal, undying.

impatiēns, impatientis (in neg. + patior), impatient.

impatienter, adv., impatiently.

impatientia, ae (impatiēns), f., impatience.

***impedimentum, i (impediō), n.,** hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

***impediō, ire, impedivī, impeditus (in + pēs), tr.,** entangle, hinder, impede.

***impellō, ere, impulī, impulsus (in + pellō), tr.,** drive on, urge, impel, incite, excite.

impendeō, ēre, —, — (in + pendeō, hang), intr., overhang.

***imperātor, ōris (imperō), m.,** commander, commander in chief, general.

imperātum, i (imperō), n., order, command.

***imperium, i (imperō), n.,** order, command, power, government, rule; *nova imperia*, revolution.

***imperō, āre, āvī, ātum (in + parō), intr., w. dat.,** command, order, rule.

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., obtain (by asking), secure, gain.

impetus, ūs (impetō, attack), m., assault, attack, onset.

impius, a, um (in neg. + pius, reverent), wicked, impious.

impōnō, ere, imposuī, impositus (in + pōnō), tr., place in, place on or upon.

improbis, a, um, bad, dishonorable.

imprōvisus, a, um (in neg. + prōvisus, foreseen), sudden; **dē imprōvisō,** unexpectedly, suddenly.

imū. See **inferus**.

in-, negative inseparable prefix, un-, not.

***in, prep. w. acc. and abl.; w. acc.,** to, into, against, toward, forward; **w. abl.,** in, on, upon, among, over.

incautē (in neg. + cautus, careful), adv., without caution, carelessly.

***incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus (in + candeō, glow), tr.,** light, set on fire, set fire to, burn.

incidō, ere, incidi, — (in + cadō), intr., occur; **tr.,** meet, fall into.

***incipiō, cipere, —, — (in + capiō),** tr., begin, undertake (**coēpi** used for perfect tenses).

incitō, āre, āvī, ātus (in + citō, move swiftly), tr., urge on, incite, encourage, arouse, rouse.

inclinō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr. and intr., bend, incline, yield.

inclūdō, clūdēre, inclūsī, inclūsus (in + claudō), tr., shut in.

inclutus, a, um, famous, renowned.

incola, ae (incolō), m. and f., inhabitant.

incolō, ere, incoluī, —, tr., dwell in, live in.

***incolumis, e, unharmed, safe.**

incrēdibilis, e (in neg. + crēdibilis, believable), incredible.

increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus (increpō), tr., exclaim, upbraid, taunt.

increpō, āre, increpuī, increpitus, tr., sound, scold, exclaim.

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., accuse, blame.

inde, adv., thence, thereupon, then.

index, indicis, m., sign, mark.

indiciū, ī (indicō), n., information; **per indicium,** by informers.

indicō, āre, āvī, ātus (index), tr., announce, reveal.

indicō, ere, indixī, indictus (in + dicō), tr., proclaim, announce, appoint, declare.

***indūcō, dūcere, indūxī, inductus (in + dūcō), tr.,** lead in, lead against; induce.

induō, ere, induī, indūtus, tr., put on.

Indus, ī, m., native of India.

indūtia, ārum, f. pl., armistice.

ineō, ire, inīvi or inīi, initum (in + eō), tr., go into.

infāns, infantis, m. and f., infant.

infēlix, infēlicis (in neg. + fēlix, happy), unhappy, ill-fated.

inferior. See **inferus**.

inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus (in + ferō), tr., carry in, bring in; **bellum inferre,** make war on; **sē inferre,** betake one's self; **signa inferre,** charge.

inferus, a, um, below; comp. infe-
rior, lower, inferior; sup. infimus

- or **imus**, lowest, bottom of, foot of, at the foot of.
- infestō, āre, āvī, ātus** (*infestus*), *tr.*, annoy.
- infestus, a, um**, hostile.
- inficiō, ere, infēcī, infectus** (in + **faciō**), *tr.*, stain.
- infidēlis, e** (in *neg.* + **fidēlis**, faithful), faithless.
- infirmus**. See **inferus**.
- infinītus, a, um** (in *neg.* + **finiō**), endless, unlimited.
- infiuō, ere, infūxī, influxum** (in + **fluō**), *intr.*, flow into, empty into.
- ingēns, ingentis**, huge, vast, mighty, great.
- ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum** (in + **gradior**, go), *intr.*, go into, enter.
- iniciō, ere, iniēcī, iniectus** (in + **iaciō**), *tr.*, throw in or into, put in.
- *inimicus, a, um** (in *neg.* + **amicus**), hostile; *as subst.*, enemy.
- *iniquus, a, um** (in *neg.* + **aequus**), uneven, unjust, unfavorable, disadvantageous.
- initium, ī** (**ineō**), *n.*, beginning.
- *iniūria, ae, f.**, wrong, injury, violence.
- *inopia, ae** (**inops**, without means), *f.*, want, need, lack.
- inquam, def.**, say; **inquit**, said he.
- inrideō, ēre, inrisī, inrisus** (in + **rideō**, *tr.*, laugh at, jeer, ridicule).
- insānus, a, um** (in *neg.* + **sānus**, sound), mad.
- inscius, a, um** (in *neg.* + **sciō**), unaware.
- insequor, insequi, insecūtus sum** (in + **sequor**), *tr.*, follow, pursue.
- insideō, ēre, insēdi, inessus** (in + **sedeō**), *tr.*, occupy.
- insidia, ārum** (**insideō**), *f. pl.*, ambush, treachery, plot.
- insidior, āri, ātus sum** (**insidia**), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, lie in wait for, ambush.
- insignis, e** (**signum**), remarkable, distinguished.
- insiliō, ire, insilui, insultus** (in + **saliō**, leap), *tr.*, leap on.
- inspiciō, spicere, inspēxī, inspectus** (in + **speciō**, look at), *tr.*, look into.
- instar, n. indecl.**, likeness; **instar mūri**, like a wall.
- instituō, ere, institui, institūtus** (in + **statuō**), *tr.*, form, establish.
- nstitūtum, ī** (**instituō**), *n.*, purpose, custom, institution.
- *instruō, ere, instrūxī, instructus** (in + **struō**), *tr.*, arrange, draw up, form.
- *insula, ae, f.**, island.
- insum, inesse, infui, infutūrus** (in + **sum**), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be in, be among.
- *integer, gra, grum**, whole, unimpaired, fresh.
- intellegō, ere, intellēxī, intellēctus** (inter + **legō**), *tr.*, learn, perceive, know.
- intempestus, a, um** (in *neg.* + **tempus**), out of season, stormy.
- *inter, prep. w. acc.**, between, among, during; **dare inter sē**, exchange; **cohortātī inter sē**, encouraging one another.
- intercēdō, ere, intercessī, intercessum** (inter + **cēdō**), *intr.*, go between, intervene.

***intercipiō**, **cipere**, **intercēpi**, **interceptus** (inter + capiō), *tr.*, intercept, cut off.

***interclūdō**, **clūdere**, **interclūsi**, **interclūsus** (inter + claudō), *tr.*, shut off, cut off, stop.

interea (inter + is), *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile.

***interficiō**, **ere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectus** (inter + faciō), *tr.*, kill.

***interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile.

interior, **interius** (inter), inner, interior of; *sup.* **intimus**.

***intermittō**, **mittere**, **intermisi**, **intermissus** (inter + mittō), *tr.*, interrupt, discontinue.

interrogō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (inter + rogō), *tr.*, ask, question.

interscindō, **ere**, **interscidi**, **inter-scissus** (inter + scindō), *tr.*, cut down, destroy.

intersum, **interesse**, **interfui**, **interfuturus** (inter + sum), *intr.*, be among, be present.

intimus. See **interior**.

intrā (inter), *prep. w. acc.*, in, during.

intrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, enter.

intrōdūcō, **ere**, **intrōdūxi**, **intrōductus** (intrō, within + dūcō), *tr.*, lead in.

intrōrsus (intrō, within + versus, turned), *adv.*, inside, within.

intuli. See **inferō**.

inūtilis, **e** (in neg. + ūtilis), useless.

invādō, **vādere**, **invāsi**, **invāsus** (in + vādō, go), *tr.*, enter, attack; seize.

***inveniō**, **ire**, **invēni**, **inventus** (in + veniō), *tr. and intr.*, come upon, find.

inveterāscō, **ere**, **inveterāvi**, — (in + veterāscō, grow old), *intr.*, become established.

invictus, **a**, **um** (in neg. + vincō), unconquered, unconquerable.

***invidēō**, **vidēre**, **invidī**, **invisus** (in + videō), *intr.*, look askance at, envy.

invitus, **a**, **um**, unwilling.

invius, **a**, **um** (in neg. + via), impassable.

Iovi. See **Iuppiter**.

***ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *determ. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; the very; even.

ira, **ae**, **f.**, wrath, anger, rage.

irātus, **a**, **um** (irāscor, be angry), angered, in anger.

irruō, **ere**, **irruī**, — (in + ruō, rush), *intr.*, rush in.

***is**, **ea**, **id**, *determ. pron. and adj.*, he, she, it; this, that; **is quī**, he (one, a man, the man) who.

iste, **ista**, **istud**, *determ. pron. and adj.*, that (of yours), your.

ita (is), *adv.*, thus, so.

Italia, **ae**, **f.**, Italy.

itaque (is), *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore.

item (is), *adv.*, likewise, also.

***iter**, **itineris** (eō), *n.*, journey, march; road, way, right of way; **iter facere**, march; **ex itinere**, on the march; **magnum iter**, forced march.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.

itum, **itūrus**. See **eō**.

***iubeō**, **ēre**, **iussi**, **iussus**, *tr., w. inf.*, order, bid, command.

***iūdex**, **dicis** (iūs + dicō), *m.*, juror.

***iūdicium**, **i** (iūdex), *n.*, judgment, trial.

iūdicō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (iūdex), *tr.*, judge.

iugum, *i* (*iungō*), *n.*, yoke; sub
iugum mittere, send under the
yoke (*in token of complete surrender*;
the yoke consisted of two spears set
in the ground, and a third laid
across them).

iumentum, *i* (*iungō*), *n.*, pack animal.
iungō, *ere*, **iūnxī**, **iunctus**, *tr.*, join,
fasten together.

iūnior, *comp.* of **iuvenis**.

Iuppiter, **Iovis**, *m.*, Jupiter, chief of
the Roman gods.

Iūra, *ae*, *f.*, the Jura Mountains,
reaching from the Rhine to the
Rhône.

***iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, justice, right, law.

iūsiurandum, **iūrisiurandī** (**iūs** +
iūrō, swear), *n.*, oath.

iussus, **ūs** (**iubeō**), *m.*, order.

iūstitia, *ae* (**iūstus**, just), *f.*, justice,
uprightness.

iuvenis, *e*, young; *comp.* **iūnior**; *as*
subst., **iuvenis**, *is*, *m.*, young man.

iuvō, **āre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, *tr.*, help, aid.

L

L. = **Lūcius**.

Labienus, *i*, *m.*, one of Caesar's
lieutenants.

labor, **ōris**, *m.*, labor, work, trouble.

***labōrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **āturus** (**labor**), *intr.*,
work, toil, suffer, be hard pressed.

lac, **lactis**, *n.*, milk.

laccessō, *ere*, **laccessivī**, **laccessitus**, *tr.*,
attack, harass.

lacrima, *ae*, *f.*, tear.

lacus, **ūs**, *m.*, lake.

laetitia, *ae*, *f.*, gladness, rejoicing, joy,
delight.

laetus, *a*, *um*, glad.

Laevinus, *i*, *m.*, a Roman family name;
M. Valerius Laevinus, consul
210 B.C.

laevus, *a*, *um*, left.

languidus, *a*, *um*, weak, feeble,
weary.

lapis, **lapidis**, *m.*, stone.

largitiō, **ōnis** (**largior**, lavish), *f.*,
liberality; bribery.

Lārisa, *ae*, *f.*, name of a city in
Thessaly (Greece).

lateō, **ēre**, **latuī**, —, *intr.*, be con-
cealed, lie hid.

Latinus, *a*, *um*, Latin.

lātitudō, **inis** (**lātus**), *f.*, width,
breadth.

Latobrigi, **ōrum**, *m. pl.*, a Gallic
tribe near the Helvetii.

lātrātus, **ūs** (**lātrō**, bark), *m.*, barking.

latrō, **ōnis**, *m.*, robber, brigand.

latrōcinor, **ārī**, **ātus sum** (**latrō**), *tr.*,
rob, plunder (*w. dat.*).

lātus, *a*, *um*, broad, wide.

lātus. *See ferō*.

latus, **lateris**, *n.*, side, flank.

laudō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus** (**laus**), *tr.*,
praise, commend.

***laus**, **laudis**, *f.*, praise.

lavō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *tr.*, wash, bathe.

lectus, *i*, *m.*, couch, bed.

lēgatiō, **ōnis** (**lēgō**, commission), *f.*,
embassy, deputation.

lēgātus, *i* (**lēgō**, commission), *m.*,
ambassador, envoy; lieutenant.

legiō, **ōnis** (**legō**), *f.*, legion.

***legō**, *ere*, **lēgī**, **lēctus**, *tr.*, choose,
pick, gather; read.

Lemannus, *i*, *m.*; **Lacus Lemannus**,
Lake of Geneva.

lēniō, *ire*, **lēnivī**, **lēnitus**, *tr.*, soften.

lēnis, e, smooth, gentle.
 lēnitās, ātis (lēnis), f., gentleness.
 *levis, e, light (in weight).
 levitās, ātis (levis), f., lightness, fickleness.
 *lēx, lēgis (legō), f., law; lēgem ferre, propose, establish a law.
 libenter, adv., willingly, gladly.
 *liber, librī, m., book.
 *liber, libera, liberum, free; as subst., librī, ōrum, m. pl., children.
 *liberō, āre, āvi, ātus (liber), tr., liberate, free, set free.
 *libertās, ātis (liber), f., freedom, liberty.
 libra, ae, f., pound.
 libum, i, n., cake.
 *licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is lawful, it is allowed, it is permitted.
 ligneus, a, um (lignum, wood), wooden.
 Ligurēs, um, m. pl., the people of Liguria.
 limen, inis, n., threshold, doorway.
 lineamentum, i (linea, line), m., feature.
 *lingua, ae, f., tongue, language.
 littera, ae (linō, smear), f., letter (of the alphabet); pl., letters (epistles), documents.
 litus, litoris, n., shore (of the sea).
 Livius, i, m., a Roman clan name.
 locātiō, ōnis (locō), f., leasing.
 *locō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., put, place, set.
 *locus, i, m.; pl., loci and loca; place, position.
 Londinium, i, n., London.
 *longē (longus), adv., far, by far, far off.
 *longus, a, um, long, distant.

lucerna, ae, f., lantern, lamp.
 Lūcius, i, m., a Roman name.
 Lucrētia, ae, f., a Roman name.
 lūcus, i, m., grove.
 lūdibrium, i (lūdus), n., jest, mockery.
 lūdicer, lūdica, lūdicrum (lūdus), sportive, playful.
 lūdus, i, m., play, sport, game.
 lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxi, lūctus, tr., bewail, mourn.
 lūmen, inis, n., light, eye.
 lūna, ae, f., moon.
 lupa, ae, f., she-wolf.
 lupus, i, m., wolf.
 lūstrō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., purify; review, inspect.
 *lux, lūcis, f., light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak.
 lūxuria, ae, f., excess, luxury.

M

M. = Mārcus. [Greece.
 Macedonia, ae, f., a country north of
 mächina, ae, f., engine, contrivance.
 magicus, a, um, magic.
 magis (*comp. of multum*), adv., more, rather.
 magister, magistrī, m., master, teacher.
 magistrātus, ūs (magister), m., magistrate, officer.
 magnificus, a, um (magnus + faciō), rich, splendid.
 *magnitūdō, inis (magnus), f., size, greatness, importance.
 *magnopere (magnus + opus), adv., greatly, very greatly.
 *magnus, a, um, large, great; comp. maior; sup. maximus; maior nātū, older; maximus nātū, oldest.

Māgō, ōnis, m., Mago, brother of Hannibal.

maior. See **magnus**.

maie (malus), adv., badly; *comp.* **peius**; *sup.* **pessimē**.

mālō, mälle, mālui, — (magis + i. volō), tr. and intr., be more willing, prefer.

malum, i, n., evil, misfortune.

malus, a, um, bad, evil, wicked; *comp.* **peior**; *sup.* **pessimus**.

Māmurius, i, m., a Roman smith in the time of Numa.

mandātum, i (mandō), n., order, command; commission, trust.

mandō, āre, āvi, ātus (manus + dō), tr., put into one's hands, commit, intrust; order, command.

mane, adv., early, in the morning.

***maneo, ēre, manēsi, mānsūrus, intr.,** remain, stay.

Mānēs, ium, m. pl., the Manes, the spirits of the dead.

Mānlius, i, m.; Titus Mānlius Torquātus, consul 343 B.C.; also another in 235 B.C.

mānsuētūdō, inis (mānsuētus, tame), f., mildness, clemency.

manūmittō, ere, manūmisi, manūmissus (manus + mittō), tr., liberate, free.

***manus, ūs, f.,** hand; handful, group, force, band (of men, troops); **manūs ferreae,** grappling irons.

Mārcellus, i, m.; M. Claudius Mārcellus, a Roman general, captor of Syracuse.

Mārcus, i, m., a Roman name.

***mare, maris, n.,** sea; **marī,** by sea.

marinus, a, um (mare), of the sea.

maritimus, a, um (mare), of the sea, maritime.

Mārs, Martis, m., Mars, the Roman god of war.

Masinissa, ae, m., a king of Numidia.

***māter, mātris, f.,** mother; **mātrēm sē gessit,** bore herself, or acted like, a mother.

mātrimōnium, i (māter), n., marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry.

mātūrē, adv., early.

mātūrō, āre, āvi, ātum, intr., hasten, hurry.

mātūrus, a, um, ripe.

maximē (maximus), adv., very greatly, especially.

maximus. See **magnus**.

Maximus, i, m., a Roman cognomen. See **Fabius, Valerius**.

mē, mei. See **ego**.

medium, i (medius), n., middle, midst.

***medius, a, um,** middle, middle of; **per mediōs cūstōdēs,** through the midst of the guards; **quem medium,** the middle of which.

Medūsa, ae, f., name of one of the Gorgons.

melior, comp. of bonus.

inelius. See **bene**.

***inēoria, ae, f.,** memory.

***mēns, mentis, f.,** mind.

mēnsa, ae, f., table.

mēnsis, is, m., month.

mentīō, ōnis, f., mention.

mercātor, ōris (mercor, trade), m., trader (by sea), merchant.

Mercurius, i, m., Mercury, god of

- trade, and messenger of the gods.
- mereō, merēre, meruī, meritus, tr.,** earn, deserve; **meritus, a, um,** earned, deserved, fitting.
- mergō, ere, mersi, mersus, tr.,** dip, sink.
- metus, ūs, m.,** fear, terror.
- *meus, a, um, poss. adj.,** my, mine.
- mihi.** *See ego.*
- *miles, militis, m.,** soldier.
- *militāris, e (miles),** military.
- *mille, indecl. adj. and noun,** thousand; *pl. millia, always noun*; **mille passūs, mille passuum, a** Roman mile.
- milliārium, ī, n.,** milestone, mile.
- Minerva, ae, f.,** goddess of wisdom.
- minimē (minimus).** *See parum.*
- minimus, a, um (used as sup. of parvus),** smallest, least.
- minor, minus (see parvus),** smaller, less; **minor nātū,** younger.
- Minucius, ī, m.,** a clan name; **M. Minucius Rūfus,** a Roman officer with Fabius.
- minus (used as comp. of parum), adv.,** less; **nihilō minus,** nevertheless; **sī minus,** if not.
- mirābilis, e (mīror, wonder),** wonderful.
- mirāculum, ī (mīror, wonder), n.,** wonder, prodigy.
- mīrus, a, um,** wonderful, surprising.
- miser, misera, miserum,** wretched, poor, pitiable.
- miserē (miser), adv.,** wretchedly, vehemently.
- mītēscō, ere, —, — (mītis, mild), intr.,** grow soft, become mild.
- mītīgō, āre, āvi, ātus (mītis, mild + agō), tr.,** soften, civilize.
- *mittō, ere, misi, missus, tr.,** send, hurl.
- mōbilitās, ātis (mōbilis, movable), f.,** fickleness.
- modius, ī, m.,** a Roman dry measure, a peck.
- modo, adv.,** only; **modo . . . modo,** now . . . now.
- *modus, ī, m.,** way, manner.
- moenia, moenium, n. pl.,** walls, fortifications.
- *moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus, tr.,** warn, advise.
- monitus, ūs (moneō), m.,** warning, counsel, suggestion.
- *mōns, montis, m.,** mountain.
- mōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr.,** show, point out.
- mōnstrum, ī, n.,** monster.
- mora, ae, f.,** delay.
- morbus, ī, m.,** sickness, illness; **morbō exstinctus,** died a natural death.
- morior, mori, mortuus sum, intr.,** die.
- moror, āri, ātus sum (mora), intr.,** delay, hinder.
- *mors, mortis, f.,** death.
- mortuus, a, um (morior),** dead.
- mōs, mōris, m.,** custom, habit.
- *moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, tr.,** move, influence; **castra movēre,** break up camp.
- mox, adv.,** soon.
- Mūcius, ī, m.,** the name of a Roman clan; **Gāius Mūcius Scaevola,** a Roman who attempted to kill Porsena.
- Mūcius, a, um (Mūcius),** Mucian.

mulceō, ēre, mulsi, mulsus, tr., quiet, soothe.
mulier, mulieris, f., woman, wife.
multa, ae, f., fine, penalty.
***multitūdō, inis (multus), f.,** numbers, multitude.
multō (abl. of multus), adv., much; **haud ita multō post,** not so long afterwards.
***multum (multus), adv.,** much, greatly.
***multus, a, um, much; pl., many;** **multā nocte,** late at night; **ad multam noctem,** till late at night.
Mūnātius, i, m.; Lūcius Mūnātius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
mūnimentum, i (mūniō), n., defense, fortification.
***mūniō, ēre, mūnīvi or mūnīi, mūnītus, tr.,** fortify, defend.
mūnitio, ōnis (mūniō), f., fortification.
mūnus, eris, n., gift, reward.
mūrus, i, m., wall.
mūs, mūris, m. and f., mouse.

N

nactus. See nanciscor.

***nam, conj.,** for.

namque, conj., for.

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain.

nārrō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., tell.

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, intr., be born, be produced; rise; **nātus, a, um, aged.**

nātiō, ōnis (nāscor), f., nation, tribe, people.

natō, āre, āvi, ātum (nō, swim), intr., swim.

nātū (nāscor), in (by) age; maior nātū, older; minor nātū, younger.

***nātūra, ae (nāscor), f.,** nature, character.

naufragium, i, n., shipwreck.

nausea, ae, f., seasickness.

nauta, ae (nāvis), m., sailor.

nāvālis, ē (nāvis), of ships, naval.

nāvigātiō, ōnis (nāvigō), f., sailing.

***nāvigium, i, n.,** boat, ship.

***nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātum (nāvis + agō), intr.,** sail.

***nāvis, is, f.,** ship.

***ne, enclitic, sign of a certain type of question.**

nē, conj., not, so that not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that; **nē . . . quidem,** not . . . even.

***nec. See neque.**

***nec . . . nec,** neither . . . nor.

***necessārius, a, um, necessary, urgent, indispensable.**

necō, āre, āvi, ātus (nex), tr., kill, put to death.

nefastus, a, um (nefas, crime), unhallowed; unpropitious; **diēs nefastus,** a day on which public business could not be transacted.

negō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr. and intr., deny, say . . . not.

***negōtium, i, n.,** business, affair, trouble; **quicquam negōti,** any trouble.

nēmō, nēminem (nē + homō), m. and f., no one, nobody.

nemus, nemoris, n., grove.

nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson, descendant.

- Neptūnus**, *i, m.*, Neptune, god of the sea.
- *neque, nec**, *conj.*, and not, but not; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.
- Nerō, ōnis**, *m.*, Nero. **Appius Claudius Nerō**, consul 207 B.C.
- Nerviī, ōrum**, *m. pl.*, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- neuter, neutra, neutrum** (**nē + uter**), neither (of two).
- nex, necis**, *f.*, murder, death (by violence).
- nīdus, ī**, *m.*, nest.
- niger, nigra, nigrum**, black.
- nihil, indecl. n.**, nothing.
- nihilō, adv.**, in no respect; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless.
- nisi (nē + sī)**, *conj.*, if not, unless, except.
- nītor, nīti, nīsus sum**, *intr.*, struggle, strive.
- *nōbilis, e (nōscō, know)**, well-known, famous, noble.
- nōbilitās, ātis (nōbilis)**, *f.*, nobility, nobles.
- *noceō, ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus**, *intr.*, *w. dat.*, hurt, injure, harm.
- noctū (nox)**, *adv.*, at night.
- nocturnus, a, um (nox)**, by night, in the night.
- Nōla**, *ae, f.*, Nola, a city in Campania.
- nōlo, nolle, nōluī**, — (**nē + ī. volō**), *tr. and intr.*, not to wish, be unwilling; **nōli or nōlite**, *w. inf.*, do not.
- *nōmen, nōminis (nōscō, know)**, *n.*, name.
- nōminō, āre, āvī, ātus (nōmen)**, *tr.*, name, call.
- *nōn, adv.**, not; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.
- nōndum, adv.**, not yet.
- nōnnūllī, ae, a (nōn + nūllus)**, *pl.*, some, several.
- nōnnumquam (nōn + numquam)**, *adv.*, at times, sometimes.
- *nōnus, a, um (novem)**, ninth.
- Nōrēia, ae, f.**, a town of the Norici, modern Neumarkt.
- Nōricus, a, um**, Norican; **ager Nōricus**, Noricum, a country between the Danube and the Alps.
- nōs, nostrum**, *pers. pron.*, we, ourselves.
- *noster, nostra, nostrum (nōs)**, *poss. adj.*, our, ours; *m. pl.*, **nostrī, ōrum**, our men, our soldiers.
- *nōtus, a, um (nōscō, know)**, known, noted.
- *novem, indecl. adj.**, nine.
- Noviodūnum, ī, n.**, a town of the Suessiones.
- *novus, a, um**, new; **novissimum**, last; **novissimum agmen**, the rear, rear guard.
- *nox, noctis, f.**, night; **multā nocte**, late at night; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night.
- nūdō, āre, āvī, ātus (nūdus, bare)**, *tr.*, make bare, clear.
- nūllus, a, um (nē + ūllus)**, no, not any, none, no one.
- num, interrog. particle**, implying the answer "no."
- Numa, ae, m.** See **Pompilius**.
- nūmen, inis, n.**, divinity, power.
- *numerus, ī, m.**, number.
- Numida, ae, m.**, a Numidian.
- Numidia, ae, f.**, Numidia.

Numitor, *ōris*, *m.*, king of Alba Longa, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

nummus, *i*, *m.*, money, coin.

numquam (*nē + umquam*), *adv.*, never.

***nunc**, *adv.*, now.

***nūntiō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*nūntius*), *tr.*, report, announce, declare.

nūntius, *i*, *m.*, messenger; news, tidings.

nūper, *adv.*, recently, lately.

nurus, *ūs*, *f.*, daughter-in-law.

nusquam (*nē + usquam*, anywhere), *adv.*, nowhere, on no occasion.

nux, *nucis*, *f.*, nut.

O

ō, *interj.*, O! oh!

***ob**, *prep. w. acc.*, for, on account of, because of.

obaerātus, *i* (*ob + aes*, money), *m.*, debtor.

obdūcō, *ere*, *obdūxī*, *obductus* (*ob + dūcō*), *tr.*, extend, make.

***obicīō**, *icere*, *obiēcī*, *obiectus* (*ob + iaciō*), *tr.*, throw against, oppose.

obruō, *ere*, *obruī*, *obrutus* (*ob + ruō*, rush), *tr.*, overwhelm, bury, crush.

obsequor, *sequī*, *obsecūtus sum* (*ob + sequor*), *intr.*, yield to, assist.

obses, *obsidis* (*obsideō*), *m.*, hostage, pledge.

***obsideō**, *ēre*, *obsēdī*, *obsessus* (*ob + sedeō*), *tr.*, besiege.

obsum, *obesse*, *obfui*, *obfutūrus* (*ob + sum*), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be against, injure.

***obtimeō**, *ēre*, *obtinui*, *obtentus* (*ob + teneō*), *tr.*, take hold upon, hold, have, possess, obtain, retain.

obveniō, *īre*, *obvēnī*, *obventum* (*ob + veniō*), *intr.*, come upon, meet, come.

occāsiō, *ōnis* (*ob + cadō*), *f.*, occasion, opportunity.

occāsus, *ūs* (*occidō*, fall), *m.*, setting (of the sun).

occidō, *ere*, *occidī*, *occisus* (*ob + caedō*), *tr.*, cut down, kill, slay.

occultus, *a*, *um*, hidden, secret; *in occultō*, concealed.

***occupō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*ob + capiō*), *tr.*, take possession of, seize, occupy.

occurrō, *currere*, *occurri*, *occursum* (*ob + currō*), *intr.*, run towards, meet.

Oceanus, *i*, *m.*, ocean.

Ocelum, *i*, *n.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

***octāvus**, *a*, *um* (*octō*), eighth.

***octō**, *indecl. adj.*, eight.

octōgintā (*octō*), *indecl. adj.*, eighty.

oculus, *i*, *m.*, eye.

***ōdī**, *ōdisse*, —, *defective, tr.*, hate.

odium, *i* (*ōdī*), *n.*, hatred, enmity.

offendō, *fendere*, *offendī*, *offēnsus* (*ob + fendō*, strike), *tr.*, strike against, offend.

offerō, *offerre*, *obtuli*, *oblātus* (*ob + ferō*), *tr.*, bring before, offer.

***officium**, *i*, *n.*, service, courtesy, duty.

ōlim, *adv.*, once upon a time, once, formerly.

omniō (*omnis*), *adv.*, on the whole, altogether, at all.

*omnis, e, all, every, whole.
 opīmus, a, um, rich, copious.
 opīniō, ōnis (opīnor, think), f., notion, belief, impression.
 *oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.*, it is necessary, it is proper, it is fitting.
 oppidānus, ī (oppidum), m., inhabitant of a town, townsman.
 *oppidum, ī, n., town, walled town.
 *oppōnō, pōnere, opposuī, oppositus (ob + pōnō), tr., put against, oppose.
 opprimō, ere, oppressī, oppressus (ob + premō), tr., crush, fall upon, overwhelm.
 oppugnātiō, ōnis (oppugnō), f., assault, siege, attack.
 *oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus (ob + pugnō), tr., fight against, attack, besiege.
 ops, opis, f., aid; pl., resources, wealth.
 optimē (optimus), best, excellently. See bene.
 optimus, a, um, *sup. of bonus*.
 optiō, ōnis (optō), f., choice.
 optō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., wish, wish for, choose.
 opus, operis, n., work, labor, fortification.
 ōra, ae, f., coast, margin.
 ōrāculum, ī (ōrō), n., oracle.
 *ōrātiō, ōnis (ōrō), f., speaking, speech, words.
 ōrdinō, āre, āvī, ātus (ōrdō), tr., arrange, regulate.
 *ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., line, rank, class.
 Orgetorix, īgis, m., a chief of the Helvetii.

orior, oriri, ortus sum, *intr.*, rise.
 ōrnātus, ūs (ōrnō), m., attire, decoration.
 ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., adorn.
 ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus. (ōs), tr., speak, beseech, beg.
 ortus. See orior.
 ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face.
 *ostendō, tendere, ostendi, ostentus (ob(s) + tendō), tr., show, exhibit, point out.
 ovile, is (ovis), n., sheepfold.
 ovis, is, f., sheep.

P

P., = Pūblius.
 *pācō, āre, āvī, ātus (pāx), tr., pacify, subdue.
 paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
 palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.
 pallium, ī, n., robe, cloak.
 palūs, ūdis, f., marsh, swamp.
 pandō, ere, pandi, passus, tr., spread out, throw open; passis manibus, with outstretched hands.
 pānis, is, m., bread, loaf of bread.
 *pār, paris, equal (to).
 parātus, a, um (parō), prepared, ready.
 parēns, parentis, m. and f., parent.
 pārēō, ēre, pārui, pārītūrus, *intr.*, w. dat., (appear to), obey, be subject to.
 *parō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr., prepare, provide, get ready, prepare for.
 *pars, partis, f., part, side, direction.
 parum, *adv.*, little; *comp.* minus; *sup.* minimē.
 parvulus, a, um (parvus), very little; as *subst.*, parvulus, ī, m., little fellow.

***parvus**, a, um, little, small; *comp.* minor; *sup.* minimus.

pāscō, pāscere, pāvi, pāstus, *tr.*, feed, support.

passus. See **pandō** and **patior**.

***passus**, ūs (pandō), *m.*, pace; mille passūs, or mille passuum, *pl.* millia passuum, mile, miles.

pāstor, ōris (pāscō), *m.*, shepherd.

patefaciō, facere, patefēcī, patefactus (pateō + faciō), *tr.*, lay open, open.

pateō, ēre, patuī, —, *intr.*, be open, extend.

***pater**, patris, *m.*, father.

patienter (patior), *adv.*, patiently, sufferingly.

patior, patī, passus sum, *tr.*, suffer, allow, endure.

patria, ae (patrius), *f.*, country, native land.

patrius, a, um (pater), ancestral.

patruus, ī (pater), *m.*, uncle.

***pauci**, ae, a, *pl.*, few.

paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.

paulō (paulus, small), *adv.*, a little.

paululum (paulus, small), *adv.*, a little, somewhat.

Paulus, ī, *m.*, a family name; L. Aemilius Paulus, consul 216 B.C.

pavor, ōris, *m.*, fear, dread.

***pāx**, pācis, *f.*, peace.

peccō, āre, āvi, ātus, *intr.*, transgress, offend.

pectus, oris, *n.*, the breast, heart.

***pecūnia**, ae (pecus), *f.*, money, wealth.

pecus, pecoris, *n.*, cattle, herd.

pedes, peditis (pēs), *m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry.

***pedester**, tris, tre (pēs), on foot, pedestrian, infantry.

Pedius, ī, *m.*; Quintus Pedius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

peior, *comp.* of malus.

peius, *comp.* of male.

***pellō**, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *tr.*, drive, drive out, expel, rout, conquer, defeat.

***per**, *prep.* w. *acc.*, through, over, by, across, by means of.

peragrō, āre, āvi, ātus (per + ager), *tr.*, wander through, roam over.

percutiō, cutere, percussī, percussus (per + quatiō, shake), strike through, pierce; cut off.

perdō, dere, perdidī, perditus, *tr.*, lose, ruin.

perdomō, āre, perdomuī, perdomitus (per + domō, subdue), *tr.*, vanquish.

***perducō**, ere, perduxī, perductus (per + ducō), *tr.*, lead, lead through, guide, conduct, extend.

perennis, e (per + annus), perpetual, never failing.

pereō, ire, periī, peritūrus, *intr.*, die, perish.

perferō, ferre, pertulī, perlātus (per + ferō), *tr.*, bring, carry through, endure.

***perficiō**, ere, perfēcī, perfectus (per + faciō), *tr.*, accomplish, finish, complete.

perfidia, ae (perfidus), *f.*, treachery, perfidy.

perfidus, a, um (per + fidus), faithless, treacherous.

perfuga, ae (per + fugiō), *m.*, deserter, refugee.

perfugium, *i*, (per + fugiō), *n.*, place of safety, refuge.

pergō, **pergere**, **perrēxi**, **perrēctum**, (per + regō), *intr.*, go through with, go on.

periclitōr, **ārī**, **ātus sum** (periculum), *tr.*, make trial of, try.

periculum, *i*, *n.*, trial, danger.

peritus, *a, um*, skillful, skilled, experienced.

***permaneō**, **manēre**, **permānsi**, **permānsūm** (per + maneō), *intr.*, remain throughout, hold out, stay, remain.

***permittō**, **ere**, **permisi**, **permissus** (per + mittō), *tr.*, give up, intrust, permit, grant.

***permoveō**, **ēre**, **permōvi**, **permōtus** (per + moveō), *tr.*, move thoroughly, arouse, influence, alarm.

perpetuō (perpetuus, continuous), *adv.*, continually, forever.

perrumpō, **ere**, **perrūpi**, **perruptus** (per + rumpō, break), *tr.*, break through.

Perseus, *ei*, *m.*, Perseus, son of Jupiter and Danaë.

persolvō, **solvere**, **persolvi**, **persolūtus** (per + solvō), *tr.*, pay, discharge a debt.

perspiciō, **ere**, **perspēxi**, **perspectus** (per + speciō, look at), *tr.*, see through.

***persuadeō**, **ēre**, **persuāsi**, **persuāsum** (per + suādeō, persuade), (*w. neuter object*) and *w. dat. of pers.*, convince, persuade, prevail on.

***perterreō**, **terrēre**, **perterrui**, **perterritus** (per + terreō), *tr.*, terrify, drive into a panic, alarm; **perterritus**, panic-stricken.

***pertineō**, **ēre**, **pertinui**, — (per + teneō), *intr.*, reach, extend, pertain, relate.

pertrāctus. See **pertrahō**.

pertrahō, **ere**, **pertrāxi**, **pertrāctus** (per + trahō), *tr.*, drag, lead.

***perveniō**, **ire**, **pervēni**, **perventum** (per + veniō), *intr.*, come through, arrive at, reach.

pēs, **pedis**, *m.*, foot.

pessimē, *sup. of male*.

pessimus, *sup. of malus*.

***petō**, **ere**, **petivi** or **petii**, **petitus**, *tr.*, aim at, seek, ask, demand, request.

pharus, *i*, *f.*, lighthouse.

Philippus, *i*, *m.*, Philip.

Picēnum, *i*, *n.*, a country of Italy on the Adriatic.

pietās, **ātis** (pius, dutiful), *f.*, devotion, loyalty.

piger, **pigra**, **pigrum**, slow, lazy.

piget, **pigēre**, **piguit**, —, *impers.*, annoy, shame; **piget**, it shames.

pignus, **pignoris**, *n.*, pledge, assurance.

pīlum, *i*, *n.*, javelin.

pirus, *i*, *f.*, pear tree.

piscātor, **ōris** (piscor, fish), *m.*, fisherman.

pix, **picis**, *f.*, pitch.

placenta, *ae*, *f.*, cake.

Plancus, *i*. See **Mūnātius**.

plānitēs, **ēi** (plānus, flat), *f.*, plain, level ground.

plēbēs, **ēi**, or **plēbs**, **plēbis**, *f.*, common people.

***plēnus**, *a, um*, full.

plērīque, **plēraeque**, **plēraque**, *pl.*, most, very many.

plūrimus, *a, um* (*sup. of multus*),

- most, very many; **plūrimum posse**, be very powerful, have most influence, be supreme.
- plūs**, *comp. of multum*.
- plūs, plūris** (*comp. of multus*), more; *pl.*, several, more.
- pōculum, i, n.**, drinking cup.
- *poena, ae, f.**, punishment, penalty; **poenās dare**, suffer punishment.
- Poenī, ōrum, m. pl.**, Carthaginians.
- poēta, ae, m.**, poet.
- polliceor, ēri, pollicitus sum, tr.**, promise.
- Polydectēs, is, m.**, a king of Seriphus.
- Pompēius, i, m.**, Pompey.
- Pompilius, i, m.**; **Numa Pompilius**, second king of Rome.
- pōmum, i, n.**, fruit, especially the apple.
- pondō, adv.**, by weight.
- pondus, eris, n.**, weight.
- *pōnō, ere, posui, positus, tr.**, place, put, pitch (a camp).
- *pōns, pontis, m.**, bridge.
- poposci. See poscō.**
- populor, āri, ātus sum (populus), tr.**, ravage, lay waste.
- *populus, i, m.**, people.
- Porsena, ae, m.**, king of Clusium in Etruria.
- *porta, ae, f.**, gate (of a city).
- *portō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr.**, carry, bring.
- portus, ūs, m.**, port, harbor.
- poscō, ere, poposci, —, tr.**, ask, demand.
- possideō, ēre, possēdi, —, tr.**, hold, occupy.
- *possum, posse, potui, —, intr.**, be able, can; **plūrimum posse**, be very powerful, have most influence.
- post, adv.**, afterwards, later.
- *post, prep. w. acc.**, after, behind.
- *postea (post + is), adv.**, afterwards.
- posterus, a, um**, following, next; *comp. posterior*, later; *sup. postrēmus*.
- posthāc (post + hāc, this way), adv.**, after this time, hereafter.
- postquam (post + quam), conj.**, after.
- postrēmō (postrēmus), adv.**, finally.
- postridiē (posterus + diēs), adv.**, on the following day.
- postulō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr.**, demand, ask.
- potēns, potentis (pres. part. of possum), adj.**, powerful, able.
- potentātus, ūs (potēns), m.**, supreme power, rule.
- potentia, ae (potēns), f.**, might, power.
- *potestas, ātis (potis, able), f.**, ability, power, authority, privilege.
- potior, potiri, potitus sum (potis, able), intr., w. abl.**, get possession of.
- prae, prep. w. abl.**, before.
- praebeō, ēre, praebui, praebitus (prae + habeō), tr.**, furnish, supply.
- praecinō, ere, praecinui, — (prae + canō, sing), tr.**, play before.
- *praecipio, cipere, praecēpi, praecēptus (prae + capio), tr.**, order, instruct, advise; anticipate.
- praeda, ae, f.**, booty, spoil.
- *praedicō, dicere, praedixi, praedictus (prae + dico), tr.**, foretell, predict.
- praedictiō, ōnis (praedicō), f.**, prediction.

***praeſciō, ere, praeſcē, praeſectus** (prae + faciō), *tr.*, set over, put in charge of.

praelūcē, ēre, praelūxi, — (prae + lūcē, shine), *intr.*, shine before.

***praemittō, ere, praemisi, praemiſſus** (prae + mittō), *tr.*, send ahead, dispatch.

***praemium, ī, n.**, reward.

praemoneō, monēre, praemonui, praemonitus (prae + moneō), *tr.*, forewarn, admonish.

praescribō, ere, praescripsi, praescriptus (prae + scribō), *tr.*, direct, order.

***praesēns, praesentis** (praesum), present (in person).

praesideō, ēre, praesēdi, — (prae + sedeō), *tr.*, guard, defend.

***praesidium, ī** (praesideō), *n.*, guard, defense, garrison.

praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus (prae + stō), *intr.*, stand before, surpass, excel; *tr.*, show.

***praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus** (prae + sum), *intr.*, *w. dat.*, be in command of, be in charge of, govern.

praetereā (praeter, beyond + is), *adv.*, besides.

praetōrius, ī, m., ex-praetor.

praeveniō, ire, praevēni, praeventus (prae + veniō), *tr.*, come before, outstrip, forestall.

prandium, ī, n., food, luncheon.

prātum, ī, n., field, meadow.

***premō, premere, pressi, pressus, tr.**, press, oppress.

pretium, ī, n., price, money.

primō (primus), *adv.*, at first.

primum (primus), *adv.*, first; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.

***primus, a, um, first; primā lūce**, at daybreak; **primus devicit**, was the first to conquer.

***princeps, principis** (primus + capiō), *m.*, chief man, leader, author.

prior, prius (prō), former, previous.

priusquam (prius, sooner + quam), *conj.*, before, sooner than.

privātus, a, um (privō, deprive), private.

***prō, prep. w. abl.**, before, in front of, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in place of; *comp.* prior; *sup.* primus.

Proca, ae, m., a king of Alba Longa.

***prōcēdō, ere, prōcessi, prōcessum** (prō + cēdō), *intr.*, go forward, proceed, advance.

prōcōsul, is, m., proconsul, governor. **procul, adv.**, far off, from afar.

prōcūrō, āre, āvi, ātus (prō + cūrō, care for), *tr.*, take care of, attend to; avert.

prōditiō, ōnis (prōdō, betray), *f.*, treachery, treason.

***prōdūcō, dūcere, prōdūxi, prōductus** (prō + dūcō), *tr.*, lead forth, produce.

***proelium, ī, n.**, battle.

profectiō, ōnis (proficiscor), *f.*, setting forth, departure.

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum (prōficiō, advance), *intr.*, set out, go, march.

profugiō, ere, profūgi, — (prō + fugiō), *intr.*, flee, escape.

prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum

- (*prō + gradior*, go), *intr.*, proceed, advance.
- **prohibeō, ēre, prohibuī, prohibitus* (*prō + habeō*), *tr.*, keep (away) from, prohibit, prevent.
- **prōiciō, ere, prōiēcī, prōiectus* (*prō + iaciō*), *tr.*, throw forth, abandon.
- prōmittō, ere, prōmisī, prōmissus* (*prō + mittō*), *tr.*, promise.
- prope, adv.*, near, nearly; *comp. propius*; *sup. proximē*.
- **properō, āre, āvī, ātus, intr.*, hasten, hurry.
- propinquitās, ātis* (*propinquus*), *f.*, nearness, relationship.
- **propinquus, a, um* (*prope*), near, neighboring; *as subst., m. and f.*, relative.
- propior, propius* (*prope*), nearer.
- propius* (*comp. of prope*), *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, nearer.
- **prōponō, ere, prōposuī, prōpositus* (*prō + pōnō*), *tr.*, put before, set forth, declare, propose.
- **propter, prep. w. acc.*, on account of, because of, for.
- prōspere* (*prōsperus*, favorable), *adv.*, fortunately, favorably.
- prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus* (*prō + sum*), *intr., w. dat.*, be of service or use to, benefit.
- prōtinus, adv.*, ahead, directly; at once, immediately.
- prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātus* (*prō + turbō*), *tr.*, drive away, dislodge, repulse.
- **prōvideō, vidēre, prōvidī, prōvisus* (*prō + videō*), *tr.*, provide, foresee.
- prōvincia, ae, f.*, province.
- prōvolō, āre, āvī, —* (*prō + 2. volō*), *intr.*, fly forth, rush out.
- proximē* (*proximus*), *adv.*, last, recently.
- proximus, a, um* (*prope*), nearest, next, following; *in proximō*, near by.
- prūdēns, prūdētis* (*prō + vidēns*), foreseeing, wise.
- prūdentē* (*prūdēns*), *adv.*, wisely.
- **pūblicus, a, um* (*populus*), belonging to the state, official, public; *rēs pūblica*, commonwealth, the state.
- Pūblius, ī, m.*, a Roman name.
- pudor, ōris, m.*, sense of shame, honor.
- **puella, ae* (*puer*), *f.*, girl.
- **puer, puerī, m.*, boy.
- pugna, ae, f.*, fight, battle.
- **pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum* (*pugnus*, fist), *intr.*, fight; *pugnātum est*, they fought.
- **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*, beautiful, pretty.
- Pulcher, Pulchrī, m.*; *P. Claudius Pulcher*, consul 249 B.C.
- pulchrē* (*pulcher*), *adv.*, beautifully.
- pullārius, ī* (*pullus*), *m.*, keeper of the sacred chickens.
- pullus, ī, m.*, chicken.
- pulsus*. See *pellō*.
- Pūnicus, a, um*, Punic, Phœnician, Carthaginian.
- pūniō, ire, pūnivī, pūnitus* (*poena*), *tr.*, punish.
- pūrgō, āre, āvī, ātus* (*pūrus*, clean + *agō*), *tr.*, clear one's self, excuse.
- purpureus, a, um*, purple.
- puteus, ī, m.*, well, pit.
- **putō, āre, āvī, ātus, tr.*, think.
- Pyrēnaeus, a, um*, (of the) Pyrenees

Q

Q. = Quintus.

quadrāgēsīmus, a, um, fortieth.

quadrāgintā, *indecl. adj.*, forty.

*quadrīngentī, ae, a, four hundred.

*quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *tr.*, seek, ask, inquire.

quālis, e, of such a kind, such as.

*quam, *conj.*, than; *adv. of degree*, how; *rel. adv.*, with a *sup.*, (as) possible.

quantus, a, um, how great, as.

quārē (quae + rēs), *adv.*, for which reason, wherefore, therefore.

*quārtus (quattuor), fourth.

quasī (quam + sī), *adv.*, as if, on the ground that, because.

*quattuor, *indecl. adj.*, four.

*quattuordecim (quattuor + decem), *indecl. adj.*, fourteen.

*-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

questus, ūs, *m.*, complaint.

*quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron. and adj.*, who, which, what, that; quam ob rem, wherefore, therefore.

quia, *conj.*, because.

quicquam. See quisquam.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *rel. pron. and adj.*, whoever, whatever.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, *indef. pron. and adj.*, certain, a certain one, somebody.

*quidem, *adv.*, indeed, truly, certainly, at least; nē . . . quidem, not . . . even.

quiēs, ētis, *f.*, rest, quiet.

quīn, *conj.*, that not; that; from (*after verbs of hindering*).

*quīndecim (quinque + decem), *indecl. adj.*, fifteen.

quīngentēsīmus, a, um, five-hundredredth.

quīngentī, ae, a, five hundred.

*quīnque, *indecl. adj.*, five.

*quīntus, a, um (quīnque), fifth.

Quīntus, ī (quīntus), *m.*, a Roman name; Quīntus Caecilius, consul 206 B.C.

Quīrinālis, is (*sc. collis*, hill), *m.*, Quirinal, one of the hills of Rome.

Quīrinus, ī, *m.*, the name given to Romulus after his deification.

*quis, quae, quid and quī, quae or qua, quod, *interrog. and indef. pron. and adj.*, who, which, what; any, any one, some one.

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or quodquam, *indef. pron. and adj.*, any, any one.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, *indef. pron. and adj.*, each (one), every (one).

quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis (quī + vis, from 1. volō), *indef. pron. and adj.*, any one you please.

quō (quī), *adv.*, where, whither.

*quod (quī), *conj.*, because, since.

quondam, *adv.*, once, formerly.

quoniam, *conj.*, since, because.

quoque, *adv.*, also, likewise.

quot, *indecl.*, how many, as many.

quōusque, *adv.*, how long.

R

rāmus, ī, *m.*, bough, branch.

rapiō, ere, rapui, raptus, *tr.*, seize, carry off, steal; draw.

rāpum, ī, *n.*, turnip.

*ratiō, ōnis (reor, think), *f.*, con-

- sideration, method, account, theory, manner.
- ratis, is, *f.*, raft.
- raucus, a, um, hoarse, harsh.
- Rauracī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, a Celtic tribe near the Rhine.
- re-, red-, *inseparable prefix*, back, again.
- recēdō, cēdere, recessī, recessum (re + cēdō), *intr.*, go back, recede.
- *recēns, recentis, fresh, new, recent, late.
- recidō, ere, recidī, — (re + cadō), *intr.*, fall back, fall, come back to.
- *recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus (re + capiō), *tr.*, take back, receive, retake, recover; *sē recipere*, betake one's self, retreat, withdraw.
- recurrō, currere, recurri, recursum (re + currō), *intr.*, run back.
- recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *intr.*, refuse.
- *reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus (red + dō), *tr.*, give back, return, render.
- redeō, redīre, rediī, reditūrus (red + eō), *intr.*, go back, return.
- *redigō, igere, redēgī, redāctus (red + agō), *tr.*, drive back, reduce, render.
- redimō, imere, redēmī, redēptus (red + emō, take, buy), *tr.*, take back, buy back, redeem.
- redintegro, āre, āvī, ātus (red + integer), *tr.*, restore, renew.
- reditō, ōnis (redeō), *f.*, return.
- reditus, ūs (redeō), *m.*, return.
- *redūcō, ere, redūxī, reductus (re + dūcō), *tr.*, lead back.
- referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (re + ferō), *tr.*, carry back, bring back, return; *pedem referre*, go back, retreat.
- *reficiō, ficere, refēcī, refectus (re + faciō), *tr.*, renew, repair, restore.
- rēgia, ae (rēgius), *f.*, palace.
- *rēgina, ae (rēx), *f.*, queen.
- regiō, ōnis (regō), *f.*, direction, region.
- rēgius, a, um (rēx), kingly, royal; aedēs rēgiae, *pl.*, palace.
- rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum (rēgnum), *intr.*, be king, reign.
- *rēgnum, ī (rēx), *n.*, royal power, kingdom.
- regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, *tr.*, guide, rule.
- regredior, gredī, regressus sum (re + gradior, go), *intr.*, go back, return.
- *reiciō, icere, reiēcī, reiectus (re + iaciō), *tr.*, throw back, reject.
- relābor, relābī, relāpsus sum (re + lābor, slip), *intr.*, sink back, subside.
- religiō, ōnis, *f.*, piety; *pl.*, rites.
- *relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus (re + linquō, leave), *tr.*, leave behind, abandon, leave.
- *reliquus, a, um, remaining, left, the rest of, remainder of; *nihil reliquī*, nothing left; *in reliquum tempus*, for the future.
- *remaneō, ēre, remānsī, — (re + maneō), *intr.*, remain, stay, stay behind.
- *remittō, mittere, remisī, remissus (re + mittō), *tr.*, send back.
- *removeō, movēre, remōvī, remōtus (re + moveō), *tr.*, move back, remove.
- remūneror, āri, ātus sum (re + mūnus), *tr.*, repay, reward.
- rēmus, ī, *m.*, oar.

Remus, *i, m.*, the brother of Romulus.

Rēmus, *i, m.*, one of the Remi, a Belgic tribe of Gaul.

renūntiō, *āre, āvi, ātus (re + nūntiō)*, *tr.*, report.

reparō, *āre, āvi, ātus (re + parō)*, *tr.*, renew, restore.

***repellō**, *ere, reppul, repulsus (re + pellō)*, *tr.*, drive back, repulse.

repente, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly.

reperiō, *ire, repperi, repertus (re + pariō)*, produce, *tr.*, find, discover, ascertain.

repetō, *petere, repetivi, repetitus (re + petō)*, *tr.*, demand or seek again, renew an attack on.

reportō, *āre, āvi, ātus (re + portō)*, *tr.*, bring or carry back, report.

reppulī. See **repellō**.

reprehendō, *ere, reprehendi, reprehensus (re +prehendō, seize)*, *tr.*, blame, censure.

reprōmittō, *ere, reprōmisi, reprōmissus (re + prōmittō)*, *tr.*, promise in return.

***rēs, rei, f.**, thing, affair, circumstance; **rēs frumentāria**, provisions, supplies of grain; **rēs militāris**, military affairs, art of war; **rēs publica**, commonwealth, state, government; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, therefore.

rescindō, *ere, rescidi, rescissus (re + scindō)*, *tr.*, break down, destroy.

***resistō**, *ere, restitū, — (re + sistō)*, *intr., w. dat.*, oppose, resist, hold one's ground against.

***respondeō**, *ēre, respondi, responsus*

(re + spondeō, promise), *tr.*, reply, answer.

respōsum, i (respondeō), *n.*, answer.

restituō, *ere, restitui, restitutus (re + statuō)*, *tr.*, renew, restore.

resurgō, *surgere, resurrexi, resurrectum (re + surgō)*, *intr.*, rise again, reappear.

***retineō**, *ēre, retinui, retentus (re + teneō)*, *tr.*, hold back, hold fast, keep back, detain, retain.

revertor, *reverti, reverti, reversus (re + vertō)*, *intr.*, turn back, return.

reviviscō, *ere, — (re + vivō)*, *intr.*, be alive again.

revocō, *āre, āvi, ātus (re + vocō)*, *tr.*, recall.

***rēx, rēgis, m.**, king.

Rhēa, *ae, f.*, Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, *i, m.*, the Rhine.

Rhodanus, *i, m.*, the Rhone.

Ricardus, *i, m.*, Richard.

***rideō**, *ridēre, risi, risus, tr. and intr.*, laugh, laugh at.

rigō, *āre, āvi, ātus, tr.*, wet, moisten.

rīma, *ae, f.*, crack, crevice.

ripa, *ae, f.*, bank (of a river).

rōbur, rōboris, n., oak; strength.

rogō, *āre, āvi, ātus, tr.*, ask, beg.

Rollō, ōnis, m., Rollo, name of a dog.

Rōma, *ae, f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um (Rōma), Roman; *as subst.*, **Rōmānus, i, m.**, a Roman.

Rōmulus, i, m., the reputed founder of Rome.

rosa, *ae, f.*, rose.

Rūfus, i, m., a family name.

rūmor, ōris, m., rumor, report.

rūpes, *is, f.*, cliff, rock.
rūrsus (*revertor*), *adv.*, back, again.
rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; **rūri**, in the country.
rūsticus, *a, um (rūs)*, of the country, rural, rustic.

S

Sabīnus, *i, m.*, 1. A Sabine. 2. *See Titūrius*.
Sabis, *is, m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, the modern Sambre.
***sacer**, *sacra, sacrum*, holy, sacred; *as subst.*, **sacrum**, *i, n.*, a holy thing, religious rite.
sacerdōs, ōtis (sacer), *m. and f.*, priest, priestess.
sacrificium, *i (sacer + faciō)*, *n.*, sacrifice.
sacrum. *See sacer*.
saepe, *adv.*, often; **saepius**, very often.
saepēs, *is, f.*, hedge, fence.
saevus, *a, um*, savage, fierce.
sagitta, *ae, f.*, arrow.
sagittārius, *i (sagitta)*, *m.*, bowman.
Saguntinus, *i, m.*, inhabitant of Saguntum.
Saguntum, *i, n.*, a town of eastern Spain.
Saliī, ōrum (saliō, leap), *m. pl.*, dancing priests of Mars.
Salinātor, ōris, m.; **M. Līvius Salinātor, consul 210 B.C.
saltem, *adv.*, at least.
saltus, ūs (saliō, leap), *m.*, jump.
**saltus, ūs, m., ravine.
***salūs, ūtis, f.**, safety.
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.****

Santonēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe near the Garonne.
sapiēns, sapientis (sapiō, be wise), wise.
sarcina, ae, f., bundle, pack, baggage.
Sardinia, ae, f., Sardinia.
Sardus, i, m., inhabitant of Sardinia.
***satis, adv. and indecl. subst.**, enough, quite.
***satisfaciō, facere, satisfēcī, satisfactum (satis + faciō), intr.**, satisfy, do enough for.
saxum, i, n., rock, stone.
Scaevola, ae (scaeva, left-handed), *m.*, a surname of Gaius Mucius.
scapha, ae, f., skiff, boat.
scientia, ae (sciō), f., knowledge, skill.
scindō, scindere, scidi, scissus, tr., cut, destroy.
***sciō, scire, scivī or scii, scītus, tr.**, know, know how.
Scipiō, ōnis, m., name of several consuls; **P. Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus**, conqueror of Hannibal in Second Punic War.
Scipiōnēs, um, m. pl., the Scipios.
scopulus, i, m., rock, reef.
scriba, ae (scribō), m., writer, scribe, secretary.
***scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, tr.**, write.
scūtum, i, n., shield.
sē. See suī.
sēcretus, a, um (sēcernō, separate), concealed, hidden, secret.
secundum (secundus), prep. w. acc., along.
***secundus, a, um (sequor)**, following, second; favorable.
secūris, is, f., ax, hatchet.

secūtus. See **sequor.**

***sed, conj.,** but.

***sēdecim (sex + decem), indecl. adj.,** sixteen.

***sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, intr., sit.**
sedile, is (sedeō), n., seat.

sēditō, ōnis (sed, apart + eō), f., rebellion, sedition.

sēditiosus, a, um (sēditō), mutinous, rebellious.

sēgnis, e, slow, sluggish.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

sella, ae (sedeō), f., seat, chair;
sella curūlis, a portable chair, opening like a camp stool. Its use belonged at first only to the king, but later to curule aediles, praetors, consuls, dictators, and the Flamines.

semper, adv., always, ever.

Semprōnius, i, m.; Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, consul 218 B.C.

Sēna, ae, f., Sena, a city in Umbria, Italy.

senātor, ōris (senex), m., senator.

***senātus, ūs (senex), m.,** senate.

senectūs, ūtis (senex), f., old age.

senex, gen. senis, old, aged; as subst., m., old man; *comp. senior; sup. maximus nātū.*

Senonēs, um, m. pl., a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

sententia, ae (sentīō), f., opinion, decision.

***sentīō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, tr.,** discern, think, feel, sense, realize, see.

sepeliō, ire, sepelivī, sepultus, tr., bury.

***septem, indecl. adj.,** seven.

***septendecim (septem + decem), indecl. adj.,** seventeen.

septentrionēs, ōnum, m. pl., north (named from a constellation).

***septimus, a, um (septem),** seventh.

septuāgintā, indecl. adj., seventy.

sepulcrum, i (sepeliō), n., tomb, burial place.

sepultus. See **sepeliō.**

Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian; as subst., Sēquanus, i, m., a Sequanian, one of the Sequani, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, tr., follow.

Seriphos (us), i, m., Seriphus, an island in the Aegean Sea.

sermō, ōnis, m., discourse, speech.

***serviō, ire, servivī or servii, servitum (servus), intr., i ih dat.,** be a slave to, serve, be of aid to.

servitium, i (servus), n., condition of a slave, slavery, service.

***servitūs, ūtis (servus), f.,** slavery.

***servō, āre, āvī, ātus (servus), tr.,** keep, preserve, save, protect.

***servus, i, m.,** slave.

***sescentī, ae, a, six hundred.**

sēsē. See **suī.**

***sex, indecl. adj.,** six.

***sextus, a, um (sex),** sixth.

***sī, conj.,** if; **sī minus,** if not.

sibi. See **suī.**

sīc, adv., thus, so.

siccus, a, um, dry; in siccō, on dry ground.

Sicilia, ae, f., Sicily.

significō, āre, āvī, ātus (signum + faciō), tr., signify, declare.

- ***signum**, *i*, *n.*, sign, signal, standard, ensign; **signa** *convertere*, face about; **signa** *inferre*, charge.
- silēns**, **silentis** (*sileō*, be still), silent, quiet.
- ***silva**, *ae*, *f.*, wood, forest.
- silvestris**, *e* (*silva*), wooded; of the woods, wild.
- simia**, *ae*, *f.*, ape.
- ***similis**, *e*, like, similar.
- simul**, *adv.*, at the same time.
- simulō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*similis*), *tr.*, pretend.
- ***sine**, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
- ***singulāris**, *e* (*singulī*), single, unusual.
- singulī**, *ae*, *a*, *pl.*, one by one, individual, each.
- ***sinister**, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**, left.
- Sinōn**, *ōnis*, *m.*, Sinon.
- sinus**, *ūs*, *m.*, lap, bosom.
- sistō**, *ere*, *stitī*, **status** (*stō*), *tr.*, cause to stand, place; *intr.*, stand, stop.
- sitis**, *is*, *f.*, thirst.
- societās**, *ātis* (*socius*), *f.*, alliance.
- sociō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*socius*), *tr.*, join, share.
- ***socius**, *i* (*sequor*), *m.*, companion, ally, comrade.
- sōl**, **sōlis**, *m.*, sun; **sōle** *ortō*, at sunrise.
- soleō**, *ēre*, **solitus** *sum*, *intr.*, be accustomed.
- sōlitudō**, *inis* (*sōlus*), *f.*, loneliness, wilderness.
- solitus**. See *soleō*.
- solium**, *i*, *n.*, throne.
- sollicitō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *tr.*, stir up, arouse, provoke.
- sōlus**, *a*, *um*, only, alone, sole.
- solvō**, **solvere**, *solvi*, **solūtus**, *tr.*, loosen, unbind, solve.
- somnium**, *i* (*somnus*), *n.*, dream.
- somnus**, *i*, *m.*, sleep.
- sonitus**, *ūs* (*sonus*, sound), *m.*, noise, sound.
- ***soror**, *ōris*, *f.*, sister.
- Sp.**, *abbr. for* **Spurius**, *i*, *m.*, a Roman name.
- ***spatium**, *i*, *n.*, space, distance, time, opportunity.
- speciēs**, *ēi* (*speciō*, look at), *f.*, sight, appearance.
- spectāculum**, *i* (*spectō*), *n.*, sight, show, spectacle.
- spectātor**, *ōris* (*spectō*), *m.*, spectator, observer.
- ***spectō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*speciō*, look at), *tr.*, watch, look at, face.
- speculātor**, *ōris* (*speculor*, watch), *m.*, scout, spy.
- speculum**, *i*, *n.*, mirror.
- ***spērō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*spēs*), *tr.*, hope, expect.
- ***spēs**, *spei*, *f.*, hope.
- splendidus**, *a*, *um* (*splendeō*, shine), bright, shining.
- spoliō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus* (*spolium*), *tr.*, strip, plunder.
- spoliūm**, *i*, *n.*, spoils, booty, plunder.
- sponte** (*abl.*), of (my, your, his, their) own accord.
- squāma**, *ae*, *f.*, scale.
- statim** (*stō*), *adv.*, forthwith, immediately.
- statiō**, *ōnis* (*stō*), *f.*, post, picket, guard.
- statua**, *ae* (*statuō*), *f.*, image, statue.

statuō, ere, statui, statutus, tr., place, decide, determine.

stella, ae, f., star.

stipendium, i (stips, gift + pendō, pay), n., pay, tribute.

stō, stāre, steti, statum, intr., stand.

strēnuē (strēnuus, brisk), adv., strenuously.

strepitus, ūs, m., noise.

struō, struere, struxi, structus, tr., erect, arrange, contrive.

studeō, ēre, studui, —, intr., be eager for, desire.

studium, i (studeō), n., zeal, eagerness.

stultus, a, um, silly, foolish.

sub, prep. w. abl. and acc.: w. abl., under, below, at the foot of; towards, about; w. acc., under, up to, to the foot of.

subducō, ere, subdūxi, subductus (sub + ducō), tr., bring up.

subigō, igere, subēgi, subactus (sub + agō), tr., bring under, conquer.

subitō (subitus, sudden), adv., suddenly.

sublātus. See tollō.

***submittō, ere, submisi, submissus (sub + mittō), tr.,** send to the assistance of; sē submittere, yield (one's self to), yield.

submoveō, movēre, submōvi, submōtus (sub + moveō), tr., remove, send away.

subruō, ere, subruī, subrutus (sub + ruō, overthrow), tr., dig under, undermine.

subsequor, subsequi, subsecutus sum (sub + sequor), tr., follow, pursue.

subsidium, i (sub + sedeō), n., aid, relief.

***succēdō, ere, successi, successus (sub + cēdō), tr. and intr.,** come up to, approach, succeed, arrive.

successus, ūs (succēdō), m., approach.

Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

sufficiō, ere, suffeci, suffectum (sub + faciō), intr., be sufficient.

***sui, pers. pron.,** of himself (herself, itself, themselves); he, she, it; *dat. sibi; acc. and abl. sē, sēsē; inter sē,* to one another, one another.

Sulpicius, i, m.; P. Sulpicius, consul 211 B.C.

***sum, esse, fui, futurus, intr.,** be; w. *dat. of possession,* have.

summa, ae (summus), f., the whole; leadership, supremacy.

summus. See superus.

***sūmō, ere, sūmsi, sūmptus, tr.,** take, assume, begin (battle).

supellex, lectilis, f., furnishings.

super, prep. w. acc. and abl., over, upon, in addition to.

superbus, a, um, haughty, proud.

superiatiō, ere, superiēci, superiectus (super + iatiō), tr., throw across.

superior. See superus.

***superō, āre, āvi, ātus (superus), tr.,** surpass, overcome, excel, conquer.

supersedeō, ēre, supersēdi, supersessum (super + sedeō), intr., w. dat., be superior (to), refrain from.

supersum, superesse, superfui, superfuturus (super + sum), intr., w. dat., be over, survive, remain.

superus, a, um (super), above; comp. superior, ius, upper, former;

- sup.* **suprēmus, summus**, highest, very great, top of.
- superveniō, ire, supervēnī, superventum** (*super + veniō*), *intr.*, arrive.
- *supplicium, ī** (*supplex*, suppliant), *n.*, punishment, death.
- suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc.**, above, before.
- suprēmus**. See *superus*.
- surdus, a, um**, deaf.
- surgō, surgere, surrexi, surrectum** (*sub + regō*), *intr.*, rise, surge.
- *suscipiō, ere, suscepī, susceptus** (*sub + capiō*), *tr.*, undertake.
- sustentō, āre, āvi, ātus** (*sustineō*), *tr.*, endure, withstand.
- *sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus** (*sub + teneō*), *tr. and intr.*, hold or keep up, withstand, sustain.
- sustulī**. See *tollō*.
- *suus, a, um** (*suī*), *poss. adj.*, his, her, its, their; his (her, its, their) own; *suaque omnia*, all their possessions.
- Syphāx, ācis, m.**, Syphax, a Numidian chief.
- Syrācūsae, ārum, f.**, Syracuse, a city in Sicily.
- T**
- T. = Titus.**
- taberna, ae, f.**, shop, tavern.
- tacitē** (*taceō*, be silent), *adv.*, silently, secretly.
- tālāria, ium** (*tālus*, ankle), *n. pl.*, winged sandals.
- *tālis, e**, such, of such a kind.
- tam, adv.**, so (*w. adjectives and adverbs*).
- tamen, adv.**, however, yet, nevertheless.
- tandem, adv.**, at length, finally.
- tantus, a, um** (*tam*), so great, such.
- *tardus, a, um**, slow, late.
- Tarentum, ī, n.**, Tarentum, a city in southern Italy.
- Tarpēia, ae, f.**, a Roman girl in the time of Romulus.
- Tatius, ī, m.**; Titus Tatius, a Sabine king, joint ruler with Romulus.
- taurus, ī, m.**, bull.
- tē, acc. of tū**.
- tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus, tr.**, cover.
- tēlum, ī, n.**, missile, weapon.
- temeritās, ātis, f.**, rashness.
- tempestās, ātis** (*tempus*), *f.*, storm, tempest.
- templum, ī, n.**, temple.
- *temptō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr.**, test, try, attempt; attack.
- *tempus, temporis, n.**, time, occasion.
- tendō, ere, tetendi, tentus and tēnsus, tr.**, spread out, stretch.
- *teneō, ēre, tenui, —, tr.**, hold, keep, restrain.
- tener, tenera, tenerum, tender**, young, delicate; gentle, merciful.
- Terentius, ī, m.**, a Roman clan name.
- tergum, ī, n.**, back.
- *terra, ae, f.**, earth, land, country; *terrā*, by land.
- *terreō, ēre, terrui, territus, tr.**, frighten, terrify.
- terribilis, e** (*terreō*), terrifying.
- terror, ōris, m.**, fear, terror.
- *tertius, a, um** (*trēs*), third.
- testūdō, inis, f.**, tortoise; shed.
- Teutonī, ōrum or Teutonēs, um, m. pl.**, Teutons, a Germanic people on the Baltic.

Thessalia, *ae, f.*, Thessaly, a country in north central Greece.

Ti = **Tiberius**, *i, m.*, a Roman name.

Tiberis, *is, m.*, the Tiber.

tibi, *dat. of tū*.

tībīcen, *inis, m.*, piper, flute player.

***timeō**, *ēre, timui*, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid, be afraid of.

timidus, *a, um* (*timeō*), afraid, timid, fearful.

Timōn, *ōnis, m.*, Timon.

***timor**, *ōris, m.*, fear.

Titūrius, *i, m.*; **Quintus Titūrius Sabīnus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Titus, *i, m.*, a Roman name.

tolerō, *āre, āvi, ātus, tr.*, bear, endure, experience.

tollō, *ere, sustuli, sublātus, tr.*, lift up, raise; remove, destroy.

Tolōsātēs, *ium, m. pl.*, Tolosates, inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

tormentum, *i* (*torqueō*, twist), *n.*, a military engine for hurling missiles.

Torquātus, *i* (*torquis*, necklace), *m.*, a surname of Titus Manlius. See **Mānlius**.

torreō, *torrēre, torruī, tostus, tr.*, burn, scorch, roast.

tōtus, *a, um*, whole, all.

trabs, *trabis, f.*, beam, timber.

trāctō, *āre, āvi, ātus* (*trahō*), *tr.*, touch, handle.

***trādō**, *ere, trādidī, trāditus* (*trāns + dō*), *tr.*, give or hand over, give up, deliver, surrender; **trāditur**, it (he, she) is said.

***trādūcō**, *ere, trādūxī, trāductus*

(*trāns + dūcō*), *tr.*, lead over or across, transport.

***trahō**, *trahere, trāxī, trāctus, tr.*, drag.

***trāiciō**, *ere, trāiēcī, trāiectus* (*trāns + iaciō*), *tr.*, throw or carry across, pass over, transfer; pierce.

Trallēs, *Trallium, f. pl.*, a town of Lydia.

tranquillus, *a, um*, quiet, calm.

***trāns**, *prep. w. acc.*, across, over, through.

trānseō, *ire, trānsī, trānsitus* (*trāns + eō*), *tr. and intr.*, cross, go over, pass over, go across.

trānsferō, *ferre, trānstulī, trāslātus* (*trāns + ferō*), *tr.*, carry over, transfer, turn.

trānsfigō, *figere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus* (*trāns + figō*, fix, fasten), *tr.*, thrust through, pierce, transfix.

trānsfodiō, *fodere, trānsfōdī, trānsfossus* (*trāns + fodiō*, dig), *tr.*, thrust through, pierce, run through.

trānsfugiō, *ere, trānsfūgī*, — (*trāns + fugiō*), *intr.*, flee over, go over.

trānsgridior, *trānsgridi, trānsgressus sum* (*trāns + gradior*, go), *tr.*, go over, pass over.

trānsiliō, *re, trānsilui*, — (*trāns + saliō*, leap), *tr.*, leap over, jump across.

trānsversus, *a, um* (*trānsvertō*, turn across), transverse; **trānsversa fossa**, cross ditch.

Trebia, *ae, m.*, the Trebia, a river in Italy, the scene of one of Hannibal's victories.

***trecentī**, *ae, a* (*trēs + centum*), three hundred.

***tredecim** (trēs + decem), *indecl. adj.*, thirteen.

***trēs, tria**, three.

tribūnāl, ālis (tribūnus), *n.*, judgment seat, tribunal.

tribūnus, ī (tribus, tribe), *m.*, tribune, a military officer.

trīduum, ī (trēs + diēs), *n.*, interval of three days.

trīgintā, *indecl. adj.*, thirty.

trīumphō, āre, āvi, ātus (trīumphus), *intr.*, celebrate a triumph.

trīumphus, ī, m., triumph.

truncus, ī, m., trunk, body.

***tū, tui**, *pers. pron.*, you, thou

tuba, ae, f., trumpet.

tuli. See *ferō*.

Tulingī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe near the upper Rhine.

***tum, adv.**, then, in the next place.

tumultus, ī, m., uproar, disturbance.

tunc, adv., then, at that time.

turba, ae, f., throng, crowd.

turbō, āre, āvi, ātus (turba), *tr.*, disturb, arouse.

turpis, e, ugly, disgraceful, infamous.

turpitūdō, inis (turpis), *f.*, baseness, disgrace.

***turris, is, f.**, tower.

Tuscia, ae, f., Etruria.

tūtēla, ae (tueor, protect), *m.*, guardianship, guardian, protection.

tūtus, a, um (tueor, protect), protected, safe.

***tuus, a, um** (tū), *poss. adj.*, your, yours.

U

***ubi, adv.**, where, when.

ullus, a, um, any, any one.

ulterior, ulterius, farther; *sup. ultimus, a, um*, extreme, utmost.

ultrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., beyond, farther.

umquam, adv., ever.

ūnā (ūnus), *adv.*, together with.

unda, ae, f., wave, water.

undē, adv., whence.

***ūndecim** (ūnus + decem), *indecl. adj.*, eleven.

undēvicesimus, a, um, nineteenth.

***ūndēvigintī, indecl. adj.**, nineteen.

undique, adv., from or on all sides.

ūniversus, a, um (ūnus + vertō), whole, entire.

***ūnus, a, um**, one.

urbānus, a, um (urbs), of the city, of the town.

***urbs, urbis, f.**, city.

ūsque, adv., all the way to; **ūsque ad**, right up to.

ūsus, a, um. See *ūtor*.

ūsus, ūs (ūtor), *m.*, use, advantage, benefit, help; **ūsui esse**, be of service.

ut, utī, (ī) adv., as; (2) *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

uter, utra, utrum, interrog. pron. and adj., which (of two), which one.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. and adj., each (of two), both.

utī. See ut.

ūtī. See ūtor.

ūtilis, e (ūtor), useful.

ūtilitās, ātis (ūtilis), *f.*, usefulness.

utinam, adv., O that, would that, may.

ūtor, utī, ūsus sum, intr., w. abl., use, employ; make, make use of.

uxor, ōris, f., wife.

V

vacuus, a, um, empty, destitute of, vacant.

vadum, ī, m., shoal, ford.

vāgītus, ūs (vāgiō, cry), *m.*, crying, squalling.

vagor, āri, ātus sum (vagus, wandering), *intr.*, wander.

Valerius, ī, m.; Lucius Valerius, consul 206 B.C.; **Mārcus Valerius**

Maximus Corvinus, consul 343 B.C.

validus, a, um (valeō, be strong), strong, sturdy.

vallēs, is, f., valley, vale.

vāllum, ī, n., wall, rampart, earth-works.

varius, a, um, diverse, various.

Varrō, ōnis, m.; P. Terentius Varrō, consul 219 and 216 B.C.

vās, vāsis (n. pl. vāsa, ōrum), *n.*, vessel, vase.

vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus (vāstus), *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

vāstus, a, um, waste; vast, enormous.

vehō, vehere, vexi, vectus, tr., carry, convey.

vēlōcītās, ātis (vēlōx), *f.*, speed, swiftness.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, quick.

vēlum, ī, n., sail.

velut, veluti, adv., as if, just as if.

vendō, dere, vendidi, venditus, tr., offer for sale, sell.

venia, ae, f., favor, permission.

***veniō, ire, vēni, ventum, intr.**, come; in *fidem venire*, put one's self under the protection of.

vēnor, āri, ātus sum, tr., hunt, chase.

ventus, ī, m., wind.

verberō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., lash, flog.

verbum, ī, n., word; **verba facere**, speak.

vereor, ēri, veritus sum, tr., fear, be afraid of.

vergō, ere, —, —, intr., incline (toward), lie toward.

veritus. See vereor.

***vērō (vērus)**, *adv.*, in fact, indeed, in truth, but, however.

Verrēs, is, m., Verres.

vertex, verticis (vertō), *m.*, summit, crest.

vertō, vertere, verti, versus, tr., turn.

verū, ūs, n., spit, stick.

vērūm (vērus), *adv.*, certainly, but.

***vērus, a, um**, true, truthful, correct.

vēscor, vēsci, —, intr., w. abl., eat.

vesper, eri, m., evening.

Vesta, ae, f., goddess of the hearth, and hence of the family and state. Her sacred fire, kept continually burning in her temple near the Forum, was watched by six priestesses, called Vestals.

Vestālis, e, Vestal.

***vester, vestra, vestrum (vōs)**, *poss. adj.*, your, yours.

vestis, is, f., garment, clothing.

vetō, āre, vetui, vetitus, tr., forbid.

vetus, veteris, long-standing, old, ancient; *comp. vetustior; sup. veterrimus.*

vēxillum, ī, n., a military ensign.

vexō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., damage, harass, annoy.

***via, ae, f.**, way, highway, road, street, journey, passage.

viātor, ōris (via), *m.*, wayfarer, traveler.

vicēsīmus, a, um (vīginti), twentieth.

vici. See **vincō**.

vicinus, a, um (vicus), neighboring, near.

victor, ōris (vincō), m., conqueror, victor.

***victōria, ae (victor), f.,** victory.

victus, victūrus. See **vincō**.

vicus, i, m., village.

videlicet (videō + licet), adv., of course, that is.

***videō, ēre, vidī, visus, tr.,** see; *pass.*, seem, appear.

vigilantia, ae (vigilāns, watchful), f., watchfulness, attention.

vigilia, ae, f., watching, a watch (a fourth part of the night).

***vigintī, indecl. adj.,** twenty.

***villa, ae, f.,** farmhouse.

vinciō, īre, vīnxi, vīnctus, tr., bind, tie.

***vincō, ere, vici, victus, tr.,** conquer, overcome.

vinculum, i (vinciō), n., chain, fetter; *in or ex vinculis*, in chains.

vindicō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., punish, inflict punishment; demand, claim.

vinea, ae, f., a military shed.

vīnum, i, n., wine.

vīnxi. See **vinciō**.

violō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., violate, dishonor.

***vir, viri, m.,** man, husband, hero.

virēs. See **vis**.

virgō, virginis, f., virgin, maiden, girl.

Viromandūi, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

***virtūs, virtūtis (vir), f.,** manhood, manliness, virtue, bravery, courage.

***vis, vim, f.,** violence, force, power, might, number; *pl. virēs*, strength.

***vita, ae, f.,** life.

vītō, āre, āvi, ātus, tr., avoid, escape.

vīvō, ere, vixi, —, intr., live.

***vivus, a, um,** living, alive.

vix, adv., hardly, barely.

vixi. See **vīvō**.

***vocō, āre, āvi, ātus (vōx), tr.,** call, summon.

Vocontii, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of Gaul.

1. **volō, velle, volui, —, tr. and intr.,** wish, desire, be willing.

2. **volō, āre, āvi, āturus, intr.,** fly.

volpēs, is, f., fox.

voluntārius, a, um (voluntās), willing, voluntary.

voluntās, ātis (i. volō), f., desire, consent, favor.

voluptās, ātis (i. volō), f., wish, pleasure.

volvō,olvere, volvi, volūtus, tr., roll, turn; ponder, consider.

vōs, pl. of tū.

voveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtus, tr., vow, promise.

***vōx, vōcis, f.,** voice, speech, remark; *pl.*, words.

vulgō (vulgus, multitude), adv., generally, everywhere.

***vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus (vulnus), tr.,** wound.

***vulnus, vulneris, n.,** wound.

vultur, vulturis, m., vulture.

vultus, ūs, m., expression, looks, countenance.

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH — LATIN

[Numbers refer to Sections.]

A

- able**, potēns, potentis; **be able**, possum, posse, potuī.
- about to, be**, *active periphrastic conjugation* (437); *ful. participle*.
- above**, superus.
- absent, be**, absum, āfuī, āfutūrus.
- abundance**, cōpia, ae, *f*.
- accomplish**, cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.
- account of, on**, *abl. of cause*; ob, propter, *w. acc.*
- across**, trāns, per, *w. acc.*; (**a bridge**) across the river, in flūmine.
- adjoining**, finitimus, a, um.
- administer**, administrō, āre, āvī, ātus.
- advance**, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessī, prōcessum; prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum.
- advantage**, ūsus, ūs, *m*.
- advice**, cōsiliū, ī, *n*.
- advise**, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.
- affair**, rēs, rei, *f*.
- afraid**, be, timeō, ēre, timuī, —.
- after**, *prep.*, post, *w. acc.*; *conj.*, postquam.
- afterwards**, *adv.*, postea.
- against**, in, contrā, *w. acc.*; **be against**, obsum, obesse, obfuī, obfutūrus.
- agreeable**, grātus, a, um.
- aid**, auxilium, ī, *n*. [*w. dat.*]
- aid**, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus.
- aim**, petō, ere, petivī or petiī, petitus.
- alarm**, permoveō, ēre, permōvī, permōtus.
- all**, omnis, e; tōtus, a, um.
- alliance**, amicitia, ae, *f*.
- allow**, patior, pati, passus sum; permittō, ere, permisi, permissum; concēdō, ere, concessi, concessum.
- ally**, socius, ī, *m*.
- alone**, sōlus, a, um.
- already**, iam.
- although**, cum, *w. subjv.*; *abl. abs.*, 315.
- always**, semper.
- am**, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.
- ambassador**, lēgātus, ī, *m*.
- among**, inter, apud, *w. acc.*; **be among**, insum, inesse, infui, infutūrus; intersum, interesse, interfui, interfutūrus, *w. dat.*
- ample**, amplus, a, um.
- ancient**, vetus, veteris.
- and**, et, -que, atque; **and not**, neque.
- animal**, animal, animalis, *n*.
- announce**, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
- another**, alius, a, ud; **to one another**, inter sē; **another's**, alienus, a, um.

answer, respondeō, ēre, respondi, responsus.

any, any one, ullus, a, um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod; quicumque, quicquam; quivis, quaevis, quodvis.

appoint, constituō, ere, constitui, constitutus.

approach, adventus, ūs, *m.*; aditus, ūs, *m.*

approach, appropinquo, āre, āvi, ātum, *w. dat.*; accēdō, ere, accessi, accessurus, *w. ad and acc.*

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, i, *m.*

arm, armō, āre, āvi, ātus.

arms, arma, ōrum, *n. plur.*

army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*; army on the march, agmen, agminis, *n.*

around, circum, *w. acc.*

arouse, incitō, āre, āvi, ātus; permovere, ēre, permōvi, permōtus.

arrange, instruō, ere, instruxi, instructus.

arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, ire, pervēni, perventum.

arrow, sagitta, ac, *f.*

art, ars, artis, *f.*

ascertain, reperiō, ire, repperi, repperit.

ask, rogō, āre, āvi, ātus; petō, ere, petivi or petii, petitus; mandō, āre, āvi, ātus.

assemble, conveniō, ire, convēni, conventus.

at, ad, *w. acc.*; sign of *abl.* of time.

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f. plur.*

attack, impetus, ūs, *m.*

attack, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus; lacesō, ere, lacesivī, lacesitus.

attempt, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

authority, auctoritās, ātis, *f.*; potestas, ātis, *f.*

await, expectō, āre, āvi, ātus.

away, be, absum, abesse, āfui, āfutura.

B

bad, malus, a, um.

baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, *n. plur.*

band, manus, ūs, *f.*

bank (of river), rīpa, ac, *f.*

barbarous, barbarus, a, um.

battle, proelium, i, *n.*; pugna, ac, *f.*; line of battle, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*

be, sum, esse, fui, futurus.

bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.

beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.

beautifully, pulchrē.

because, quod; *abl. of cause*; because of, propter, *w. acc.*

before, prō, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*

beg, petō, ere, petivi or petii, petitus; rogō, āre, āvi, ātus.

begin, coepi, coepisse, coepturus sum; begin battle, proelium committō, ere, commisi, commissus.

behalf of, in, prō, *w. abl.*

behind, post, *w. acc.*

Belgae, Belgae, ārum, *m.*

believe, existimō, āre, āvi, ātus; crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *w. dat.*

below, inferus, a, um.

benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfuturus, *w. dat.*

benefit, ūsus, ūs, *n.*

besiege, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus; obsideō, ēre, obsēdi, obsessus.

best, optimus, a, um; *adv.*, optimē.

betake one's self, cōferō, cōferre, contuli, conlātus (*refl.*).

between, inter, *w. acc.*

bid, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus.
bind, vinciō, ire, vīnxi, vinctus.
bird, avis, *is, f.*
black, niger, nigra, nigrum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvī, ātus.
body, corpus, corporis, *n.*
book, liber, librī, *m.*
booty, praeda, *ae, f.*
both . . . and, et . . . *et.*
bottom of, īmus, *a, um.*
boundary, finēs, ium, *m. plur.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, *e.*
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
break up camp, castra movēre.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
brief, brevis, *e.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ; portō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **bring in**, inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus ; **bring together**, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus.
broad, lātus, *a, um.*
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
build, aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus ; faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
building, aedificium, ī, *n.*
burn, incendō, ere, incendi, incēnsus.
but, sed, at ; autem (*postpositive*).
by, sign of *abl.* ; ā or ab, *w. abl.* ; **by means of**, *abl. of means* ; per, *w. acc.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*
call, vocō, āre, āvī, ātus ; appellō, āre, āvī, ātus ; **call together**, convocō, āre, āvī, ātus.
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
care, cūra, *ae, f.*
carefully, cum cūrā.
carefulness, diligentia, *ae, f.*
carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātus ; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ; **carry back**, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus ; **carry on**, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, inis, *f.*
case, causa, *ae, f.*
cause, causa, *ae, f.*
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, *m.* ; equitēs, um, *m. plur.* ; (*of the*) **cavalry**, equester, equestris, equestre.
Celt, Celta, *ae, m.*
certain, a . . . one, quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.
chain, vinculum, ī ; **in chains**, ex vinculis.
chance, cāsus, ūs, *m.*
change, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus.
charge, signa inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātus.
charge of, be in, praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus, *w. dat.* ; **put in charge of**, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. dat.*
chief, princeps, principis, *m.*
children, liberī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
circumstance, rēs, rei, *f.*
citizen, cīvīs, is, *m. and f.*
citizenship, civitās, ātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*
collect, cōgō, ere, cōlēgī, cōlēctus.
column, agmen, agminis, *n.*
come, veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum ; **come around**, circumveniō, ire, circum-

vēnī, circumventus; **come near**,
accēdō, ere, accessi, accessurus;
come together, conveniō, ire, con-
vēnī, conventus; **come up**, per-
 veniō, ire, pervēnī, perventus.
command, imperium, i, n.
command, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus;
 imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; mandō, āre,
 āvī, ātus; praesum, praeesse, prae-
 fui, praefuturus (*w. dat.*).
commander, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperā-
 tor, ōris, *m.*
commit, committō, ere, commisi, com-
 missus.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
companion, socius, i, *m.*
compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus.
complete, compleō, complēre, com-
 plēvī, complētus.
concerning, dē, *w. abl.*
condemn, damnō, āre, āvī, ātus.
confer, conloquor, conloquī, conlocū-
 tus sum.
confidence, fidēs, ei, *f.*
congratulate, grātulor, āri, ātus sum.
conquer, superō, āre, āvī, ātus; vincō,
 ere, vici, victus.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, *f.*
conspirator, coniūrātus, i, *m.*
consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m.*
contend, contendō, ere, contendī,
 contentus; dimicō, āre, āvī, ātus.
contracted, angustus, a, um.
convert, convertō, ere, convertī, con-
 versus.
Corinth, Corinthus, i, *f.*
country, terra, ac, *f.*; patria, ac, *f.*;
 rūs, rūris, *n.*; **in the country**, rūri.
courage, animus, i, *m.*
cross, transeō, ire, trānsiī, trānsitus.
crowd, vulgus, i, *n.*; multitudō, inis, *f.*

cry, clāmor, ōris, *m.*
cup, pōculum, i, *n.*
custom, cōnsuetūdō, inis, *f.*
cut down, occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

D

daily, cottidiānus, a, um; *adv.*, cot-
 tidiē.
danger, periculum, i, *n.*
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, filia, ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēi, *m.*
daybreak, at, primā lūce.
daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
dear, cārus, a, um; grātus, a, um.
dearly, cārē.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
deed, factum, i, *n.*
deep, altus, a, um.
defeat, calamitās, ātis, *f.*
defend, dēfendō, ere, dēfendī, dē-
 fēnsus.
defense, praesidium, i, *n.*
delay, moror, āri, ātus sum.
delight, dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus.
deliver (= set free), liberō, āre, āvī,
 ātus; (= hand over) trādō, trādere,
 trādidī, trāditus.
Delphi, Delphī, ōrum, *m.*
demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō,
 ere, petivī or petiī, petitus.
depart, discēdō, ere, discessī, discessum.
dependent, cliēns, clientis, *m.*
depth, altitūdō, inis, *f.*
desire, cupiō, ere, cupivī or cupiī,
 cupitus.
desirous (of), cupidus, a, um.
determine, cōstituō, ere, cōstituī,
 cōstitutus.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum; cadō,
 ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.

difficult, difficilis, *c.*
diligence, diligentia, *ae, f.*
direct, administrō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
disaster, calamitās, *ātis, f.*
discover, reperiō, *īre, repperī, 're-*
disgraceful, turpis, *e.* [pertus.
dismiss, dimittō, *ere, dīmisi, dīmissus.*
dispatch, praemittō, *ere, praemisi,*
praemissus.
disposition, animus, *i, m.*
dissimilar, dissimilis, *c.*
ditch, fossa, *ae, f.*
do, faciō, *ere, feci, factus; agō, ere,*
ēgī, āctus.
document, litterae, *ārum, f. plur.*
door, porta, *ae, f.*
down from, dē, *w. abl.* [*w. dat.*
draw near, appropinquō, *āre, āvī, ātum,*
draw up, instruō, *ere, instruxī, in-*
strūctus.
drive away, pellō, *ere, pepulī, pulsus.*
during, inter, *w. acc.*

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quid-
que; each (of two), uterque, utra-
que, utrumque.
eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; **eager for**,
cupidus, a, um (w. gen.).
eagerly, ācriter; *cum studiō.*
earthworks, vāllum, *i, n.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, *c.*
eight, octō.
employ, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
encourage, hortor, *ārī, ātus sum;*
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum; incitō,
āre, āvī, ātus.
end, finis, *is, m.*
enemy, hostis, *is, m. and f.*
enjoy, fruor, frui, fructus sum, *w. abl.*

enough, satis, *indecl.*
ensign, signum, *i, n.*
entangle, impediō, *īre, impediī, im-*
peditus.
equal, pār, *paris.*
equestrian, equester, equestris, eque-
stre.
equip, armō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
establish, cōfirmō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
Europe, Eurōpa, *ae, f.*
even, *express by ipse, a, um.*
ever, semper.
every, omnis, *c.*
evil, malus, *a, um.*
exceedingly, *express by superlative.*
except, nisi.
exchange, inter sē dare.
exhort, cohortor, *ārī, ātus sum.*
expect, exspectō, *āre, āvī, ātus.*
expel, pellō, *ere, pepulī, pulsus.*

F

face about, signa convertō, conver-
tere, convertī, conversus.
facing, adversus, *a, um; prep., adver-*
sus, w. acc. [*w. dat.*
fail, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfuturus,
faithful, fidus, *a, um.*
fall, cadō, *ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.*
falling, cāsus, *us, m.*
famous, *express by ille, illa, illud.*
far, far off, longē.
farmer, agricola, *ae, m.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favor, grātia, *ae, f.*
fear, timeō, *ēre, timui, —; vereor,*
ērī, veritus sum.
fertile, ferāx, ferācis.
few, pauci, *ae, a (plur.).*
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; *asper, aspera,*

asperum ; ferus, a, um.
fiercely, ācritēr.
fight, pugnō, āre, āvī, ātum ; **fight a battle**, proelium facere.
fill up, complēō, complēre, complēvī,
finally, dēnique. [complētus.
find, invenīō, īre, invēnī, inventus ;
 reperīō, īre, repperī, repertus.
finish, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.
fire, ignis, is, *m.* ; **set fire to**, incendō,
 ere, incendi, incēnsus.
first, primus, a, um ; **at first**, primō.
fit, idōneus, a, um.
five, quīque.
flank, latus, lateris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, —.
flight, fuga, ae, *f.* ; **put to flight**, in
 fugam dare.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, posterus, a, um.
food, cibus, ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.* ; **at the foot of**, sub,
w. abl. ; **to the foot of**, sub, *w. acc.*
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, *sign of dat.* ; ob, propter, *w. acc.* ;
 prō, *w. abl.*
forbid, vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitus.
force, cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forces, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
forest, silva, ae, *f.*
form, capiō, ere, cēpī, captus ; in-
 struō, ere, instrūxī, instrūctus ; faciō,
 ere, fecī, factus.
former, ille, illa, illud.
fort, castellum, ī, *n.*
fortifications, moenia, ium, *n. plur.*
fortify, mūniō, īre, mūnivī or mūnīi,
 fortune, fortuna, ae, *f.* [mūnitus.
forty, quadrāgintā.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus, a, um.

free, liber, libera, liberum.
free, liberō, āre, āvī, ātus.
freedom, libertās, ātis, *f.*
frequently, saepe.
friend, amicus, ī, *m.*
friendship, amicitia, ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, ēre, terruī, territus.
from, *sign of abl.* ; ā or ab, ē or ex,
 dē, *w. abl.*
future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

garden, hortus, ī, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, ī, *n.*
gate, porta, ae, *f.*
gather, cōferō, cōnferre, contulī,
 conlātus.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, *f.* ;
 (inhabitant), Gallus, ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.* ; imperātor,
 ōris, *m.*
gentle, lēnis, *c.*
gift, dōnum, ī, *n.*
girl, puella, ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus ; **give**
back, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditum ;
give up, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus ;
 permittō, ere, permisi, permissus ;
 trādō, ere, trādidī, trāditus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
go, eō, īre, iī, itum ; proficiscor, ī,
 profectus sum ; **go across or over**,
 transeō, īre, trānsiī, trānsitus ; **go**
back, redeō, redire, rediī, reditūrus ;
go forward, prōcēdō, ere, prōcessi,
 prōcessum ; **go near**, accēdō, ere,
 accessi, accessūrus ; **go out**, exeō,
 exire, exiī, exitūrus ; **let go**, di-
 mittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus ; **be**
going to, *active periphrastic conjuga-*
tion (437).

god, deus, *i, m.*
 goddess, dea, *ac, f.*
 good, bonus, *a, um.*
 graceful, gracilis, *e.*
 grain, frumentum, *i, n.*; growing
 grain, frumenta, *orum, plur.*; sup-
 plies of grain, res frumentaria, rei
 frumentariae, *f.*
 great, magnus, *a, um*; great many,
 complures, *ia, plur.*; so great,
 tantus, *a, um.*
 greatness, magnitudo, *inis, f.*
 Greece, Graecia, *ae, f.*
 Greek, Graecus, *i, m.*
 ground, on the, humi.
 guard, praesidium, *i, n.*
 guest, hospes, hospitis, *m.*

H

habit, consuetudo, *inis, f.*
 hand, manus, *us, f.*
 Hannibal, Hannibal, *is, m.*
 happen, accidere, *ere, accidere, —.*
 harass, lacerare, *ere, lacerare, lacer-*
 harbor, portus, *us, m.* [situs.
 hard, difficilis, *e.*
 hardly, vix.
 harm, nocere, *ere, nocere, nocit-*
 rus, *w. dat.*
 hasten, maturare, *are, avi, atum*; con-
 tendere, *ere, contendere, contentum.*
 haughty, superbus, *a, um.*
 have, habere, *ere, habere, habitus*; *dat.*
of possession; have to, passive peri-
 phrastic conjugation (438-9).
 he, is; hic; ille; he who, is qui.
 head, caput, capitis, *n.*; be at the
 head of, praesum, praeesse, praefui,
 praefuturus, *w. dat.*
 hear, audire, *ire, audire, auditus.*
 height, altitudo, *inis, f.*

help, adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus,
w. dat.
 help, auxilium, *i, n.*; usus, *us, m.*
 Helvetians, Helvetii, *orum, plur.*
 her, hers, eius; suus, *a, um*; her
 (own), suus, *a, um.*
 herself, see self.
 high, altus, *a, um.*
 hill, collis, *is, m.*; up the hill, ad-
 verso colle.
 himself, see self.
 hindrance, impedimentum, *i, n.*
 his, eius; huius; illius; suus, *a, um.*
 hither, huc.
 hold, tenere, *ere, tenere, tentus*; hold
 back, retinere, *ere, retinere, retentus*;
 hold together, continere, *ere, con-*
 tinere, contentus; hold up, sustinere,
ere, sustinere, sustentus.

home, domus, *us or i, f.*; at home,
 domi.
 honor, pudor, *oris, m.*
 hope, sperare, *are, avi, atum.*
 hope, spes, *spei, f.*
 horn, cornu, *us, n.*
 horse, equus, *i, m.*
 horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
 hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
 hour, hora, *ae, f.*
 house, domus, *us or i, f.*
 however, autem; tamen.
 hundred, centum.
 hurl, iacere, *ere, iacere, iactus*; con-
 icere, *conicere, coniectus.*
 hurry, contendere, *ere, contendere, con-*
 tentum; maturare, *are, avi, atum.*

I

I, ego, mei.
 Ides, Idus, Iduum, *f. plur.*
 if, si; if not, nisi.

impede, impediō, īre, impediī, impedītus.

in, *sign of abl.*; *in, w. abl.*; **be in**, īnsum, inesse, īnfui, īnfutūrus.

incite, incitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

increase, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus.

industry, diligentia, ae, *f*.

infamous, turpis, e.

infantry, peditēs, um, *m. plur.*

influence, grātia, ae, *f.*; auctōritās, ātis, *f.*; **have most influence**, plūrium posse.

influence, permovere, ēre, permōvi, permōtus.

inform, certiorem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

inhabit, incolō, ere, incolui, —.

inhabitant, incola, ae, *m*.

injure, noceō, ēre, nocui, nocitūrus, *w. dat.*; obsum, obesse, obfui, obfutūrus, *w. dat.* [esse, *w. dat.*

intend, in animō habere; **in** animō **into**, in, *w. acc.*

intrust, committō, ere, commisi, commissus; **permittō**, ere, permisi, permissus.

island, insula, ae, *f*.

it, is, ea, id.

Italy, Italia, ae, *f*.

its, eius; **suus**, a, um.

J

January, Iānuārius, ī, *m*.

javelin, pilum, ī, *n*.

join, iungō, ere, iūnxi, iūnctus; **join battle**, proelium committō, ere, commisi, commissus.

joint, artus, ūs, *m*.

journey, iter, itineris, *n*.

judgment, iudiciū, ī, *n*.

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.

keep, servō, āre, āvi, ātus; **keep (away) from**, prohibeō, ēre, prohibui, prohibitus.

kill, necō, āre, āvi, ātus; **interficiō**, ere, interfēcī, interfectus; **occidō**, ere, occidī, occisus.

kindness, grātia, ae, *f*.

king, rēx, rēgis, *m*.

know, sciō, scīre, scīvi, scītus; **intellegō**, ere, intellēxi, intellēctus; *perf.* of cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvi, cōgnitus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, ī.

labor, labor, ōris, *m.*; **opus**, operis, *n*.

lack, inopia, ae, *f*.

lack, careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, *w. abl.*

lacking, be, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, *w. dat.*

land, terra, ae, *f.*; **native land**, patria, ae, *f*.

large, magnus, a, um; **amplus**, a, um.

last, at, dēnique.

late at night, multā nocte; **till late at night**, ad multam noctem.

latter, hīc, haec, hoc.

law, lēx, lēgis, *f*.

lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus; **lead across or over**, trādūcō, ere, trādūxi, trāductus; **lead back**, redūcō, ere, redūxi, reductus; **lead out**, ēdūcō, ere, ēdūxi, ēductus.

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; **princeps**, principis, *m*.

learn, intellegō, ere, intellēxi, intellēctus; **discō**, ere, didici, —; **learn of**, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvi, cōgnitus.

leave, intrans., discēdō, ere, discessi, discessum; exēō, exīre, exī, exitūrus.
trans., leave, leave behind, relinquō, ere, reliquī, relictus.
left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.
left (= remaining), reliquus, a, um; **nothing left**, nihil reliquī.
legion, legiō, ōnis, *f*.
lest, nē, *w. subjv.*
let, sign of imper. or subjv.; let go, dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus.
letter (of alphabet), littera, ae, *f*.; (epistle), litterae, ārum, *f. plur.*
liberate, liberō, āre, āvi, ātus.
liberty, libertās, ātis, *f*.
lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m*.
life, vita, ae, *f*.
lift up, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
light, lūx, lūcis, *f*.
like, similis, e.
like, amō, āre, āvi, ātus.
line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f*.
little, parvus, a, um.
live, vivō, ere, vixī, —.
long, longus, a, um; *adv.*, diū.
lord, dominus, ī, *m*.
love, amō, āre, āvi, ātus.
low, humilis, e.
loyal, fidus, a, um.

M

mad, insānus, a, um.
make, faciō, ere, feci, factus.
man, vir, virī, *m*.; homō, hominis, *m*. and *f*.; **a man who**, is quī.
manage, administrō, āre, āvi, ātus.
manhood, virtūs, ūtis, *f*.
many, plural of multus, a, um; **very many**, complūrēs, complūria.
march, iter, itineris, *n*.; **on the march**, ex itinere.

march, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum; iter faciō, ere, feci, factus; contendō, ere, contendi, contentum.
Marcus, Mārcus, ī, *m*.
master, magister, magistrī, *m*.; dominus, ī, *m*.
may, sign of wish; utinam, *w. subjv.*
means of, by, abl. of means; per, *w. acc.*
mention, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.
merchant, mercātor, ōris, *m*.
Mercury, Mercurius, Mercurī, *m*.
messenger, nūntius, ī, *m*.
middle of, medius, a, um.
mile, mille passūs; *plur.*, millia passuum.
mind, animus, ī, *m*.; mēns, mentis, *f*.; **have in mind**, in animō habēre; in animō esse, *w. dat.*; **turn the mind to**, animadvertō, ere, animadverti, animadversus.
mine, meus, a, um.
misfortune, cāsus, ūs, *m*.
money, pecūnia, ae, *f*.
month, mēnsis, is, *m*.
moon, lūna, ae, *f*.
more, plūs, plūris; *sign of comparative.*
moreover, autem (*postpositive*).
most, sign of superlative.
mountain, mōns, montis, *m*.
move, moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus.
much, multus, a, um; *adv.*, multum, multō.
multitude, multitudō, inis, *f*.
must, passive periphrastic conjugation, w. dat. of agent (438-9).
my, meus, a, um.
myself, see self.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n*.
name, appellō, āre, āvi, ātus.

narrow, angustus, a, um.
 nation, nātiō, ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*
 native land, patria, ae, *f.*
 near, ad, apud, *w. acc.*; come near, go
 near, accēdō, ere, accessī, acces-
 nearest, proximus, a, um. [sūrus.
 need, be in need of, careō, ēre, carui,
 caritūrus, *w. abl.*
 neighbor, finitimus, ī, *m.*
 neighboring, finitimus, a, um.
 neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum.
 neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
 never, numquam.
 nevertheless, tamen.
 new, novus, a, um.
 next, proximus, a, um; posterus,
 a, um.
 night, nox, noctis, *f.*; late at night,
 multā nocte.
 nineteen, undēvigintī.
 no, nōn; no one, none, nullus, a, um;
 nēmō, *dat.* nēminī.
 nor, neque.
 north wind, aquilō, ōnis, *m.*
 not, nōn; and not, but not, neque;
 not to, nē, *w. subjv.*; if not, nisi;
 that not, nē, *w. subjv.*
 nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
 notice, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī,
 animadversus.
 now, nunc, iam.
 number, numerus, ī, *m.*; multitudō,
 inis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam, *w. subjv.*
 obey, pāreō, ēre, pāruī, —, *w. dat.*
 obtain, obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obtentus.
 occupy, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 of, sign of gen.; dē, *w. abl.*
 often, saepe.
 old, vetus, veteris; senex, senis.

older, maior nātū.
 on, in, *w. abl.*
 one, ūnus, a, um; one who, is qui;
 one . . . another, alius . . . alius; the
 one . . . the other, alter . . . alter; to
 one another, inter sē.
 only, sōlus, a, um.
 opportunity, spatium, ī, *n.*
 oppose, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
 order to, in, ut, *w. subjv.*
 order, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus; imperō,
 āre, āvi, ātus; mandō, āre, āvi,
 ātus.
 Orgetorix, Orgetorix, īgis, *m.*
 other, alius, alia, aliud; (of two),
 alter, a, um.
 ought, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus;
 oportet, ēre, oportuit, *impers.*;
passive periphrastic conjugation
 (438-9).
 our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum;
 our men, nostrī, ōrum, *m. plur.*
 ourselves, nōs, nostrum; ipsī, ae, a.
 out of, ē or ex, *w. abl.*
 over, in, *w. abl.*; trāns, *w. acc.*; be
 over, supersum, superesse, superfui,
 superfuturus, *w. dat.*
 overcome, superō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 overtake, cōsequor, cōsequi, cōn-
 secutus sum.
 owe, dēbeō, ēre, dēbui, dēbitus.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*
 part, pars, partis, *f.*
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
 pear tree, pirus, ī, *f.*
 people, populus, ī, *m.*
 perceive, intellegō, ere, intellēxi, in-
 tellēctus.
 perish, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.

permit, *permittō*, ere, *permisī*, *permissum*; *concedō*, ere, *concessi*, *concessum*.

persuade, *persuādeō*, ēre, *persuāsī*, *persuāsum*, *w. dat.*

pitch (camp), *pōnō*, ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

place, *locus*, *i, m.*; *plur.*, *locī* or *loca*; **in that place**, *ibi*; **to this place**, *hūc*.

place, *pōnō*, ere, *posuī*, *positus*; *conlocō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*; *cōstituō*, ere, *cōstituī*, *cōstitutus*.

plan, *cōsiliū*, *i, n.*

plead (a cause), *dicō*, ere, *dixī*, *dictus*.

please, *dēlectō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.

pleasing, *grātus*, *a, um*.

pledge, *obses*, *obsidis*, *m. or f.*

plow, *arō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.

point out, *dēmōnstrō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.

Pompey, *Pompēius*, *i, m.*

poor, *miser*, *miseria*, *miserum*.

possess, *obtinēō*, ēre, *obtinuī*, *obtentus*.

possession, take possession of, *occupō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*; **get possession of**, *potior*, *potirī*, *potitus sum*, *w. abl.*

possible, the . . . -est possible, as . . . as possible, *quam, w. superl. of adj.*; **as soon as possible**, *quam primum*.

power, *potestās*, *ātis, f.*; *imperium*, *i, n.*; *vis*, *acc.*, *vim*.

powerful, *potēns*, *potentis*; **be very powerful**, *plūrimum posse*.

praise, *laudō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.

prefer, *mālō*, *mälle*, *mālūi*, —.

prepare, *parō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*; *comparō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.

present, be, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfuī*, *adfutūrus*; *intersum*, *interesse*, *interfuī*, *interfutūrus*.

preserve, *servō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.

pretty, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*.

proceed, *cōsequor*, *cōsequī*, *cōsecūtus sum*.

promise, *polliceor*, ēri, *pollicitus sum*.

proper, be, *oportet*, ēre, *oportuit*, *impers.*

protect, *dēfendō*, ere, *dēfendī*, *dēfēnsus*.

protection, *praesidium*, *i, n.*; *fidēs*, *eī, f.*; **put one's self under the protection of**, *in fidem venīre*, *w. dat.*

proud, *superbus*, *a, um*.

provide, *parō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*; *comparō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.

province, *prōvincia*, *ae, f.*

provisions, *commēātus*, *ūs, m.*; *rēs frūmentāria*, *rei frūmentāriae, f.*

prudence, *cōsiliū*, *i, n.*

public, *pūblicus*, *a, um*.

punish, *pūniō*, īre, *pūnīvi*, *pūnītus*.

punishment, *poena*, *ae, f.*

pupil, *discipulus*, *i, m.*

purpose of, for the, *ad, w. acc. of gerundive*.

pursue, *cōsequor*, *cōsequī*, *cōsecūtus sum*.

put to flight, *in-fugam dō*.

Q

queen, *rēgīna*, *ae, f.*

quickly, *celeriter*.

quickness, *celeritās*, *ātis, f.*

R

race (= nation), *gēns*, *gentis, f.*

raise, *tollō*, ere, *sustulī*, *sublātus*.

rampart, vāllum, *i*, *n*.
rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m*.
ravage, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus. [tum.
reach, perveniō, ire, pervēnī, perven-
rear, novissimum agmen, *n*.
reason, causa, *ae*, *f*.
receive, accipiō, ere, accēpī, accep-
tus; recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus.
recognize, cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī,
cōgnitus.
redoubt, castellum, *i*, *n*.
relief, subsidium, *i*, *n*.
remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm;
remaneō, ēre, remānsī, remānsūrus.
remaining, reliquus, *a*, *um*.
remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
render, reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus.
reply, respondeō, ēre, respondī, re-
spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus; ēnūntiō,
āre, āvī, ātus; renūntiō, āre, āvī,
ātus.
republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, *f*.
reputation, auctōritās, ātis, *f*.
request, petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī,
petitus.
require, postulō, āre, āvī, ātus.
resist, resistō, ere, restitī, —, *w. dat.*
respect, vereor, ēri, veritus sum.
respects, in all, omnibus rēbus.
rest of, reliquus, *a*, *um*.
restrain, contineō, ēre, continui, con-
tentus.
retain, obtineō, ēre, obtinui, obten-
tus; retineō, ēre, retinui, retentus.
retreat, recipiō, ere, recēpī, receptus
(*refl.*); pedem referō, referre, retu-
tuli, relātus.
return, *intr.*, redeō, redire, rediī,
rediturus; revertor, reverti, re-
verti, reversus; *trans.* (= give

back), reddō, reddere, reddidī,
redditus.
reveal, ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.
reward, praeium, *i*, *n*.
Rhine, Rhēnus, *i*, *m*.
Rhone, Rhodanus, *i*, *m*.
right, dexter, dext[e]ra, dext[e]rum.
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n*.
road, via, *ae*, *f*.; iter, itineris, *n*.
rock, saxum, *i*, *n*.
Roman, Rōmānus, *a*, *um*; *as subst.*,
Rōmānus, *i*, *m*.
Rome, Rōma, *ae*, *f*.
rose, rosa, *ae*, *f*.
rough, asper, aspera, asperum.
rouse, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.
rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus; im-
perō, āre, āvī, ātum, *w. dat.*
run away, fugiō, ere, fugi, —.

S

safe, tūtus, *a*, *um*.
sailor, nauta, *ae*, *m*.
sake of, for the, causā, *w. gen.*; *ut*,
w. subjv.
sally, ēruptiō, ōnis, *f*.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save (= preserve), servō, āre, āvī,
ātus; (= rescue), ēripiō, ere, ēri-
puī, ēreptus. [*def.*]
say, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus; inquam,
scare, terreō, ēre, terrui, territus.
scout, explōrātor, ōris, *m*.
sea, mare, *is*, *n*.
seat, sedile, *is*, *n*.
second, secundus, *a*, *um*; **for the**
second time, iterum.
see, videō, ēre, vidī, visus.
seek, petō, ere, petivī *or* petiī, petitus;
quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus.

seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus; capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.

select, dēligō, ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.

self, himself, herself, itself, themselves, ipse, a, um (*intens.*); sui (*refl.*); **myself, yourself, ourselves**, ipse (*intens.*); *pers. pron.* (*refl.*).

senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*

send, mittō, ere, misi, missus; **send ahead**, praemittō, ere, praemisi, praemissus; **send off**, dimittō, ere, dimisi, dimissus.

Sequanī, Sēquanī, ōrum, *m. plur.*

set fire to, incendō, ere, incendi, incēsus.

set out, proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum.

set over, praeficiō, ere, praefēcī, praefectus, *w. acc. and dat.*

seven, septem.

seventy, septuāgintā.

severely, graviter.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.

she, ea; illa.

ship, nāvis, is, *f.*

short, brevis, *e.*

shout, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus.

sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.

side, latus, lateris, *n.*; **from or on all sides**, undique.

sight, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

sign, sīgnum, ī, *n.*

similar, similis, *e.*

six, sex.

size, magnitūdō, inis, *f.*

skillful, perītus, a, um.

slaughter, caedēs, is, *f.*

slave, servus, ī, *m.*

slay, occidō, ere, occidī, occisus.

slender, gracilis, *e.*

slow, piger, pigra, pigrum.

small, parvus, a, um.

smooth, lēnis, *e.*

snatch away, ēripiō, ere, ēripui, ēreptus.

so, ita; **tam** (*w. adjs. and advs.*);

so great, tantus, a, um; **and so**, itaque; **so as not**, nē, *w. subjv.*

soldier, miles, militis, *m.*

sole, sōlus, a, um.

some (one), quis, quae (qua), quid (quod); aliquis, aliqua, aliquid (aliquod); **some . . . others**, alii . . . alii; **some in one direction**, **some in another**, alii aliam in partem.

son, filius, fili or filii, *m.*

son-in-law, gener, generi, *m.*

soon, iam; **mox**; **as soon as**, quam primum.

space, spatium, ī, *n.*

speak, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus; **speak together**, conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum.

spear, hasta, ae, *f.*

speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*

speed, celeritās, ātis, *f.*

spirit, animus, ī, *m.*

spoil, praeda, ae, *f.*

stand before, praestō, praestāre, praestiti, —.

star, stella, ae, *f.*

state, civitās, ātis, *f.*; **rēs publica**, rei publicae, *f.*

station, conlocō, āre, āvī, ātus; **constitute**, ere, cōstitui, cōstitutus.

stay, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsus.

storm, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus; **take by storm**, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus.

story, *fābula*, *ac, f.*
 strange, *aliēnus*, *a, um.*
 street, *via*, *ac, f.*
 strength, *vis*, *vim, f.*
 strengthen, *alō, ere, alui, alitus or altus.*
 strive, *contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.*
 strong, *validus*, *a, um.*
 struggle, *contendō, ere, contendī, contentum.*
 sturdy, *validus*, *a, um.*
 such, *tālis*, *e*; *tantus*, *a, um.*
 suffer, *patior, pati, passus sum*; *labōrō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
 suitable, *idōneus*, *a, um.*
 summer, *aestās, ātis, f.*
 summon, *convocō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
 supplies, *commeātus, ūs, m.*; *supplies of grain, rēs frumentāria, f.*
 supply, *cōpia*, *ac, f.*
 suppose, *existimō, āre, āvi, ātus*; *arbitror, āri, ātus sum.*
 surpass, *tr.*, *superō, āre, āvi, ātus*; *intr.*, *praestō, praestāre, praestitī, —.*
 surrender, *dēditō, ōnis, f.*
 surrender, *trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus*; *dēdō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus.*
 surround, *circumveniō, ire, circumvenī, circumventus.*
 survive, *supersum, superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus.*
 sustain, *sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus.*
 swift, *vēlōx, vēlōcis.*
 swiftly, *celeriter.*
 sword, *gladius*, *i, m.*

T

table, *mēnsa*, *ac, f.*
 take, *capiō, ere, cēpi, captus*; *take*

away, *tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus*; *take by storm*, *expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus*; *take possession of*, *occupō, āre, āvi, ātus.*
 teacher, *magister, magistri, m.*
 tell, *dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.*
 temple, *templum, i, n.*; *aedēs, aedis, f.*
 ten, *decem.*
 tender, *tener, tenera, tenerum.*
 territory, *finēs, finium, m. plur.*
 than, *quam*; *abl. after comparative.*
 that, *demonstr.*, *is, ea, id*; *ille, illa, illud*; *rel.*, *qui, quae, quod.*
 that, in order that, so that, *ut, w. subjv.*; *after verbs of fearing, nē, w. subjv.*; *that not, nē, w. subjv.*; *would that, utinam.*
 their (own), *theirs, suus, a, um*; *eōrum, eārum.*
 themselves, *see self.*
 then, *tum.*
 thence, *inde.* [*lated.*]
 there, *ibi*; *introductory, not trans-*
 therefore, *itaque.*
 thereupon, *inde.*
 they, *ii, eae, ea*; *illi, illae, illa.*
 thing, *rēs, rei, f.*
 think, *existimō, āre, āvi, ātus*; *arbitror, āri, ātus sum.*
 third, *tertius, a, um.*
 thirty, *trīgintā.*
 this, *hic, haec, hoc.*
 thou, *tū.*
 thousand, *mille (indecl.)*; *plur.*, *millia or milia.*
 three, *trēs, tria*; *three hundred, trecentī, ae, a.*
 through, *per, w. acc.*
 throw, *iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus*; *coniciō, ere, coniecī, coniectus.*

thus, ita.

Tiber, Tiberis, is, *m.*

time, tempus, temporis, *n.*; spatium, *i, n.*; for a long time, diū.

to, *sign of dat.*; ad, in, *w. acc.*; *sign of subjv. of purpose.*

to-day, hodiē.

top of, summus, a, um.

toward (s), ad, *w. acc.*

tower, turris, is, *f.*

town, oppidum, *i, n.*

trader, mercātor, ōris, *m.*

Tralles, Trallēs, Trallium, *m. pl.*

transport, trāducō, ere, trādūxī, trāductus.

treat, agō, ere, ēgī, āctus.

trench, fossa, ae, *f.*

trial, iūdicium, *i, n.*

tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*

troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f. pl.*

trust, fidēs, ei, *f.* [*w. dat.*]

trust, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditum,

try, cōnor, āri, ātus sum.

turn about, convertō, ere, convertī, conversus; turn back, revertor, revertī, revertī, reversus; turn the mind to, animadvertō, ere, animadvertī, animadversus.

twelve, duodecim.

twenty, vigintī.

two, duo, duae, duo.

U

ugly, turpis, e.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.

unless, nisi.

unlike, dissimilis, e.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —

upon, in, *w. acc. and abl.*

urge, cohortor, āri, ātus sum; urge on, incitō, āre, āvī, ātus.

use, ūsus, ūs, *m.*; be of use to, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, *w. dat.*

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

V

van, primum agmen, primī agminis, *n.*

vāssal, cliēns, clientis, *m.*

very, *adj. or adv. in superl.; intens.*, ipse, a, um.

view, cōspectus, ūs, *m.*

village, vicus, *i, m.*

virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, ere, gessī, gestus; wage

war upon, bellum inferō, inferre, intuli, inlātus, *w. dat.*

wait for, expectō, āre, āvī, ātus.

wall, mūrus, *i, m.*

walls, moenia, moenium, *n. pl.*

war, bellum, *i, n.*

warn, moneō, ēre, monuī, monitus.

waste, lay, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus.

watch, vigilia, ae, *f.*

way, via, ae, *f.*

we, nōs, nostrum.

weapon, tēlum, *i, n.*; *plur.*, arma, ōrum, *n.*

wear out, cōnficiō, ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus.

well, bene; well known, nōbilis, e.

what (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

when, ubi, cum.

where, ubi.

which (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid;

which of two, uter, utra, utrum.

white, albus, a, um.

who (*rel.*), qui, quae; (*interrog.*), quis, quae.

whole, tōtus, a, um; omnis, e.

why, cūr.

wicked, malus, a, um.

wide, lātus, a, um.

width, lātitūdō, inis, *f.*

wild, ferus, a, um.

will, volō, velle, voluī, —; will not, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —.

willing, be, volō, velle, voluī, —; be more willing, mālō, mälle, mälui, —.

wine, vinum, i, *n.*

wing, cornū, ūs, *n.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*

wisely, prūdenter.

wish, cupiō, ere, cupivī, cupītus; volō, velle, voluī, —.

with, *sign of abl.*; cum, *w. abl.*; apud, *w. acc.* [cessum.

withdraw, discēdō, ere, discessī, dis- within, *sign of abl. of time.*

without, sine, *w. abl.*; be without, careō, ēre, carui, caritūrus, *w. abl.*

withstand, sustineō, ēre, sustinui, sustentus.

woman, fēmina, ae, *f.*; mulier, mulieris, *f.*

wood (= forest), silva, ae, *f.*

work, labor, ōris, *f.*; opus, operis, *n.*

work, labōrō, āre, āvi, ātūrus.

would that, utinam, *w. subjv.*

wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*

wound, vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus.

wretched, miser, misera, miserum.

write, scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus.

Y

year, annus, i, *m.*

yet, tamen.

you, tū, vōs.

young, iuvenis, is.

your, yours, tuus, a, um; vester, vestra, vestrum.

yourself, tū, vōs; ipse.

Z

zeal, studium, i, *n.*

INDEX

(Numbers refer to Sections. References to matter contained in footnotes are given by citing the page and the number of the note: in such cases p. = page, n. = note. The only other abbreviation used, vs., = 'distinguished from.' The Index, it is expected, will be supplemented by the Table of Contents, pages 7-9. References to the Supplement are indicated by the abbreviation *Supp.* with page and section numbers in italics.)

ā vs. **ab**, p. 70, n. 1.

Ablative, of agent, 141-142; absolute, 315-317; of cause, 117-118; of comparison, with and without **quam**, 259-260; of description, 302-303; of instrument, 93-94; with **in**, p. 24, n. 2; of manner, 147-148; of means, 93-94; of degree of difference, 266-267; of place whence, 236, a: 237; of separation, 210-211; of specification, 156-157; of time when, 130-131; with **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor**, 336-337; of accompaniment, *Supp.*, p. 31 (2).

Ablative singular, in **-ī**, in adjectives of third declension, 155, 1; in **-ī** and **-e**, in nouns of third declension, 122, 3.

Accent, general rules for, 20; of genitive singular of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 74, 1; of vocative singular of nouns in **-ius** and of **filius**, 74, 2; of perfect forms in second conjugation, 106; of present passive of fourth conjugation, 215, 2.

Accompaniment, ablative of, *Supp.*, p. 31 (2).

Accusative, of direct object, 45: 46, 2; of duration of time and extent of space, 244-245; of limit of motion, 236, a: 237; as subject of infinitive, 184, 1; 329: 429-430; with

in, p. 29, n. 2; with **ob** and **propter** to express cause, p. 71, n. 2.

Accusative singular in **-im**, in third declension, 122, 3.

Active periphrastic conjugation, 437: 529.

Adjectives, agreement of, see *Agreement*; comparison of, 256-257: 264-265; demonstrative, 201-202; interrogative, 216-217; possessive, 292-293: 296; position of, 32; predicate, general rule for, 32: 33-34; predicate, with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3; construed with dative, 162-163; denote only part of word modified, p. 133, n. 1; used as nouns, 203; with genitive singular in **-ius** and dative singular in **-ī**, 209; genitive with, *Supp.*, p. 33 (5).

Adverbs, formation of, 279; comparison of, 280.

Agent, expressed by **ā** or **ab** with the ablative, 141-142.

Agreement, of adjectives, general rules for, 32: 33-34: 63: 65; of possessive adjectives, 293; of predicate adjective, in general, 32: 33-34; of predicate adjective with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3; of appositive, 57-58; of participles, 152, 2; of relative pro-

- noun, 196, *b*: 197; of verbs, in general, 45, 4: 46, 1; of person of verb in relative clause with that of antecedent, 288.
- aliquis**, 301, 4: 515.
- alius**, declension of, 209.
- Alphabet, 2-4.
- alter**, declension of, 209.
- Antecedent, defined, 196, *a-b*; determines person of the verb of the relative clause, 288.
- Apodosis, 413.
- Apposition, appositive, 57-58: p. 119, n. 1.
- Article, missing in Latin, p. 16, n. 2.
- Base, 25: 52, 2: 69, 2, 4: 112, 1, 3: 122, 2.
- bonus**, comparison of, 272.
- careo**, ablative with, 211.
- Cases, names of, 24. See also *Abblative, Accusative, Dative, Genitive, Locative, Vocative*.
- Cause, ablative of, 117-118; expressed by **ob** and **propter** with accusative, p. 71, n. 2; expressed by **cum** with the subjunctive, 386: 387, 2.
- Command, affirmative, expressed by imperative, 399; negative, expressed by **noli** or **nolite** with infinitive, 399.
- Comparative, with special signification 'too' or 'rather,' 268. See also *Comparison*.
- Comparison, of adjectives, 256-257: 264-265; of adverbs, 280; irregular, of adjectives, 272; ablative of, 259-260.
- Complex sentences, 349: 413; in indirect discourse, 427-430.
- Compound verbs, dative with, 393-394; dative and accusative with, 393; drill on, *Supp.*, pp. 36-39 (13-16).
- Concessive clauses, with **cum** and subjunctive, 386-387.
- Concord, see *Agreement*.
- Conditional sentences, 413-421.
- Conditions, general classification of, 414; contrary to fact, 416; future, 418-419; simple, 415; summarized, 420; expressed by ablative absolute, 315-316; expressed by participle, 421.
- Conjugation, 23: 26.
- Conjugations, the four, how distinguished, 85.
- Consonants, 2; pronunciation of, 7: 14.
- Contrary to fact conditions, 416; contrary to fact wishes, 423-424.
- cum**, preposition, with ablative, in expressions of manner, 147-148; appended to pronouns, 287.
- cum** clauses, especially with the subjunctive, 386-387.
- Dative, of indirect object, 57-58; of possession, with **sum**, 230-231; of service or purpose, 294-295; with adjectives, 162-163; with compound verbs, 393-394; with compound verbs, together with the accusative, 393; with verbs of special meaning, 342-343.
- Declension, 24.
- Degree of difference, expressed by ablative, 266-267.
- Demonstratives, 201-203; less used in Latin than in English, p. 155, n. 1: p. 186, n. 1.
- Deponent verbs, 333-335: 528; perfect passive participle of, active in meaning, 335.
- Derivation, *Supp.*, pp. 42-46, 47-48.
- Description, ablative and genitive of, 302-303.
- Difference, degree of, expressed by the ablative, 266-267.

Diphthongs, 4: 8: 17, 4.

Direct object, see *Object*.

Discourse, indirect, see *Indirect discourse*.

dō, quantity of vowel **a** in, p. 30, n. 1.

domi, 235, 2.

domus, 222, 2: 501.

Duration of time, expressed by the accusative, 244-245.

ē vs. **ex**, p. 70, n. 1.

Enclitics, 20, 4. See **-ne** and **-que**.

Endings, case, 25: 112; personal, 43,

1: 87, 1: 92, 1: 106, 1: 139, 2-3:

146, 1: 173, 1: 348, 2.

ēd, 234: 525.

'exceedingly,' expressed by the superlative degree, 268.

Exhortation, subjunctive of, 399.

Extent of space, expressed by the accusative, 244-245.

extrēmus, 'the end of,' p. 133, n. 1.

Fearing, object clause after verb of, 384-385.

ferō, 527.

fiō, 526.

fruor, with ablative, 336-337.

fungor, with ablative, 337.

Future conditions, 418-419.

Future perfect tense, formation of, 98, 1: 99.

Future wishes, 423-424.

Gender, rules of, 27-28: 29: 128: 223.

Genitive, general rule for use of, 38; of possessor, p. 20, n. 2; of description, 302-303; partitive, 250-251; of the whole, 250-251; predicate, *Supp.*, p. 31 (1); with adjectives, *Supp.*, p. 33 (5); subjective, *Supp.*, p. 34 (8); objective, *Supp.*, p. 35 (9).

Gerund and gerundive, 404-406. See *Purpose*.

hic, 201: 203; vs. **ille**, 203; vs. **is**, 203; as demonstrative of the first person, 208, 1.

'his' and 'her' omitted, p. 27, n. 2.

Historical present, p. 125, n. 3.

Historical tenses, 372.

Hopeless wishes, 423-424.

humi, 235, 2.

-i- stems, of nouns, in third declension, 123; of adjectives, in third declension, 155, 1: 161, 3.

idem, 189.

ille, 202-203; vs. **hic**, 203; vs. **is**, 203; = 'that famous,' position of, 203.

Imperative, use of, 399; shortened form of, in certain verbs (**dic**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**), 398.

Impersonal use of verbs, 432.

imū, 'the bottom of,' p. 133, n. 1.

in, with the ablative, p. 24, n. 2: 235, 3: 237, 1; with the accusative, p. 29, n. 2: 237, 2.

Indefinite pronouns, 300-301.

Indicative active, table for formation of, 99.

Indirect discourse, 327-330: 369-370; infinitive and subjunctive in, in complex sentences, 427-430.

Indirect object, see *Object*.

Infinitive, formation and meanings of, 322; general remarks on the use of, 183-184; as subject, 183, c: 184, 1; complementary, 183, b: 184, 2; in indirect discourse, 328-330: 429-430; subject of, in the accusative, 183, c: 184, 1; predicate adjective with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3; in substantive clause, 378.

Inflection defined, 23.

Instrument, ablative of, 93-94.

Interrogative adjective and pronoun, 216-217.

ipse, 207; vs. **is**, 286, 4.

Irregular comparison of adjectives, 272.

is, declension of, 188; meanings of,

190-191; vs. **suus**, 293, 2: 286, 3;

as antecedent of relative pronoun,

196, c.

iste, declension of, 208; used as the

demonstrative of the second person,

208.

Locative, 235: 237.

mālo, 362: 524.

Manner, expressed by ablative, or by

the ablative with **cum**, 147-148.

'many great,' etc., = 'many and

great,' etc., p. 34, n. 1: p. 62, n. 1.

Means, ablative of, 93-94.

medius, 'the middle of,' p. 133, n. 1.

mille, 242: 243, 3.

Moods, 26, 1. See *Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, Subjunctive*.

-ne, enclitic, 20, 4; in questions, 40.

nē, negative particle, not used with

the imperative, 399; used with the

subjunctive of exhortation, 399;

used with the subjunctive of wish,

424.

Negative, with the subjunctive of

exhortation, 399; with wishes, 424.

neuter, declension of, 209.

nōli or **nōlite**, with the infinitive in

negative commands (prohibitions),

399.

nōlo, 362: 524.

Nominative, 34, 1; in predicate ad-

jective with complementary in-

finitive, 183, c: 184, 3.

nōnne, in questions, 40, 2.

nūllus, declension of, 209.

Numbers, 26, 5.

Numerals, 241-243.

Object, direct, in the accusative, 45:

46, 2; indirect, in the dative,

57: 58, 2; indirect, with compound

verbs, 393-394; direct and indi-

rect both, with compound verbs,

393.

Object clauses, see *Substantive clauses*.

Objective genitive, *Supp.*, p. 35 (9-10).

Omission, of subject, 45, 3-4; of the

possessive adjectives, p. 27, n. 2.

Order of words, general rules for, 32:

82: p. 24, n. 3; position of adjec-

tives, 32; position of the vocative,

p. 27, n. 1.

Participles, agreement of, see *Agree-*

ment; formation of, 307; tenses of,

309; uses of, 152: 308: 311: 421;

of deponent verbs, 334; perfect, of

deponent verbs, active in sense,

335; as protasis of conditional

sentences, 311: 421.

Partitive genitive, 250-251.

Parts, principal, see *Principal parts*;

how given in this book, p. 49, n. 1.

Parts of speech, 22.

Passive periphrastic conjugation,

438-439: 530.

Perfect tense, vs. imperfect tense, 92;

endings of, 92, 1; formation of, 99.

Periphrastic conjugation, active, 437:

529; passive, 438-439: 530.

Person of verb, remarks on, 45; how

indicated, 43.

Personal endings, see *Endings*.

Personal pronouns, 284-285; **cum**

appended to, 287.

Persons, 26, 4.

Place whence, how expressed, 236:

237, 3.

Place where, how expressed, 235: 237, 1.

Place whither, how expressed, 236:

237, 2.

Pluperfect tense, formation of, 98, 1: 99.

plūs, declension of, 273.

Possession, dative of, with **sum**, 230-

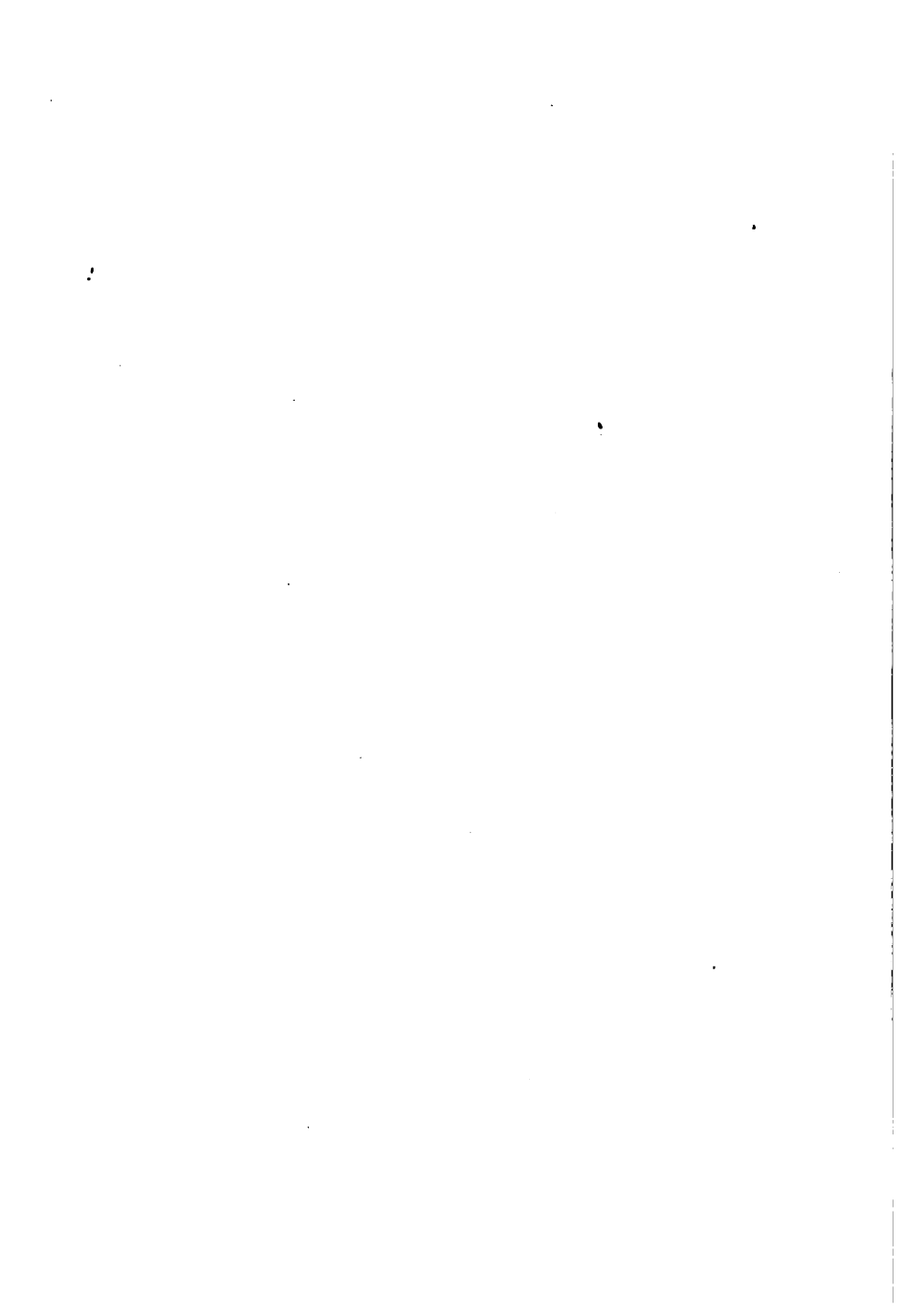
231.

Possessive adjectives, 292-293: 296; omitted, p. 27, n. 2.
 Possessives omitted, p. 27, n. 2.
 Possessor, genitive of, p. 20, n. 2.
possum, 274: 522.
potior, with the ablative, 337.
 Predicate adjective, in general, 32-33: 34, 2; with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3.
 Predicate agreement, of adjective and noun, 32-33: 34, 2; with complementary infinitive, 183, c: 184, 3.
 Predicate genitive, *Supp.*, p. 31 (1).
 Prefixes, *Supp.*, pp. 40-41, 46.
 Primary tenses, 372.
 Principal parts of verbs, 86; how given in this book, p. 49, n. 1.
 Prohibitions, 399.
 Pronouns, demonstrative, 201-203; indefinite, 300-301; interrogative, 216-217; personal, 284-285; reflexive, 284: 286; relative, 195; agreement of, 196-197; in indirect discourse, 428; **cum** appended to, 287.
 Pronunciation, 5-8.
prosum, 391: 523.
 Protasis, 413; expressed by ablative absolute, 315-317; expressed by participle, 311: 421.
 Purpose, expressed by **ad** with the accusative of the gerund or the gerundive, 406, 3; expressed by the dative, 294-295; expressed by the genitive of the gerund or the gerundive with **causâ**, 406, 3; expressed by the subjunctive, 350-351; expressed by relative clauses in the subjunctive, 363-364; expressed by the supine, 433-435.
quam, 'than,' in expressions involving a comparative, 259-260.
 Quantity, general rules for, 16-19; in fifth declension, genitive singular, p. 122, n. 1.

-que, position of, 20, 4: p. 80, n. 1.
 Questions, with **-ne** and **nōne**, 40; indirect, in the subjunctive, 369-370; indirect, vs. indirect statements, 369.
quī, 195. See *Relative pronoun*.
quidam, 301, 5.
quis, interrogative, 216-217; indefinite, used especially with **si**, **nisi**, **nē** and **num**, 301, 1.
quisque vs. **omnis**, 301, 2.
 'rather,' expressed by the comparative degree, 268.
 Reflexive pronouns, 284: 286; **cum** appended to, 287; use of, in indirect discourse, p. 160, n. 1.
 Relative clauses of purpose, in the subjunctive, 363-364.
 Relative pronoun, declension of, 195; meanings and use of, 195-196; agreement of, 196-197; antecedent of, 196, a; antecedent of, often **is**, 196, c; **cum** appended to, 287; used at beginning of sentences or clauses where English uses the demonstrative, p. 155, n. 1: p. 186, n. 1.
 Result, expressed by subjunctive, 356-358.
revertor, forms of, p. 189, n. 1.
rūri, 235, 2.
sē vs. **ipse**, 286, 4.
 Secondary tenses, 372.
 Separation, how expressed, 210-211.
 Sequence of tenses, 371-374.
 Service, dative of, 294-295.
 Simple conditions, 415.
sōlus, declension of, 209.
 Space, extent of, expressed by the accusative, 244-245.
 Specification, ablative of, 156-157.
 Speech, parts of, 22.
 Stem, defined, 25; of third declension,

- III: 112, 1; of verb, 43: 86: 122, 2.
- Subject, normal case of, 33: 34, 1; of infinitive, in the accusative case, 184: 329: 429-430; may be omitted, 45, 3.
- Subjective genitive, *Supp.*, p. 34 (8), (10).
- Subjunctive, of exhortation, 399; in indirect discourse, in complex sentences, 427: 429-430; of purpose, in clauses with *ut* or *nē*, 350-351; of purpose, in relative clauses, 363-364; of result, 356-358; in wishes, 423-425.
- Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 427: 429-430.
- Substantive clauses, with infinitive, 378: 380; with the subjunctive, 378-380; with verbs of fearing, 384-385.
- Suffixes, *Supp.*, pp. 41, 47.
- sui*, *suus*, 286, 2, 3.
- sum*, 521; with dative of possession, 230-231.
- summus*, 'the top of,' p. 133, n. 1.
- Superlative, with special signification 'exceedingly' or 'very,' 268.
- Supine, 433-435.
- suus* vs. *is*, 293, 2.
- Syllables, 10-15; quantity of, 18-19; accent of, 20.
- Tenses, named, 26, 2; primary, 372; historical or secondary, 372; perfect vs. imperfect, 29; sequence of, 371-374; in subjunctive clauses of result, 357, *b*, *c*; in subjunctive clauses of purpose, 357, *b*, *c*.
- Time, duration of, expressed by the accusative, 244-245; clauses expressing, 386: 387, 1; time when, expressed by the ablative, 130-131.
- 'too,' expressed by the comparative degree, 268.
- tōtus*, declension of, 209.
- Translation, hints for, 136.
- Ńllus*, declension of, 209.
- Ńnus*, declension of, 209.
- uter*, declension of, 209.
- uterque*, declension of, 209.
- utinam*, in wishes, 424-425.
- Ńtor*, ablative with, 336-337.
- Verbal noun vs. verbal adjective, 403.
- See *Gerund*.
- Verbs, compound, construed with the dative, 393-394, or with dative and accusative, 393; conjugations of, 85; construed with the dative, 342-343; principal parts of, 86; principal parts of, how given in this book, p. 49, n. 1; stems of, 86; transitive, construction with, 46, 2; used impersonally, 432; drill on compound, *Supp.*, pp. 36-39 (13-16). See *Agreement*.
- 'very,' expressed by the superlative degree, 268.
- vēscor*, with the ablative, 337.
- vetus*, ablative singular of, in -e, p. 83, n. 1.
- Vocative, 24, 5: 69, 3; position of, p. 27, n. 1: p. 40, n. 1.
- Vocative singular, of nouns in -ius and of *filius*, 74, 2.
- Voices, 26, 3: 138.
- volō*, 524.
- Vowel, characteristic, of the four conjugations, 146, 2.
- Vowels, 3; pronunciation of, 5-6; quantity of, 16-17.
- Whole, genitive of, 250-251.
- Wishes, expressed by subjunctive, 423-425; negative in, 424; *utinam* in, 424-425.
- Word formation, *Supp.*, pp. 38-48.
- Word lists: first half year, *Supp.*, pp. 49-56; second half year, *Supp.*, pp. 57-64.
- Words, order of, see *Order of words*.

ADVERTISEMENTS



BISHOP, KING AND HELM'S CICERO

Edited by J. REMSEN BISHOP, Ph.D., Principal,
Eastern High School, Detroit; FREDERICK ALWIN
KING, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin and Greek, Hughes
High School, Cincinnati; and NATHAN WILBUR
HELM, A.M., Principal, Evanston (Ill.) Academy of
Northwestern University.

Ten Orations and Selected Letters.
Six Orations.

THIS edition is issued in two forms: one containing the six orations most frequently required by colleges for entrance—the Manilian Law, the four orations against Catiline, and Archias; the other giving, in addition, the Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius, and Murena, and selections from the Letters. The Murena is included because it exhibits Cicero's powers to a generous degree, and with the Milo affords material for rapid reading.

¶ Quantities are marked in accordance with the most modern scholarship. The illustrations and plans have been carefully selected to picture the environment of the orator as it was in the Republican, and not as it was in the Imperial, period. The source of each illustration is accurately indicated.

¶ The aim of this edition has been helpfulness toward an appreciation of Cicero and of his literary work and the exclusion of borrowed or original erudition. Such help as seemed to be required by the ordinary student is freely given, but the smoothing out of difficulties which the pupil may reasonably be expected to conquer by himself has been avoided. Grammatical principles are enunciated as far as possible, and references to the leading Latin grammars are given. The notes contain much assistance in translation and are clearly expressed. The vocabulary contains carefully prepared renderings of the words and phrases used in the texts.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

SELECTIONS FROM THE WORKS OF OVID

Edited by FRANK J. MILLER, Ph.D. (Yale),
Professor of Latin, University of Chicago

Annotated Edition . . .

Text Edition

THESE selections are fairly representative, and are edited in such a way as to illustrate the style and subject-matter of each poem, and at the same time to show the exact relation of every part to the complete work.

¶ The book includes over 3,800 lines from the *Metamorphoses*, thus more than meeting the requirements in Ovid of the College Entrance Examination Board, and in addition the following: Selections from *Heroides*, *Amores*, *Ars Amatoria*, *Remedia Amoris*, *Fasti*, *Tristia*, and *Epistulae ex Ponto*; Life of Ovid, Poetic Forms of Ovid's Works; with notes on the selections, and vocabulary.

¶ The notes have been prepared with special reference to the needs of both the school and the college student. They include: General assistance in the translation of difficult and obscure passages; judicious references on points of syntax to all the modern school grammars in common use; notes and comments upon points of antiquarian interest; and suggestions and illustrations of the relations of Ovid's stories to their earlier sources, and especially of their effect upon English literature.

¶ The vocabulary, which has been prepared especially for this volume, gives the literal meaning of each word, and also all of the typical meanings which occur in the text. Generous assistance in word derivation is offered as well.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

A GREEK PRIMER

By CLARENCE W. GLEASON, A.M. (Harvard),
of the Volkmann School, Boston

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Greek Prose Composition for Schools
The Story of Cyrus
Xenophon's Cyropaedia
A Term of Ovid

WITH many modifications suggested by class-room experience, this text-book continues the general plan of Gleason & Atherton's First Greek Book. The verb is developed somewhat more slowly and naturally, with the second aorist still nearer the beginning. The number of lessons has been increased, in order to give more practice on verb forms. The infinitive and participle and indirect discourse are treated at greater length. Three lessons are devoted entirely to Greek equivalents of common Latin constructions.

¶ Although the book is intended as an introduction to the study of Greek rather than as a short cut to the Anabasis of Xenophon, the latter has been drawn on freely for reading matter. Of the 750 words in the lesson vocabularies all but about 20 (and of the 600 additional words used in the selections for reading, more than half) are found in the Anabasis.

¶ The reading selections in and following the lessons have been taken from as varied sources as possible, and are intended to arouse the beginner's interest in Greek literature. The model sentences, designed only as examples of the syntax under discussion, and selected with a view to memorizing, are made, wherever practicable, from words familiar to the student. The sentences to be rendered into Greek are cut down to the minimum.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

BEGINNER'S GREEK BOOK

By ALLEN ROGERS BENNER, Professor of Greek,
Phillips Academy, Andover, and HERBERT WEIR
SMYTH, Ph.D., Eliot Professor of Greek Literature,
Harvard University

THE use of this book should enable the average class to begin reading Xenophon's *Anabasis* without much difficulty before the end of the first year. Only the grammar, forms, and constructions needed in the first year of Greek are presented.

¶ The main part is divided into 60 lessons or chapters, each consisting of a number of grammatical principles, clearly illustrated by examples, a special vocabulary, and Greek-English and English-Greek exercises for translation. The vocabularies contain only such words as are used by Xenophon, with preference given to the commoner words of the *Anabasis*.

¶ Only the more significant paradigms and rules of syntax are emphasized. Thus the present, future, and aorist tenses of the verb are introduced early; but the perfect tenses are postponed to later lessons. Infinitives, even in indirect discourse, participles, and compound verbs have an early place. In the first 50 lessons the prefix of a compound verb is regularly separated from the verb proper by a hyphen.

¶ The essential rules of syntax are enforced by repetition of examples in successive exercises. Paradigms of certain words that are unusual in the *Anabasis* are not given, if at the same time these words involve special difficulties. The dual number has been retained in the paradigms, although it may easily be disregarded, as it has not been used in the exercises.

¶ At the close of the book are a few simplified selections from the *Anabasis* which are designed for those students who are not ready to begin reading the original text, after completing the lessons. Summaries of forms and syntax, verb lists, vocabularies, and an index are included.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

MYTHOLOGIES

By H. A. GUERBER

Myths of Greece and Rome. Illustrated	
Myths of Northern Lands. Illustrated	
Legends of the Middle Ages. Illustrated	

MYTHS of Greece and Rome is well adapted for general reading, but it is of particular value in connection with the study of the classics. So intimately are these myths connected with our civilization, and so great is their influence upon our literature and art, that they should be familiar to every person. As told here, the repulsive features of heathen mythology are omitted. Excellent reproductions of ancient and modern masterpieces of painting and sculpture are plentifully used to illustrate the volume. The closing chapter includes an analysis of the myths in the light of philology and comparative mythology.

¶ The grim sense of humor and the dark thread of tragedy running through Northern mythology, and found in the religion of no other race, have left their indelible imprint upon our literature. In *Myths of Northern Lands*, these myths are told without unnecessary comment, and in a charming manner which can not fail to hold the attention. As in the other volumes, one of the most interesting and valuable features is the large number of reproductions of works of art.

¶ The object of *Legends of the Middle Ages* is to familiarize students with the legends which form the principal subjects of mediaeval literature, and whose influence is everywhere apparent in the subsequent history of literature and art. In connection with the various legends, appropriate questions are given from mediaeval and modern writings, illustrating the style of the poem in which they are embodied, or lending additional force to some point in the story.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

A NEW CICERO

Edited by ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor Emeritus in Brown University ; assisted by J. C. KIRTLAND, Jr., Professor in Phillips Exeter Academy; and G. H. WILLIAMS, Professor in Kalamazoo College, late Instructor in Phillips Exeter Academy

Nine Oration Edition

Six Oration Edition

FOR convenience this edition of Cicero has been published in two forms. The larger edition includes the four orations against Catiline, the Manilian Law, Archias, Marcellus, Ligarius, and the Fourteenth Philippic. The smaller edition contains the first six of these orations, which are those required by the College Entrance Examination Board, and by the New York State Education Department.

¶ Before the text of each oration is a special introduction, which is intended to awaken the interest of the student by furnishing him with information in regard to the oration.

¶ The general introduction presents an outline of the life of Cicero, a brief history of Roman oratory, a chronological table of contemporaneous Roman history, a short account of the main divisions of the Roman people, the powers and the duties of magistrates, of the senate, of the popular assemblies, and of the courts of justice.

¶ The notes give the student the key to all really difficult passages, and at the same time furnish him with such collateral information upon Roman manners and customs, upon Roman history and life, as will enable him to understand, appreciate, and enjoy these masterpieces of Roman oratory. The grammatical references are to all the standard Latin grammars.

¶ The vocabulary gives the primary meanings of words, with such other meanings as the student will need in translating the orations. Special attention is devoted to the important subject of etymology. There are many maps and illustrations.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

A TERM OF OVID

Edited by CLARENCE W. GLEASON, A.M.
(Harvard), of the Volkmann School, Boston

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Greek Primer
Greek Prose Composition for Schools
Story of Cyrus
Xenophon's Cyropaedia

THE ten stories from the *Metamorphoses* included in this book are: Atalanta's Last Race; Pyramus and Thisbe; Apollo's Unrequited Love for Daphne; How Phaëton Drove his Father's Chariot; The Death of Orpheus; The Touch of Gold; Philemon and Baucis; The Impiety and Punishment of Niobe; The Flood; Perseus and Andromeda.

¶ There is a distinct advantage in using these selections from Ovid as a stepping-stone from Caesar to Virgil. Written in an entertaining manner, they not only make the student acquainted with the legends of the gods and heroes, but also lessen the greatest gap in a continuous Latin course by familiarizing him with the vocabulary of Virgil in easier verse. In the present volume are all but 300 of the words found in the first book of the *Aeneid*.

¶ The work contains about 1,420 lines of text, with full notes on the text and on scansion, and a vocabulary. The first hundred lines are divided into feet for scansion, with the accents and caesuras marked. The first three stories are accompanied by a parallel version in the order of ordinary Latin prose, with the quantities indicated. There are also synonyms of words not usual in prose, and of common words in extraordinary uses.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

VIRGIL'S AENEID

Edited by HENRY S. FRIEZE, late Professor of Latin, University of Michigan. Revised by WALTER H. DENNISON, Professor of Latin, University of Michigan

First Six Books Complete
Complete Text Edition . .

IN its present form this well-known work has been thoroughly revised and modernized. It is published in two volumes: one containing the first six books, the other the entire twelve books—an arrangement especially convenient for students who read more than the minimum College Entrance Requirements in Latin. Both volumes are printed on very thin, opaque paper, thus making each an extraordinarily compact and usable book.

¶¶ The introduction has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

¶¶ The text has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

¶¶ The notes have been thoroughly revised, and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected, and new ones added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are given with sufficient explanations.

¶¶ The vocabulary has been made as simple as possible, and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The illustrations and maps, for the most part, are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care, with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY





This book should be returned to
the Library on or before the last date
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred
by retaining it beyond the specified
time.

Please return promptly.

DUE JUN 18 48

DUE JUL 27 48

